



THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA
LOS ANGELES

BOHEMIAN MADE EASY.

A PRACTICAL BOHEMIAN COURSE FOR
ENGLISH SPEAKING PEOPLE.

—BY—

Charles Jonas,

Late U. S. Consul at Prague, author of the first Dictionary of the Bohemian
and English languages.

Second Edition.

Published by the SLAVIE, Racine, Wis., 1900.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890, in the office
of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

PG
4111
J 69 b
1900

TO THE HONORABLE

GROVER CLEVELAND,

EXPRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES,

THIS LITTLE BOOK IS DEDICATED,

AS A SLIGHT TOKEN OF PROFOUND,

RESPECT AND ADMIRATION

BY THE

AUTHOR.

950813



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2014

<https://archive.org/details/bohemianmadeeasyjona>

Why this book has been written.

The answer to such a question is simple: because there is a demand for it. And whenever there is a demand, the supply is sure to come.

Not a year passes, but numbers apply to divers booksellers and publishers for some handy book to give them a practical knowledge of the Bohemian language or to serve as a proper introduction to a study thereof.

Who are the applicants? They are business men, clerks, salesmen and travelers, druggists and physicians, ministers, teachers and lawyers. They live and follow their vocations in localities where a large fraction of the population speaks the Bohemian language; they perceive the advantage which a knowledge of Bohemian, or even a slight acquaintance with that tongue, would give them; and consequently they look for a guide.

Such a guide this little work is designed to furnish. I may say that within six or eight years past I have myself read hundreds of applications for such a guide from different parts of our country and I repeatedly promised to write a book of this kind as soon as my other occupations permitted. Now I have redeemed that pledge. It has been done to be sure, only in an imperfect manner; there are defects and shortcomings, which in a pioneer work of this kind cannot be avoided. But I applied myself to the task with the honest intention, materially to assist the beginner in his attempt to gain such a knowledge of the Bohemian language, as would be of help to him in his intercourse with people speaking that language, or in his desire to read Bohemian literature; and I cherish the

hope, that this present result of my labor will prove really helpful to those who will make use of it for that purpose. —

„Is Bohemian a hard language to learn?“ This inquiry I have heard more than once.

I think no language is easy to learn, if a person wants to have a perfect command of it; and Bohemian presents about a fair average of the difficulties, which a student of languages encounters. But there is no great difficulty in acquiring a superficial knowledge of any living European tongue, a knowledge sufficient for ordinary intercourse in every day life, if a person has the will and perseverance to learn it and a fair opportunity to use what he learns. Beginners who will take up this little book with an earnest purpose, will soon find out that Bohemian comes well under this general rule.

Some years ago I made the acquaintance of a business man in a small city of Wisconsin, with whom I conversed both in English and Bohemian and whom I noticed to use both languages in his general conversation with others apparently with the same ease and fluency. It was not until some time after our first meeting, that I learned the gentleman in question was not a Bohemian by birth, but a native American of German descent. Had I been told that he was a born Bohemian, I certainly would have believed it, from the way he handled the language. On our next meeting I asked him how he succeeded in mastering the Bohemian language so perfectly; and he said: „My instructor was the Bohemian newspaper. I commenced by reading communications written by farmers in an easy, colloquial style and asking explanations as to meaning and pronunciation. In this I persevered, my stock of words and phrases grew rapidly, and I was soon enabled to understand and to make a rapid progress in conversation. Later on I had recourse to the dictionary.“

This tends to show what may be done by patient application and perseverance and it may serve us an encouragement

to beginners. Of course, the number of persons of other nationalities who have acquired a sufficient practical knowledge of Bohemian to employ it in ordinary intercourse and business, is very large; and I mention it simply to show, that there is no insuperable difficulty in the way, as some persons perhaps might imagine.

And with this little introduction I wish the beginner God speed!

The Bohemian language.

The Slavonic family of nations, numbering rather more than one hundred and ten millions, is composed of two great divisions:

1. The eastern division, comprising the Russians, Bulgarians and Serbo-Croats, under which latter head may also be classed the Slovenes;

2. the western division, comprising the Poles, Bohemians and the remnant of the Wends in Germany.

The Bohemian language is closely related to the other branches of the Slavonic tongue. It needs only a few weeks study, for a person having a full command of Bohemian, to obtain a fair practical knowledge of any other Slavonic idiom. Especially is the relationship between Bohemian and Polish so close, that they might almost be considered dialects of one and the same language.

The Bohemian language is spoken in Bohemia, Moravia, part of Austrian and Prussian Silesia, and also in Upper Hungary. The Slovak idiom spoken in the last named country is simply an earlier form of Bohemian, which latter the Slovaks of Hungary used for centuries as

their literary or "biblical" language; only within the last fifty years have they begun to employ their proper dialect largely in literature. But still, the language is virtually the same, Bohemians and Slovaks needing no interpreters to understand one another, and no dictionaries mutually to read their publications. As a matter of fact, the two idioms are much nearer than high German and low German.

The Bohemians in the United States.

About the year 1848 Bohemian emigration to the United States commenced. Its volume has never been so large as that of the Irish or German emigration, but it has been steady and it will naturally go on for many years to come. In all probability, it will continue as long as European emigration to this side of the Atlantic ocean in general, and it may in the near future assume larger proportions than in the past.

The census of 1870 found 42,000 persons of Bohemian birth settled in the United States. In the year 1880 there were, according to the census taken in that year, over 85,000. But it must be remembered that many of those classified in the census tables as born in Austria, are of Bohemian nationality, especially such as emigrated from the provinces of Moravia and Silesia, and not from Bohemia proper. Quite a number, also, were by mistake entered under the general heading of "Germany", as to the country of their nativity.

It is safe to say that the number of persons born in Europe, whose mother tongue was Bohemian, at the time

of the official enumeration of 1880 exceeded one hundred thousand. At this writing they number nearly 200,000, and together with the first generation born in this country of Bohemian parents and speaking the language, in all probability somewhere near 500,000.

Within the last ten or fifteen years quite a heavy stream of immigration has set in from Hungary. At first mostly employed in Eastern mines and factories, these immigrants have in recent years been spreading west and settling on lands. These Hungarians are mostly Slovaks.

The number of Slovaks in the United States at this time probably equals about one third that of the Bohemians proper; hence the present number of persons in the United States speaking the Bohemian language in both its dialects may be computed at six hundred thousand.

The Bohemians have their homes chiefly in the following states: New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska, Kansas, S. Dakota, Missouri and Texas.

In the first five states and also in Missouri they live chiefly in the cities, following different trades and working in factories. In the other states they are mainly farmers, as a rule very industrious and thrifty. Many of them are of course engaged in business of all kinds and in the professions. In their manners and customs and ways of thought the Bohemians strongly resemble the Germans, particularly the South Germans, with whom they have been in close contact in the old world for over a thousand years. They are industrious and saving, sociable and hospitable;

their favorite beverage at social gatherings and entertainments is beer, and "Bohemian beer" of different make has in recent years become quite popular in this country of ours. Immoderate indulgence in their favorite drink may doubtless sometimes be observed among them as among others, especially in the large cities; but as a rule, they are sober, law-abiding and extremely goodnatured.

In religion, Roman Catholicism predominates among the Bohemians and they have a large number of churches, priests and parish schools in the United States. The Protestants also have numerous places of worship. Large numbers of the Bohemians, however, keep apart from all churches and religious denominations. They are liberals, free-thinkers and agnostics of different shades of opinion, enjoying the inestimable privilege of every American citizen to follow his convictions and enjoy a full personal freedom, so long as he respects the laws and the equal freedom of his fellow-citizens.

The first Bohemian newspaper on this side of the Atlantic was issued thirty years ago at Racine, Wisconsin, the first number appearing on New Year's day 1860. Now there are about twenty five or thirty newspapers in that language published in the United States, both daily and weekly, besides several in the Slovak dialect. Most of them have a good patronage and some have in fact a surprisingly large circulation. Other publications are also quite numerous. The Bohemians, and particularly the farmers, are fond of reading, eager for information, and above all they seek political knowledge, taking the liveliest interest

in whatever concerns the government, public institutions and laws of their adopted country. During the civil war the Bohemians, although at that time quite generally classified as Germans, furnished a considerable contingent of the defenders of the Union and in Chicago a monument will soon be reared by the Bohemians in memory of those of their nationality, who cheerfully took up arms and gave their lives for the unity and freedom of this great country. *)

*) The following is a quotation from an extensive article on the Bohemians in St Louis, Mo., which appeared in the GLOBE DEMOCRAT of February 16, 1890:

"In the territory lying between Seventh and Fourteenth streets on the east and west, and Geyer and Russell avenues on the north and south, there is a population of 25,000 souls, all speaking the language of Bohemia, schooling their children in the ancient tongue, keeping up an acquaintance with a rich and varied literature that dates back to the ninth century, and for the most part worshipping in the Roman Catholic Church, of which Bohemia has been a stanch adherent since the ninth century. A thrifty set are these Bohemians, good citizens in all that the term implies, prompt taxpayers, fully alive to the requirements of civilization; mingling freely in business intercourse with their cousins from other lands, they yet preserve the social customs of their native land, and take an overweening pride in the preservation of its language and its literature. The Bohemian met up town in business life would be casually mistaken for a German, but a tour through their section of the city impresses one with their startling individuality.... In conversation with S. (one of their leading men) I was struck by the ease and purity of his English diction. This is a marked peculiarity of most of the Bohemians. From their own harsh and difficult language they switch off into English which betrays but little trace of foreign accent." —

The statement about the Bohemians having been steadfast adherents of the Church of Rome may be considered as a serious lapsus calami, because it is not borne out by history. The Bohemians were in fact a protestant nation from the burning at the stake of their famous reformers John Huss and Jerome of Prague (in the years 1415 and 1416) until the period of the Thirty Years war, which took its start in Bohemia. Concerning the allusion to the character of the Bohemian language it may be stated as a well known experience, that nearly every language appears "harsh and difficult" to a person who is perfectly ignorant of the same and very rarely hears it spoken. Time and again have I heard, on the European continent, English language characterized as "harsh and difficult", whereas in fact, English is a language not only full of melody as well as power, but probably the easiest of all European languages to learn.

PART I.

SECTION 1.

General observations.

In the Bohemian language Roman characters are used in writing and printing.

In order to read Bohemian it is first necessary to be well acquainted with the sounds, represented by the different letters of the Bohemian alphabet.

In attempting to read English while giving the letters the customary Bohemian sounds, we should find most English words difficult to pronounce and a large proportion of them simply unpronounceable.

The same is true if we attempt to read Bohemian while giving the letters their English sounds.

This explains why English speaking persons, entirely ignorant of any language but their own and supposing that the letters of the alphabet always retain their English sounds, find so many “jawbreakers” in trying to pronounce Bohemian or other foreign words. Foreign persons, ignorant of English, find themselves “in the same boat”, when trying to pronounce English words, and their difficulty is even much greater on account of the complicated character of English orthography.

SECTION 2.

The Bohemian alphabet.

The alphabet of the Bohemian language consists of 26 letters, the same as the English, if accented letters, being simply a modification of the original sounds, are not counted; but, counting all the accented letters separately, we find 41 letters in the Bohemian alphabet.

The following table gives the complete alphabet of the Bohemian language, with the English equivalents as near as possible. Capital letters, of course, correspond with the small letters, accented or unaccented.

THE ALPHABET.

a	has the sound of	<i>o</i>	in	<i>done</i> .
á	“ “ “ “	<i>a</i>	in	<i>arm</i> .
b	“ “ “ “	<i>b</i> .		
c	“ “ “ “	<i>ts</i> .		
č	“ “ “ “	<i>ch</i>	in	<i>child</i> .
d	“ “ “ “	<i>d</i> ;	it takes the sound of d' when followed by the soft vowels ě , i or í .	
d'	“ “ “ “	<i>di</i>	in the French word	<i>diable</i> .
		This mellow sound of <i>d</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>dy</i> , is ordinarily heard in the English expressions <i>would you</i> , <i>could you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>d</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.		
e	“ “ “ “	<i>e</i>	in	<i>end</i> .
é	“ “ “ “	e	in <i>ere</i> , or <i>ai</i> in <i>air</i> .	
ě	“ “ “ “	<i>ea</i>	in <i>beatitude</i> , or <i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ; when it occurs directly after d , n , t , these letters take the soft sound of d' , n' , t' , and ě sounds like e . The syllable je , <i>ye</i> , is an equivalent for ě .	
f	“ “ “ “	<i>f</i> .		
g	“ “ “ “	<i>g</i>	in <i>great</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.	
h	“ “ “ “	<i>h</i>	in	<i>ham</i> .
ch	“ “ “ “	<i>ch</i>	in German and Dutch, also in Welsh, or <i>x</i> in Greek, — somewhat like <i>kh</i> .	
i	“ “ “ “	<i>i</i>	in	<i>pin</i> .
í	“ “ “ “	<i>i</i>	in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .	
j	“ “ “ “	<i>y</i>	in	<i>yes</i> .
k	“ “ “ “	<i>k</i>	in	<i>sink</i> , without an aspirate.
l	“ “ “ “	<i>l</i> .		

m	“	“	“	“	<i>m.</i>
n	“	“	“	“	<i>n.</i>
ñ	“	“	“	“	<i>ñ</i> in Spanish (<i>cañon</i>) or <i>gn</i> in French (<i>campagne</i>); imperfectly rendered by <i>ny</i> .
o	“	“	“	“	<i>o</i> in <i>obey</i> .
ó	“	“	“	“	<i>ó</i> in <i>lord</i> .
p	“	“	“	“	<i>p.</i>
q	“	“	“	“	<i>q</i> in <i>question</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
r	“	“	“	“	<i>r</i> in <i>rest</i> ; it has a sharp, trilling sound.
ř	“	“	“	“	<i>rsh</i> (or <i>rzh</i> , as the Imperial Dictionary of the English language has it;) it is a sound proper to the Bohemian and Polish languages, which must be heard in order to be acquired correctly; the same may be said of the English sound of <i>th</i> , hard and soft.
s	“	“	“	“	<i>s</i> in <i>sink</i> .
š	“	“	“	“	<i>sh.</i>
t	“	“	“	“	<i>t</i> in <i>test</i> ; it takes the sound of ṭ when followed by ě , i or í .
ṭ	“	“	“	“	<i>t</i> in the French word <i>tiens</i> , as commonly pronounced. This mellow sound of <i>t</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>ty</i> , is also heard in the English expressions <i>wouldn't you</i> , <i>couldn't you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>t</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
u	“	“	“	“	<i>u</i> in <i>push</i> .
ú	“	“	“	“	<i>u</i> in <i>rude</i> , or <i>oo</i> in <i>pool</i> .
û	“	“	“	“	
v	“	“	“	“	<i>v</i>
x	“	“	“	“	<i>x</i> in <i>expect</i> .
y	“	“	“	“	<i>y</i> in <i>lynch</i> .
ý	“	“	“	“	<i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
z	“	“	“	“	<i>z</i> in <i>zeal</i> .
ž	“	“	“	“	<i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> , or <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .

-----\

The beginner must try to master thoroughly the peculiar sound of every accented letter in the Bohemian alphabet, before proceeding with his lessons. However, it is evident that of all the accented letters only four will present a certain difficulty: **ď**, **ň**, **ť** and **ř**. The rest are simple. Among the plain consonants, the peculiar sound of **ch** must be well practiced; the combination *kh* gives it only imperfectly.

SECTION 3.

Names of the letters.

The names of the letters of the Bohemian alphabet, though of little consequence to the beginner, are given in the following table as near as can be. However, the Bohemian sounds of the letters, as explained in the foregoing section, must be well kept in mind, in order to name the letters correctly.

For instance: **b** is called *bé*, to be pronounced like *beh*, the *e* sounding like **e** in *ere*, **ai** in *air*, or **a** in *fare*, the final *h* being mute and serving only as a lengthening mark.

Two of the accents (*á*, *ů*), whenever they occur, signify only a prolongation of the sound; the quality of the other accents has been explained in the foregoing section.

In spelling a word, the vowels with a long accent (*á*, *é*, *í*, *ú*, *ý*) are called *long a*, *long e*, etc.; also, **a** with a comma, **e** with a comma, and so forth; *ů* is called **u** with a ring.

THE LETTERS NAMED.

a, á	<i>á</i> (<i>ah</i>)	ch	<i>khá</i>	ř	<i>ersh</i>
b	<i>bé</i>	i, i	<i>ee</i> (<i>in bee</i>)	s	<i>ess</i>
c	<i>tsé</i>	j	<i>yé</i>	š	<i>esh</i>
č	<i>ché</i>	k	<i>ká</i>	t	<i>té</i>
d	<i>dé</i>	l	<i>el</i>	ť	<i>té</i>

d'	<i>d'é</i>	m	<i>em</i>	u, ú, ů	<i>oo</i>
e, é	<i>é, (eh)</i>	n	<i>en</i>		(in boom)
ě	<i>iyé</i>	ň	<i>eñ</i>	v	<i>vé</i>
f	<i>f</i>	o, ó	<i>ó (oh)</i>	x	<i>ix</i>
g	<i>gé</i>	p	<i>pé</i>	y, ý	<i>ee or ypsilon</i>
	(like g in <i>go</i>)	q	<i>koo</i>	z	<i>zet</i>
h	<i>há</i>	r	<i>er</i>	ž	<i>žet</i>

SECTION 4.

Bohemian pronunciation.

After mastering the sounds of the Bohemian letters, the learner may be said to have fully conquered Bohemian pronunciation.

There is in fact only one rule: *Pronounce as it is written, sounding every letter*, — of course, giving the letters their proper Bohemian, and not their English sounds.

The English, French and German written languages abound with silent letters; the Bohemian language has practically none, that is, extremely few. Such as there are, will be pointed out in the course of the following lessons.

It is a well known rule in English, that there can be no written syllable without a vowel. In Bohemian we sometimes encounter syllables made up of consonants without any vowel.

“How in the world can you pronounce that?”

Not infrequently have we heard such a question from persons, having no idea of any language but their own.

But it is just as easy to pronounce such syllables in Bohemian, as it is in English to give utterance to syllables with a mute vowel. An example will elucidate it:

Trn means *thorn*. This word is evidently of the same derivation in both languages.

Now, the Bohemian word **trn** being composed of three consonants and no vowel, how is it pronounced?

In the same way, as the second syllable of the English words *but-tern*, *slattern*, where the vowel *e* is silent. We hear in that second syllable only the sounds of *t-r-n*, the sound of the vowel *e* disappearing entirely; and this explains exactly the pronunciation of Bohemian words of one syllable, or syllables, without a vowel. Syllables with silent vowels abound in English as well as in German, — not quite so in French; — and they are constantly pronounced with the same ease, as the syllables having no vowel sounds in Bohemian.

It is to be observed that such syllables **always** contain one of the two consonants **l** and **r** which are sometimes called “half-vowels”, because in such cases they almost take the place of vowels. In a prolongation of the sound we hear in Bohemian somewhat indistinctly the vowel *e* before the proper sound of those consonants, as if we wrote and partially pronounced:

t^ern instead of **trn** (thorn)

v^elk “ “ **vlk** (wolf)

The number of monosyllabic words without a vowel is not large; but syllables consisting of two or three consonants occur quite often.

For instance: **trčeti**, **strčiti**, means in English *to stick out*, *to push*. Each of these words is composed of three syllables; **tr-če-ti**, **str-či-ti**; and the first syllable of each contains only consonants: **tr**, **str**.

How are they pronounced?

Just like *ter* and *ster* in the English words *bitter*, *blister*. Nobody finds any difficulty in passing over the silent *e* and saying *bittr*, *blistr*.

Among the Bohemian vowels there are some, which are called *soft*, namely: **e**, **ě**, **i**, **í**; and others (**a**, **o**, **u**, **y**) which are called *hard* or *broad*.

Of the soft vowels the last three, **ě**, **i** and **í**, have a softening influence upon some preceding consonants, particularly **n**, **d**, **t**, which they change into the soft sounds of **ñ**, **d'**, **t'**, as noticed in section 1. For instance:

saně	(sleigh)	is pronounced as if spelt	sañe;
paní	(mistress, lady)	is pronounced as if spelt	pañí;
dělo	(cannon)	sounds like	d'elo;
dílo	(work).....		d'ílo;
tělo	(body)....		t'elo;
tisk	(printing).....		tisk;

This will always be plainly indicated in the pronouncing columns of the practical lessons contained in Part II.

Care must be taken to give every long vowel (**á, é, í, ý, ó, ú, ů**) its proper *long* sound, because a shortened sound would often make the word unintelligible or change its meaning, the same as in English in numerous cases. For instance:

pata means *heel*; **pátá** means the *fifth* (in the feminine gender). The only difference is in the length of the vowels. Likewise in English: **lid** and **lead** have the same vowel sound, the only difference being in its length or quantity. —

We have said all it is necessary to say about Bohemian pronunciation and in closing we again enjoin the only rule, which obtains in the Bohemian with very few exceptions: **Pronounce as it is written**, — giving every letter its proper Bohemian sound.

SECTION 5.

Parts of speech.

In Bohemian the parts of speech or classes of words are the same as in English excepting the article.

In English we have the definite article *the* and the indefinite article *a, an*. In French, masculine, feminine, *le, la*, — *un, une*; in German, masculine, feminine and neutre, *der, die, das*, — *ein, eine, ein*.)

In Bohemian there is no article, definite or indefinite. In this regard, Bohemian agrees with Latin.

We say in English: *the house, the houses, a house*; in Bohemian *dům, domy, dům*.

SECTION 6.

Gender.

But, having no article, the Bohemian noun suffers nevertheless from the useless infliction of grammatical gender in the same degree as the German, Latin and Greek. It has three genders, namely: masculine, feminine and neutre

The English language has rejected all distinction of gender, attributing sex to living beings only, which is one of the greatest advantages the English language has over all other European tongues, ancient and modern.

In the absence of an article in Bohemian, if we want to designate the gender of a noun, we use the indicative pronoun *this* or *that*, namely: **ten** for the masculine, **ta** for the feminine and **to** for the neutre gender. Hence we say:

ten dům	<i>this (or that) house</i>
ta bouda	<i>this (or that) hut</i>
to okno	<i>this (or that) window</i>

In the plural it is **ti** for living masculine beings:

ti muži, *these (or those) men*;

ty for inanimate masculine things and for the feminine gender; **ta** for the neutre:

ty domy, *these or those houses*;

ty boudy, *these or those huts*;

ta okna, *these or those windows*.

However, in colloquial parlance, **ty** is heard in the plural regardless of gender. —

Always remember, that the article has no existence in Bohemian; and that the words **ten, ta, to, — ti, ty, ta**, when used before a noun, are simply indicative pronouns and nothing else.

SECTION 7.

Grammatical rules in general.

Bohemian is one of the highly inflected languages, like German or the classic tongues, which is doubtless a disadvantage, to be deplored especially from the standpoint of the learner. On account mainly of the useless distinction of gender, which permeates the whole structure of the Bohemian language, grammatical forms and rules are numerous, forming the principal difficulty encountered in the study of the language.

But to some extent, at least, that difficulty is offset by colloquial usage, which largely disregards the artificial distinction of gender in the employment of pronouns, adjectives and verbs, as they relate to nouns of different gender. This serves to simplify the matter somewhat for the learner of Bohemian as commonly spoken.

In the following lessons we try to imitate the natural method of learning a language. We do not teach the child grammatical rules and complications before it knows how to speak. We teach its words and their connection in phrases, expressing thoughts.

Consequently we do not intend to cram the beginner at the outset with all sorts of grammatical rules. There are not thousands but millions of people using the Bohemian language and knowing little of the rules and perplexities of its grammar. The same is true of every other living tongue.

This Course being designed solely for practical purposes, it will be our aim to impart to the learner some practical knowledge of the language in the easiest, most natural and most direct way possible. We shall therefore interpolate in the following lessons only such grammatical rules, as

may appear to be indispensable to facilitate the student's progress and which may easily be mastered *en passant*, or, so to say, by a method of easy induction.

A more extended and methodical review of the Bohemian grammar will be found in the last part of this book. After acquiring to a certain degree a practical knowledge of the language, the learner will find it much easier to grapple with the details of its grammar, which in the beginning would serve only to perplex him unnecessarily and to dampen his ardor. And when a moderate knowledge of the tongue is attained, the progressive student will naturally take a Dictionary of the English and Bohemian languages to his aid, which will make further progress rapid and pleasing.

The main difficulty is in the start, as in every other language. It requires earnestness of purpose and perseverance. The beginner must not allow himself to be discouraged by such initial difficulties, as he is sure to meet with; and whenever the pronunciation of an accented letter or a word, as given in this book, seems to be a stumbling-block, we would advise him to ask some neighbor or acquaintance, who speaks Bohemian, to pronounce it for him repeatedly, so that his ear may grow accustomed to the sound and the same may become quite familiar to him. If he fails to catch it forthwith let him try again and again, until he succeeds. Let him remember, that the thousands of Bohemians who learn English find similar difficulties in their way; and numbers of those, who at first felt discouraged, thinking they could never master the intricacies of the English tongue, to-day speak and write it tolerably well, — many of them with fluency and grace.

SECTION 8.

The accent..

In the Bohemian language the accent is always placed upon the first syllable; consequently its rules, which in English have to be closely studied, do not offer any difficulty whatever. Only when a noun is preceded by a preposition of one syllable, the accent is transferred and placed upon that preposition.

SECTION 9.

Ty and **vy**, — *thou* and *you*.

The personal pronoun **ty** of the second person singular is used in Bohemian in family circles, and in addressing familiar or intimate friends. It expresses endearment, familiarity or close friendship.

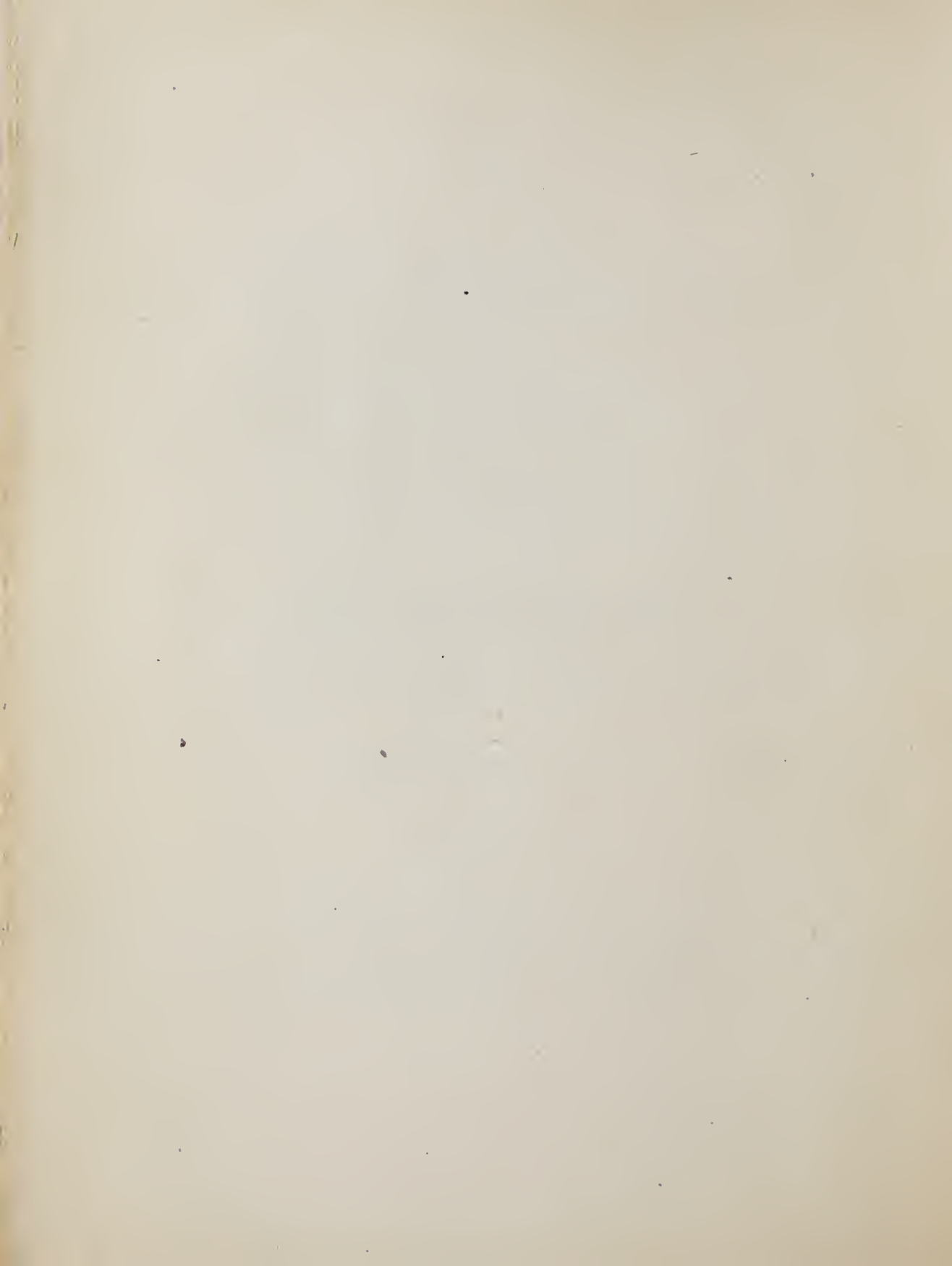
But among the Bohemians in America it is very often improperly employed instead of **vy** (*you*) in addressing others, which latter word in Bohemian has the same general usage as in English. By a curious mistake most of the original Bohemian settlers in America, like many of the Germans, translated the English *you* by **ty**, fancying the meaning to be identical and supposing that in English the second person singular is used in addressing another person, instead of the second person *plural*, as is the proper custom in Bohemian. But the rule in ordinary discourse is almost the same in English as in Bohemian, the second person plural (*you*, **vy**) being employed in addressing others and always combined with a plural verb, there being only a few exceptions in Bohemian as stated above. The French language follows exactly the same rule as the Bohemian: but in German discourse the third person plural is used in speaking to another (**Sie**, *they*).

This explanation, though somewhat lengthy, has been deemed necessary at the outset.

SECTION 10.

In vulgar language, the sound of the consonant **v** is often improperly placed before the initial vowel **o**, so that for instance, in place of a pure **on**, **ona**, **ono** (he, she, it) we hear **von**, **vona**, **vono**. It is something similar to the vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before an initial vowel. *H'englishman*, *h'eye-tooth*, instead of *Englishman*, *eye-tooth*.

PART II.



Rules of pronunciation.

The following rules must constantly be kept in mind:

1—The Bohemian pronunciation in the following lessons is always given in *italics*.

2—We proceed upon the supposition that section 2, part I, explaining the sounds of all the Bohemian letters, and particularly the sounds of accented vowels, has been fully digested by the beginner.

3—Consequently we do not attempt, in the following lessons, to give English equivalents for the long vowels **á** and **é**, which are of very frequent occurrence, because it would be a useless complication. For the long vowels **í** and **ý**, whose sound is identical, the English *ee* as heard in *seen* will have to answer. But it is to be observed that in ordinary Bohemian discourse the sound of **ý** is frequently (in fact, nearly always) changed into **ej**, i. e., *ey* as heard in *they*, *obey*. The word **sýr** (cheese), for instance, is properly pronounced *seer*, but commonly *seyr*.

4—The sound of the Bohemian short vowels **a**, **e**, **o**, is represented by *ă*, *ě*, *ô*; but the marked characters *ǎ*, *ǝ*, *ǒ* are avoided when their use appears to be superfluous. For instance the pronunciation of words like **tento** (this one) **pense** (pension), **ponor** (draught of a ship) is sufficiently indicated by *tentô*, *pensě*, *ponor* to an English-speaking beginner; and it would be superfluous to write *těntô*, *pěnsě*, *pônôr*.

5—The short sound of **i** is given by *i*, as heard in *pin*. When the long English sound of *i* (as heard in *dine*) is to be employed a full-face **i** or **I** will stand for it, which however is of rare occurrence.

6—Short **y** always retains its SHORT English sound as heard in the word **lynch**, and we use for it in the pronouncing column either *i* or *y*, as may be more appropriate. The combination **ej** will commonly be represented by *ey*, which must always be pronounced like *ey* in *they*, *whey*, *obey*.

7—The short vowel **u** is represented by *ũ*, but frequently also by *oo*, where a slight lengthening of the sound is not only admissible, but conducive to a clear enunciation. Long **ú** and **ũ** are naturally always rendered by *oo*, as heard in *boot*.

8—The vowel **ě**, when preceded by **d**, **n**, **t**, changes them into **ď**, **ň**, **ť**, and has then the sound of a simple *e*. When it retains its proper sound of **ě**, we commonly write it *ye* in the pronouncing column. The student must be careful always to sound it like *ye* in the English words *yes*, *yet*, *yell*, and NEVER like the word *ye*, meaning “you”. For instance: **mě**, **právě**, (me, just). *mye*, *právyē*, (*myě*, *právyě*).

The syllable **je** is identical in pronunciation with **ě**, and is also rendered by *ye*; for example: **jen** (only), *yen*. **Je** is generally used in common discourse as an abbreviation of **jest**, *yest* (is); to guard against possible mispronunciation, we will always write it *yě*.

9—The sound of the soft consonants **ď**, **ň**, **ť** is represented by the combination *dy*, *ny*, *ty*, when practicable, which is rarely the case. Whenever this is found impracticable, or when it would only serve to obscure instead of facilitating matters, a full-face **ď**, **ň**, **ť** it is used in the pronouncing column and the student must try his best to give it the proper Bohemian sound.

Inflexible rule: When the soft vowels **ě**, **i**, **í** follow after **d**, **n**, **t**, these consonants are softened into **ď**, **ň**, **ť**, and will be so marked.

10—To represent the sound of **ch**, the combined letters *kh* are invariably employed, for want of a better substitute. The sound of **ř** is given by *rsh*, for the same reason.*)

*) The letter **ř** was unknown in the old Bohemian language and is wisely rejected by the Slovaks, who use the letter **r** in its place. In many cases also, where its use is insisted upon by strict and pedantic grammarians, it is avoided by the practical common sense of the people.

11—For the letter *č* we use *ch* or *tch* as heard in *chap*; *wretch*; for *š* the English equivalent *sh* is used; for the Bohemian *j*, the letter *y* as heard in *yonder* is made to answer. A final *s* in Bohemian has always the sharp hissing sound and will be marked *ss*.

12—For the sound of *ž* the Imperial Dictionary gives *zh* as a substitute; but we retain the full-face Bohemian *ž* in the pronouncing column, as nothing would be gained by such a substitution. It is always pronounced like *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure*. But in some cases, when terminating a word or a syllable, the letter *ž* takes the sharper sound of *sh* and will be so noted.

THE DIPHTHONG *ou*.

This is the only diphthong in the Bohemian language, and it must always be pronounced like *ou* in *dough*, or like the word *owe*, — never like *ou* in *pound* or *ghoul*. We shall commonly mark it *oŭ*.

ABBREVIATIONS

will be avoided as much as possible, and their meaning will in every case be self-evident. — The letters *m*, *f*, *n* beside a noun denote gender (masculine, feminine, neutre). — *Sing.* means singular number; *pl.* means plural number.

THE HYPHEN.

Syllables without a vowel — but always containing one of the so-called “semi-vowels” *l* and *r*, as before observed, — are separated from other syllables of the same word by a hyphen, to make their separate pronunciation apparent. For instance: *brzo* (soon), *br-zŏ*, — the syllable *br* being pronounced exactly like *bor* in the English words *labor*, *neighbor*.

However, a silent *e* will often be interpolated in such syllables, to elucidate their pronunciation; for instance: *prší*, *p^ershee*, it rains.

THE APOSTROPHE

will be used to prevent a collusion of two letters, into which an English-speaking beginner might easily be entrapped, and to keep them separate; as, for example: *měljsem* (I had), pronounced *m'yell sēm*, — and not *my-ell sēm*.

LESSON I.

Já	<i>yá</i>	I	ona	<i>ōnǎ</i>	she
ty	<i>ty</i>	thou (<i>improperly</i> you)	ono	<i>ōnǒ</i>	it
on	<i>ōn</i>	he	tén, ta, to,	<i>ten, tǎ, tǒ,</i>	this, that
		ty	<i>ty,</i>	that	<i>or</i> those
		tu, zde	<i>tǔ, zdě</i>	here	
		a, i	<i>ǎ, i</i>	and	
		ano, ne	<i>ǎnǒ. ně</i>	yes, no	
		za	<i>zǎ</i>	for;	půl <i>pool</i> half
		na	<i>nǎ</i>	on	

Já mám,	<i>yá mám,</i>	{	I have	<i>or</i>	on má,	<i>õn má,</i>	{	he has	<i>or</i>
mám	<i>mám</i>		I have got	má	<i>má</i>	he has got			
mám?	<i>mám?</i>		have I?		má?	<i>má?</i>		has he?	
ty máš,	<i>ty másh,</i>	{	thou hast	<i>or</i>	ona má,	<i>õnǎ má,</i>	{	she has	<i>or</i>
máš	<i>másh</i>		thou hast got	má	<i>má</i>	she has got			
			(<i>improperly</i> : you have)		ono má,	<i>õnõ má,</i>		it has	<i>or</i>
máš	<i>másh</i>		hast thou? (have you?)		má	<i>má</i>		it has got	

dollar, m.	<i>dollár</i>	dollar	účet, m.	<i>oo-chet,</i>	bill, account
půl-dollar, m.	<i>pool-d.</i>	half-a-dollar	dluh, m.	<i>dlooh</i>	debt
cent, m.	<i>tsent</i>	cent	na dluh	<i>nǎ dlooh</i>	on trust, on credit
peníze, pl.	<i>peñeezě</i>	money <i>or</i> cash	na účet	<i>nǎ-oochet,</i>	on trust, on credit
hotové	<i>hōtové</i>	cash	maso, n.	<i>mǎsǒ</i>	meat

chleb, m.	<i>khleb</i>	} bread	pivo, n.	<i>peevõ</i>	beer
chleba	<i>khlebã</i>		vino, n.	<i>veenõ</i>	wine
sýr, m.	<i>seer</i>	cheese	soda, f.	<i>sodã</i>	soda
máslo, n.	<i>mãslõ</i>	butter	voda, f.	<i>vodã</i>	water

Note 1. Pronounce **má** like *ma'a*, the vulgar abbreviation of Mamma; and **mám** like *ma'am*, the vulgar abbreviation of Madam; it will assist in catching the true sound,

Note 2. In Bohemian, **míti** *meet'i* (to have), is not an auxiliary verb as in English, but always an independent verb.

Note 3. **Soda** is commonly used as an abbreviation of **sodovka**, soda-water. — In vulgar speech, the expression **jo**, *yõ*, (from the German *ja*) is often heard instead of **ano**, *yes*.

Note 4. The long vowel **ú**, *oo*, which occurs only at the beginning of a word or syllable, is often changed into **ou**, *oũ*, and so pronounced. Hence we frequently hear **oučet**, *oũchet*, instead of **účet**, *oochet*, and the like.

EXERCISES.

Já mám peníze, I have money.

Mám peníze, I have money.

Ty máš peníze, thou hast money
(sometimes *improperly* used for:
you have money, See Section 7.
Part I.)

On má hotové, he has the cash.

Ona má chleba, she has bread (*or*
the bread).

Ona má dollar, she has a dollar.

Ona má cent, she has a cent.

Já mám účet, I have the bill.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Ty máš dluh, thou hast (you have)
a debt.

On má dluh, he has a debt.

Já mám ten účet, I have the bill.

Mám ten účet? have I that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš ten účet? hast thou (have
you) that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš dollar? hast thou (have you)
a dollar?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-
dollar.

Máte peníze? have you money?

Má peníze? has he money?

Má on ty peníze? has he that money?

On má dollar, he has a dollar.

On má ten dollar, he has that dollar.

Ona má ty peníze, she has that money.

Ona má dluh, she has a debt.

Ona má zde účet, she has an account here.

Ona má ten účet, she has that bill.

Mám chleba, I have bread.

A já mám maso, and I have meat.

Máš chleba? hast thou (have you) bread?

Ano, mám; yes, I have.

Máš maso? hast thou (have you) meat?

Ne, no.

Mám chleba a maso, I have bread and meat.

A já mám pivo, and I have beer.

To pivo, that beer (*or* this beer).

To pivo a to víno, that beer and that wine.

Chleba za peníze } bread for cash

a pivo na dluh, } and beer on trust.

Maso za hotové } meat for cash and

a víno na účet } wine on account.

Má ten chleba } has he that bread

a to máslo? } and that butter?

Chleba i voda, bread and water.

Máslo a sýr, butter and cheese.

Note 5. Gender of the nouns. It will be observed that the nouns

dollar

účet

chleba

cent

dluh

sýr

are all of the masculine gender, and using the indicative pronoun we say: **ten dollar, ten cent,** etc.

Nouns terminating in consonants are mostly of the masculine gender.

The nouns **voda, soda,** are of the feminine gender: **ta voda, ta soda.**

Nouns terminating in a are always of the feminine gender.

But some feminine nouns also terminate in **ě** and in consonants: for instance **země,** earth (land, country): **kost',** bone; **daň,** tax.

The nouns **maso, máslo, pivo, víno,** are neutre: **to maso, to máslo,** etc.

Nouns terminating in o are always of the neutre gender.

But some neutre nouns have the termination **e**, **ě** or **í**; for instance **pole**, field; **doupě**, den; **osení**, crop.

Note 6. The noun **peníze** (money) is in the plural, the singular **peníz**, *peňeez*, means either "a coin" or "an amount".

LESSON II.

My	<i>me</i>	we	máme	<i>mámě</i>	we have
vy	<i>vy</i>	you	máte	<i>mátě</i>	you have
oni	<i>õñi</i>	they	mají	<i>mǎ-yee</i>	they have

Note 1. In the third person plural **oni** *õñi* (they) is used in the masculine gender for animate creatures; **ony**, *õny* (they) in the feminine gender, and in the masculine for inanimate things; **ona** *õnǎ* (they) in the neutre gender.

But in common discourse no such grammatical distinction is made and the masculine form **oni** is employed in all cases.

papír, m.	<i>pǎpeer</i>	paper	plac, m.	<i>plǎts</i>	} place or
pero, n.	<i>perǒ</i>	pen	místo, n.	<i>meestǒ</i>	
inkoust, m.	<i>inkoũst</i>	ink	stůl, m.	<i>stool</i>	table

vůz, m.	<i>vooz</i>	wagon	seno, n.	<i>sěňǒ</i>	hay
bič, m.	<i>bitch</i>	whip	obilí, n.	<i>õbe-lee</i>	grain
pytel, m.	<i>pitěll</i>	sack	potah, m.	<i>potǎh</i>	team

čas, m. *chǎss* time

tam	<i>tǎm</i>	there	dost	<i>dǒst</i>	enough
jen, jenom	<i>yey, yenǒm</i>	only	každý	<i>kǎždee</i>	every one

všichni, *fshikhhñi* all

EXERCISES.

My máme papír,	we have paper.	Zde máte stůl,	here you have a table.
Máte pero?	have you a pen?	Máme vůz,	we have a wagon.
Ano, mám;	yes, I have.	On má bič,	he has a whip.
Máte inkoust?	have you ink?	Ona má pytel,	she has a sack.
Mám,	I have.	Mají potah,	they have a team.
Máte peníze?	have you money?	Oni mají obilí a seno,	they have grain and hay.
Zde máte plac,	here you have a place.	Mají obilí a seno?	have they grain and hay?
Tam máte místo,	there you have a place.	Mají jen seno,	they have only hay.
Zde má každý místo,	here every one has a place.	Oni mají jenom pytel,	they have only a sack.
Tam mají všichni místo,	there they all have a place.	Máme čas,	we have time.

Note 2. As observed in *všichni* (all), when a word commences with the letter *v* followed by another *consonant*, the initial *v* takes the sharp sound of an *f*, whenever the facility of pronunciation naturally requires that modification of the sound.

LESSON III.

Kde	<i>gdě</i>	where	ne	<i>ně</i>	no, not
kdy	<i>gdy</i>	when	proč	<i>proč</i>	why
kdo	<i>gdo</i>	who	proto že	<i>proto že</i>	because
teď	<i>teď</i>	} now, at present	ani	<i>ani</i>	} no, not one, not even, neither—nor
nyní	<i>nyní</i>				
nemám	<i>nemám</i>	I have not, I have not got	nemáme	<i>nemáme</i>	we have not
nemáš	<i>nemáš</i>	thou hast (you have) not	nemáte	<i>nemáte</i>	you have not
nemá	<i>nemá</i>	he (she, it) has not	nemají	<i>nemají</i>	they have not

Note 1. In the words *kde*, *kdy*, *kdo* the hard consonant *k* is pronounced like *g* in *go*. In *nemám*, *nemáš*, etc., *nem* has exactly the same sound as in the word *nemesis*.

Note 2. Negation is always expressed by the prefix *ne*.

EXERCISES.

Nemám peníze, I have no money.

Nemáš peníze? hast thou no money?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Ne; no.

Proč nemá peníze? why has he (she, it) no money?

Proto že nemá obilí, because he has no grain.

Nemáme účet, we have no account.

Nemáte hotové? have you no cash?

Nemáte ani dollar? have you not even a dollar?

Nemá ani cent? has he not a cent?

Nemám ani dollar, I have not a dollar.

Nemá ani cent, he has not a cent.

Nemají ani chleb, ani máslo; they have neither bread nor butter.

Nemají chleba, ani máslo, ani sýr; they have no bread, no butter and no cheese.

Nemáme papír, pero, ani inkoust; we have no paper, no pen and no ink.

Nemáte plac? have you no place?

Zde nemáme místo, we have no place here,

Tam nemáme místo, we have no place there.

Máš čas? hast thou time?

Máte čas? } have you time?

Máte kdy? }

Nemám čas, } I have no time.

Nemám kdy, }

Ted' nemáme čas, we have no time now.

Nyní nemají čas, they have no time now.

Kdy máte čas? when have you time?

Kdy máme čas? when have we time?

Nyní; now.

Kdo má peníze? who has money?

Kdo má čas? who has time?

Kde máš peníze? where hast thou the money?

Kde máte peníze? where have you the money?

Kdo nemá peníze? who has no money?

Kdo má dluh? who has a debt?

Kde máte dluh? where have you a debt?

Proč nemáte hotové? why have you not the cash?

LESSON IV.

Co	<i>tsǒ</i>	what	moc	<i>mǒts</i>	} much, many
co to	<i>tsǒ tǒ</i>	what it is (that)	mnoho	<i>mnohǒ</i>	
něco	<i>ñetsǒ</i>	something	tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very; too
nie	<i>ñits</i>	nothing	jak	<i>yǎk</i>	how
pranic	<i>prǎñits</i>	nothing at all	tak	<i>tǎk</i>	so

EXERCISES.

Já mám něco. I have something.

Já nemám nic. Nemám nic. I have nothing.

Já mám dollar, I have a dollar

Nemám ani dollar, I have not even a dollar.

Nemám pranic, I have nothing at all.

Nemáš nic, thou hast nothing.

Nemáte nic, you have nothing.

Oni nemají nic, they have nothing.

Co to máš? what is it thou hast got?

Máš něco? hast thou anything?

Co to máte? what have you? (what is it you have? what have you got?)

Máte něco? have you anything?

Co to mají? what have they got?

Nemáte nic? have you nothing?

Nemáte pranic? have you nothing at all?

Tak vy nemáte nic, so you have nothing.

Nie nemám, I have nothing.

Pranic nemáme, we have nothing at all.

Pranic nemají, they have nothing at all.

Ani víno, ani pivo nemají; they have neither wine, nor beer.

Mám moc, I have much.

Máme mnoho, we have much.

Ty nemáš moc, thou hast not much.

Vy nemáte moc, you have not much.

Oni nemají mnoho, they have not much.

Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much?

Tuze moc. Tuze mnoho; very much.

Ne moc. Ne mnoho; not much.

Ne tuze moc, not very much.

Ne tuze mnoho, " " "

Ne tak tuze mnoho, not so very much.

Máš dost? hast thou enough.

Máte dost? have you enough?

Ano, mám dost; yes, I have enough.

Nemám dost, I have not enough.

To je tuze mnoho, co máte; that is very much, what you have got.

LESSON V.

někdo	něgdě	somebody, some one	někde	něgdě	somewhere, anywhere
nikdo	nikde	nobody, no one	nikde	nikde	nowhere
žádný	žádně		nikdy	nikdy	never
vždy	vždy	always, all the time, ever	stále	stále	
vždycky	vždy-tski*)		pořád*)	porshád	
práce, f.	prátsě	work	co dělat	tsě d'elăt	to do.

EXERCISES.

Máte něco? have you something?

Máte někde něco? have you got something, anywhere?

Nemáme nikde nic, we have got nothing, nowhere.

Kdo má něco? who has something?

Žádný nic, nobody (has) anything.

Nikdo nemá nic, nobody has anything.

Nemáme žádný nic; nobody (none of us) has anything.

Nikdo nemá tuze moc, nobody has too much.

Nemám nikde nic, I have not anything anywhere.

Ty nemáš nikdy nic, thou never hast anything.

Vy nemáte nikdy nic, you never have anything.

Mám vždy (dycky) něco, I always have something.

Máte vždycky něco, you always have something.

Pořád něco máte, you always have something.

Ty pořád něco máš, thou hast always something.

Stále něco máte, you always have something.

Neustále něco mají, they always have something.

Nemám pořád nic, I never have anything.

Stále nemá nic, he never has anything.

*) Colloquially dycky, dit-ski; pořád, porád.

This is always one and the same sentence, the words fitting together at the pleasure of the speaker. But in English we are rigidly bound to a certain order: *nobody has much*. It would be impossible to transpose the words and say: *much has nobody; has nobody much*.

Of course, not every Bohemian sentence yields to transposition to the same extent, but nearly every one yields more or less. Let us take another illustration at random from the foregoing exercises:

Proto že mám moc práce, *because I have much work (much to do)* may be expressed as follows, without changing the sense:

proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce moc mám;
proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce mám moc.

In the English sentence no transposition is possible. What an immense help this freedom of transposition is, especially in poetry, will be apparent to the student.

LESSON VI.

Já jsem jsem	yá sěm sěm	}	I am		ty jsi jsi	ty si si	}	thou art
on jest, ona “ ono “	on yest; oně “; oně “;		on je, ona “ ono “		on yě; oně “; oně “;		jest, je “ “ “ “	he is she is it is
My jsme, jsme	me smě smě	}	we are		vy jste jste	vee stě stě	}	you are
oni (ony, json	ona) json		oni (ony, soň		oně (ony, oně)	soň	}	they are

Note 1. The verb *býti*, *bee'ti* (to be) is the only auxiliary verb in the Bohemian language.

Jsem, jsi, jsme, jste, jsou, as shown above, are pronounced: *sem, si, smě, stě, soŭ*. In spelling the initial *j* is also frequently omitted, even by some of the best writers: *sem, si, sme, ste, sou*.

<i>dobrý, á, é</i>	<i>dobree</i>	good	<i>také, taky</i>	<i>táke</i>	also, too;
<i>špatný, á, é</i>	<i>špātnee</i>	bad	<i>ale</i>	<i>álě</i>	but
<i>drahý, á, é</i>	<i>dráhee</i>	dear	<i>zde, tu, tady</i>	<i>zdě, tŭ, tǎde</i>	here,
<i>lacný, á, é</i>	<i>lǎtsinee</i>	cheap			present:
<i>čerstvý, á, é</i>	<i>cherstvee</i>	fresh	<i>těda</i>	<i>těďǎ</i>	well then;
<i>doma</i>	<i>dōmǎ</i>	at home	<i>už, již</i>	<i>ŭsh, yeež</i>	already

není neňí (colloquially: *nejní, neyňí*), he (she, it) is not
pravda, přǎvdǎ true, truth

EXERCISES.

<i>Jsem zde,</i>	I am here.	<i>Ano, už jsou tu!</i>	Yes, they are here already.
<i>Zde jsem,</i>	here I am.	<i>Těda jsou všichni zde;</i>	well, then they are all here.
<i>Já jsem už zde,</i>	I am here already.	<i>Proč jsme zde?</i>	why are we here? (what are we here for?)
<i>Jsi zde?</i>	art thou here?	<i>Proč vy jste tu?</i>	why are you here?
<i>Už jsem tu,</i>	I am here already.	<i>A proč on tady je?</i>	and why is he present?
<i>Jste už tady?</i>	are you already here?	<i>Proč jsou ty zde?</i>	why are those here?
<i>Už jsme tady,</i>	we are here already.		
<i>My jsme už také zde,</i>	we are also here already.		
<i>Jsou už zde?</i>	are they already here?		

<i>Máme dobrý chleba,</i>	we have good bread.	<i>Ano, je dobrý;</i>	yes, it is good.
<i>Je ten chleba dobrý?</i>	is this bread good?	<i>Ale je drahý,</i>	but it is dear.
		<i>My máme chleba doma,</i>	we have bread at home.

Je čerstvý?	is it fresh?	Vždyť (dyť) není drahý; but it is
Ano, ten chleba je čerstvý,	yes, that	<i>not</i> dear.
bread is fresh.		
Ale proč je tak drahý?	but why is	Ale vždyť není drahý; why, it ain't
it so dear?		dear at all.
Není drahý,	it is not dear.	Je laciný, it is cheap.
Jest tuze drahý,	it is very dear.	Je dost laciný, it is cheap enough.
		Je tuze laciný, it is very cheap.

Ten sýr je dobrý,	that cheese is	My máme dobré víno,	we have
good.		good wine.	
Je čerstvý,	it is fresh.	Kde mají dobré pivo?	where do
To pivo je taky dobré,	that beer is	they have (keep) good beer?	
also good.		Zde všude,	here everywhere.
Ano, to je pravda;	yes, that is true.	Je to pravda?	is it true? .
Je čerstvé,	it is fresh.	Ano, to je pravda;	yes, that is true.
Ale ta soda není dobrá,	but this	Zde všude mají dobré pivo,	here
soda-water is not good.		they everywhere have good beer.	
To víno je špatné,	that wine is bad.	Ale víno nemají dobré,	but their
Proč není to víno také tak dobré?	why is that wine not just as good?	wine is not good (<i>literally</i> : but	wine they have not good).
		Proč nemáte dobré víno?	why
		have you not good wine?	

Note 2. It will be observed that the termination of the adjectives *dobrý, drahý* etc. changes according to gender.

The masculine gender terminates in ý			
the feminine	"	"	" á
the neutre	"	"	" é
dobrý sýr (masc.),	<i>dobree seer,</i>	good cheese;	
dobrá voda (fem.),	<i>dobrá vŏďá,</i>	good water;	
dobré pivo (neut.),	<i>dobré (eh) pivŏ,</i>	good beer.	

The feminine and neutre will always be indicated by placing *á, é* after the masculine adjective, as above.

In common conversation, however, the masculine termination is also used in the neutre gender: **dobrý pivo**; so that practically we hear only the two terminations *ý* and *á*: **dobrý, dobrá**.

Note 3. In ordinary speech the final *ý* of all adjectives in the masculine gender is pronounced *ey* (as in *they*), and such is in fact the prevalent custom in relation to the long letter *ý*, no matter where it occurs, as stated in the "Rules of Pronunciation". Hence we hear *dobrey, dráhey* in the masculine gender, instead of *dobree, dráhee*. This is the general colloquial usage, by no means confined to the uneducated classes. It has sprung up quite naturally because the sound of *ey* is not only easier, but also more euphonious than the sound of *ee*, in most such cases. Listening to the common conversation of Bohemians, the beginner will almost constantly hear the long *ý* pronounced *ey*.

LESSON VII.

Rád	<i>rád</i>	glad	nemíti rád	<i>nemeet'i rád</i> , (<i>nemeet</i>
nerad	<i>nerád</i>	sorry		<i>rád</i>), to dislike
rádi	<i>rád'i</i>	} (the same in plural)	býti rád	<i>beet'i rád</i> , (<i>beet rád</i>), to
neradi	<i>nerad'i</i>			be glad
míti rád	<i>meet'i rád</i> (<i>meet rád</i>)	to like	býti nerad	<i>beet'i nerád</i> (<i>beet nerád</i>), to be sorry
vždyť	<i>vždiť</i>	} but, well, yet	veliký, á, é	<i>velíkee</i> } large,
dyť (colloquial)	<i>dyť</i>		velký	<i>velkee</i> } great, big
tak	<i>ták</i>	so, such	malý, á, é	<i>málee</i> small, little
také tak	} <i>tákě</i> <i>ták</i> }	just so,	dlouhý, á, é	<i>dloúhee</i> long
tuky tak		just as	krátký, á, é	<i>krátkee</i> short
všude	<i>fshudě</i>	} every-	pravý, á, é	<i>právee</i> right, genuine
všade	<i>fshădě</i>		falešný, á, é	<i>făleshnee</i> false
všudy	<i>fshude</i>	where	plný, á, é	<i>pl-nee</i> full
			prázny, á, é	<i>práznee</i> empty

i	e	oh, well	nebo	něbď	or
že	žě	that	jako	yăkď	as, like
že je	žě yě	that he (she, it) is	skoro	skorď	almost
zase	ză-sě	} again	tomu	tďmď	of it
zas	zăss		žádné	žádné	none
opět	op-yet		dlužen	dloožen	indebted

EXERCISES.

Já jsem rád, I am glad.

To sem rád! I am so glad.

Tuze rád! very glad!

Jsme tomu rádi, we are glad of it.

Tuze jsme tomu rádi, we are very glad of it.

Oni jsou tomu moc rádi, they are very glad of it.

Jsi rád nebo ne? art thou glad or not?

Jste tomu rádi? are you glad of it?

Máte to rád? (speaking to one person) do you like it?

Nemám to rád, I do not like it.

Nic to nemám rád, I do not like it at all.

Nemají to rádi. Oni to nemají rádi. They do not like it.

Jsem rád že mám peníze; I am glad (that) I have money.

Ten dollar je falešný; that dollar is false.

Není. je pravý; no, it is genuine.

Já mám vždycky dobré peníze, I have always good money.

Máte vůz plný? have you a full wagon (is your wagon full)?

Vůz není plný, the wagon is not full.

On je skoro prázdný, it is almost empty.

On je rád že má prázdný vůz; he is glad that he has an empty wagon.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Mám jen malý dluh, I have only a small debt.

Ale ty máš (vy máte) velký dluh; but thou hast (you have) a big debt.

Mám také tak velký dluh jako vy; I have just as large a debt as you.

Vždyť máte peníze! but you have money!

I nemám žádné; oh, I have none (well, I have none).

On je všude dlužen, he is indebted everywhere (he owes everybody).

Už zase máme peníze, again we have (some) money.

Ale vy zas už nemáte peníze, but you again have no money.

Já jsem tuze rád, že mám peníze! I am very glad that I have money!

On je tuze nerad, že je dlužen; he is very sorry, that he is in debt.
Proč je dlužen? why is he in debt?
Proto že nemá peníze, because he has no money.

Vždyť (dyť) on nemá skoro žádný dluh; well, he has almost no debt (is almost out of debt).

To je pravda, that is true.

On není dlužen, he is not in debt.

Mám velký dluh, nebo malý? have I a large debt or a small one?

Tu jest účet, here is the bill.

To není dlouhý účet, that is not a long bill.

Je jenom krátký, it is only short.

Ano, velmi krátký; yes, very short.

Máte jen tak malý účet? have you only such a small bill?

Nemám rád velký účet, I do not like to have a large account.

Je velký dost, it is large enough.

Nemám mnoho, I have not much.

To je nic, that is nothing.

To je jako nic, that is like nothing.

To že je nic? this you call nothing (*literally*: that this is nothing)?

Oni jsou rádi, že tam není žádný dluh; they are glad, that there is not any debt there.

I je tam dluh, ale malý; well, there is a debt there, but a small one.

Pravda, jenom malý; true, only a small one.

Ano, tak to je; yes, it is so.

Ne, tak to není; no, it is not so,

Účet je pravý the bill is right.

Ten účet není pravý, that bill is not right.

Je falešný, it is false.

A proč? and why?

Proto že je! because it is!

LESSON VIII.

Nejsem *neysem* I am not
není *neyní* he (she, it) is not
nejsi *neysi* thou are not

nej sme *neysmě* we are not
nej ste *neystě* you are not
nej sou *neysoň* they are not

Note. Always pronounce *ney*, in the pronouncing column, like the English word *neigh*.

sám (masc.) *sám*
sama (fem.) *sámě*
samo (neut.) *sámě*
samoten (tna, tno) } alone; him-
self, herself
itself,

dnes *dness* to-day
právě *práv'yě* just;
zrovna *zřorně* } this moment

otec	<i>otěts</i>	father	strýc	<i>streets, streyts</i>	uncle
matka	<i>mătĕkă</i>	mother	teta	<i>tětĕ</i>	aunt
bratr	<i>bră-tr</i>	brother	hoch	<i>hōkh</i>	} boy
sestra	<i>sest-ră</i>	sister	chlapec	<i>khlăpets</i>	
syn	<i>syn</i>	son	holka	<i>hōlkă</i>	} girl
dcera	<i>tsĕră</i>	daughter	děvče, n.	<i>dĕfchĕ</i>	
	docela	<i>dotsĕlă</i>		all, quite	
	pryč	<i>pritch</i>		away, gone	
	i	<i>e</i>		both...and	

EXERCISES.

Nejsem rád,	I am not glad.	Je strýc doma?	is uncle at home?
Nejsem tomu rád,	I do not like it.	Nebo teta?	or aunt?
Nejsi rád?	art thou not glad?	Jsou taky pryč;	they are gone, too.
Nejste rád? (addressing <i>one</i> person;)		Ten hoch je tu sám;	the boy (this,
nejste rádi? (addressing <i>more than</i>		that boy) is here alone.	
one person;) are you not glad?		Ta holka je pryč;	the girl (that girl)
Jsem sám,	I am alone?	is gone.	
Docela sám?	all alone?	To děvče je doma samotno,	that
Ano, zcela samotn;	yes, all alone.	girl is at home alone.	
Není otec doma?	is father not at	Proč tu není bratr?	why is the
home?		brother (her brother) not here?	
Ne, on není doma;	no, he is not at	On není doma, on je pryč;	he is not
home.		at home, he is gone.	
Není žádný doma?	is nobody at	Dcera není zde zcela samotna,	the
home?		daughter is not here all alone	
Matka ani bratr, ani sestra ne-		Matka je zde také;	the mother (her
jsou doma;	neither mother, nor	mother) is here, too.	
brother or sister are at home.		Je někdo doma?	is somebody at
Kde jsou?	where are they?	home?	
Pryč;	gone.	Není;	no.
Všichni jsou pryč?	are they all gone?	Dnes jsou všichni pryč,	to-day they
Ano, všichni;	yes, all of them.	are all gone.	

A kde jsou? and where are they?

Někde pryč, somewhere away.

Právě jsem tu sama (fem.); I am
here just alone.

Proč jste tu samotna? (fem.) why
are you here alone?

Protože otec i matka jsou pryč, be-
cause both father and mother are
gone.

LESSON IX.

Byl jsem *bill sěm* } I have
(byla, f. *billä* " } been;
bylo, n.) *billö* " } I was
byl jsi *bill s* } thou hast
(abbr.) byl's, m. *bills* } been;
" byla's, f. *biläss* } thou wast
byl (a, o) *bill (ä, ö)* } he (she, it)
has been;
he (she, it)
was

byli jsme *billy smě* } we have
(byly, f. } been;
byla, n.) } we were

byli jste *billy stě* } you have been;
you were

byli (y, a) *billy(y, ä)* } they have been;
they were

Nebyl jsem *ně-bill* } I have not
sěm } been;
I was not

Nebyli jsme *ně billy* } we have not
smě } been;
we were not

etc.

Kde jsem byl? *gdě* } where have I
sěm bill } been?
where was I?

Kde jsme byli? *gdě* } where have we
smě billy? } been?
where were we?

etc.

Míti, to have: mám, I have:

měl jsem,

měla jsem,

měli jsme,

m'yell sěm, }

m'yellä sěm, }

m'yelli smě,

I have had; I had;

we have had; we had;

and so forth, using měl, měli in place of byl, byli,

Note 1. There is in Bohemian no such formal difference between the perfect and imperfect tense as in English: *I have been; I was.*

Note 2. There is a distinction of gender in the past tense, which does not exist in English. **I have been, I was,** is used in all cases. In Bohemian however, when a man speaks, he says: **byl jsem, bill sěm;** when a woman speaks, she says: **byla jsem, billa sěm.** And this rule covers every verb in the language. For instance, a man says:

jedl jsem,	<i>yěd'l sěm,</i>	I ate; I have eaten;
sedl jsem,	<i>sěd'l sěm,</i>	I sat down; I have sat down;
šel jsem,	<i>shell sem,</i>	I went; I have gone;
šil jsem,	<i>shill sem,</i>	I sewed; I have sewn;
viděl jsem,	<i>viďel sem,</i>	I saw; I have seen.

A woman says:

jedla jsem,	<i>yědlā sěm;</i>	šla jsem,	<i>shlā sem;</i>
sedla jsem,	<i>sědlā sem;</i>	šila jsem,	<i>shillā sem;</i>
viděla jsem,	<i>viďelā sem;</i>		

In the third person of the past tense we say in English:

he was, he has been; she was, she has been; it was it has been;

In Bohemian we must say: **on byl, ona byla, ono bylo,** according to gender. This rule holds good in the conjugation of every verb.

For instance:

Jedl, yed'l, he has eaten; he ate;	šel, shell, he has gone; he went;
jedla, yedlā, she has eaten; she ate;	šla, shlā, she has gone; she went.
jedlo, yedlō, it has eaten; it ate;	šlo, shlō, it has gone; it went.

In the *plural* number the distinction of sex is simply grammatical and perfectly useless; in the ordinary spoken language there is none whatever. In grammatical theory

byli jsme,	byli jste,	byli,	is masculine;
byly jsme,	byly jste,	byly,	is feminine;
byla jsme,	byla jste,	byla,	is neutre.

But in the living tongue, or at least in ordinary conversation, we hear in all three genders:

byli jsme, billi smě; byli jste, billi stě; byli, billi.

There is no difference of pronunciation between **byli** and **byly**; and this orthographical distinction as well as the form **byla** in the third person neutre are only maintained by the pedantry of theoretical grammarians, opposing changes which a living tongue has actually undergone and which always tend in the direction of practical simplicity. That artificial and useless distinction of gender is found in writing, but not in conversation.

Note 3. The form of the second person plural as given above (**byli jste, billi stě**) is of course used when several persons are meant or spoken to; but when employing **vy, you**, in addressing a single person, we leave the main verb in the singular, whereas in English it is put in the plural, as if several persons were addressed: **byl jste, bill stě**, you have been, you were, (meaning only one person). And so in all Bohemian verbs; for instance:

jedli jste, yed'li stě, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning several persons):

jedl jste, yed'l stě, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning one person, addressed **vy, you**).

Ráno	<i>ráně</i>	in the morning	včera	<i>fcheră</i>	yesterday
v poledne	<i>fpöledně</i>	at noon	včera večer	<i>fcheră vččer</i>	last evening; last night
večer	<i>včher</i>	in the evening			
venku	<i>venkū</i>	outside, out of doors	zima	<i>zimă</i>	cold
			oba	<i>öbă</i>	both

EXERCISES.

Byl jsem doma, I was at home.

Byl jsem stále doma, I have been
at home all the time.

Byl jsi doma? (abbreviated: **byl's
doma?**) hast thou been at home?
wast thou at home?

Ne, nebyl jsem doma; no, I was not at home.

Ale bratr byl doma, but brother was at home:

Kde jsi byl? (*abbreviated: kde's byl, gděss bíl?* where hast thou been? where wast thou?)

Kde jste byl? Kde jste byla? (fem.) (*when addressing one person*) where have you been? where were you?

Byl jsem pryč, I was away.

Byla jsem pryč, (fem.) I was away.

Byli jsme právě pryč, we were just gone.

Byli jsme všichni pryč, we were all gone; we have all been away.

Kde byl otec? where was father?

Byl venku, he was out of doors.

A matka? and mother?

Matka byla také pryč, mother also was gone.

Oba byli pryč, they were both gone.

Zádný nebyl doma, nobody was at home (*literally: nobody was not at home.*)

Všichni byli pryč, all were gone.

Ráno byli jsme doma a v poledne pryč; in the morning we were at home and at noon we were gone.

Byli jste večer doma? (*addressing one person: byl jste večer doma?*) Were you at home in the evening?

Nebyli jsme doma, we were not at home.

Nebyl jsem doma, I was not at home.

Proč jsi nebyl doma? why wast thou not at home?

Proč jste nebyl doma? why were you not at home?

Kdo byl doma? who was at home?

Bratr a sestra byli oba doma, brother and sister were both at home.

Proč nebyli venku? why were they not out of doors?

Proto že bylo zima, because it was cold.

Nebylo zima včera večer, it was not cold last evening.

Že nebylo? wasn't it?

Ba bylo! oh yes, it was!

Včera bylo zima, yesterday it was cold.

Nebylo tuze, it was not very.

LESSON X.

It will doubtless be self-evident to the student, that the past tense in the preceding lesson may at pleasure be connected with the personal pronoun, as is the rule in English.

(Instead of:)

(we can say:)

byl jsem,	I have been	já jsem byl,	yá sěm bil
byl jsi,	thou hast been	ty jsi byl,	ty si bill
			(abbrev. ty's byl, tyss bill)
byl, a, o,	he (she, it) has been	on (ena, ono) byl, a, o,	on bill
byli jsme,	we have been	my jsme byli,	me smě billy
byli jste,	you have been	vy jste byli,	vee stě billy
byli, y, a,	he (she, it) has been	oni byli,	ōñi billy

The sense is not changed thereby, only more emphasis is laid on the subject.

Then again, in the *first* person of the second form, both singular and plural, the auxiliary **jsem, jsme** is commonly left out.

(Instead of:)

(we can say:)

já jsem byl,	yá sěm bill	já byl,	I have been; I was;
my jsme byli,	me smě billy	my byli,	we have been; we were;
já jsem měl,	yá sěm m'yell	já měl,	I have had; I had;
my jsme měli,	me smě m'yelli	myměli,	we have had; we had;
já jsem šel,	yá sěm shell	já šel,	I have gone; I went;
my jsme šli,	me smě shli	my šli,	we have gone; we went;

u mě	ŭm'yě	by me,	with me,	at my house (or place)	
u tebe	ŭtěbe	by thee,	with thee,	at thy house	
u něho	ŭñehō	}	by him,	with him,	at his house
u něj	ŭñey				
u ní	ŭñee	by her,	with her,	at her house	
u nás	ŭnás	by us,	with us,	at our house	
u vás	ŭvás	by you,	with you,	at your house	
u nich	ŭñikh	by them,	with them,	at their house	
rodiče	rodichě	parents	celý den	tsělee den	all day
domu	dōmā	home	až	āsh	till, until
nic než	ñils něsh	nothing but	pak	pāk	then

EXERCISES.

Já byl doma, I was at home.

Byl jsem doma celý den, I was at home all day.

Byl jsem pořád doma, I have been at home all the time.

Byl otec doma? was father at home?

Ano, byl; yes, he was.

A kdy byl doma? and when was he at home?

Skoro celý den, nearly all day.

Já šel domů ráno, I went home in the morning.

Kdy sestra šla domů? when did sister go home?

Ona šla domů večer, she went home in the evening.

Nešla domů až večer, she didn't go home till evening.

Byl strýc doma? was uncle at home?

Nebyl; he was not.

Byl's u něho? wast thou at his house?

Byl jste u něho? were you at his house?

Ano, byl jsem tam; yes, I was there.

Sestra byla zde, sister was here.

Byla u mě, she was at my house

Byla také u vás? was she also at your house?

Byla tam v poledne, she was there at noon.

Teta u nás nebyla, aunt was not at our house.

Ale její hoch tam byl, but her boy was there.

My byli včera u ní, we were at her house yesterday.

Rodiče byli včera ráno doma, our parents were at home yesterday morning.

Pak šli pryč, then they went away.

A my jsme šli taky pryč, and we went away, too.

Byl někdo u nich? was anybody at their house?

Žádný u nich nebyl, nobody was at their house.

V poledne někdo tam byl, ale šel pryč; at noon somebody was there, but went away.

Já měl dnes maso a pivo, I had to-day meat and beer.

Sestra měla maso a chleba, sister had meat and bread.

Ten malý hoch neměl nic, that little boy had nothing.

Proč neměl nic? why did we have nothing?

Neměli jsme nic pro něho, we had nothing for him.

Byl zde ten chlapec? was that boy here?

Byl tu,	he was here.	Decela sám,	all alone.
Co měl?	what did he have?	Měli jste dnes víno?	have you had wine to-day?
Nie neměl;	he had nothing	Ne, my jsme měli pivo;	no, we had beer.
Byl zde pořád?	has he been here all the time?	A co oni měli?	and what did they have?
Ano, byl tu stále;	yes, he has been here all the time.	Také pivo;	beer, also.
Kdy šel pryč?	when did he go away?	My neměli nic,	we had nothing.
Šel večer,	he went in the evening.	Ale pranie?	not a thing!
Šel sám?	did he go alone?		

LESSON XI.

Budu	bůdů }	I shall be	budeme	bůdemě }	we shall be
		" will be	budem	bůdem }	we will be
budeš	bůdesh,	thou will be	budete	bůdětě	you will be
bude	bůdě	he (she, it) will be	budou	bůdoů	they will be
nebudu nebůdů, I shall (will) not be; etc.					

neb	neb }	or	snad	snād	perhaps
nebo	nebō }		setva	sōtvā	hardly
brzo	br-zō }	soon	zítra	zeetrā }	to-morrow
brzy	br-ze }		zejtra	zeytrā }	
hned	hned	presently, right away	letos	letōs	this year
až	āsh }	when	dobře	dobrshě }	well, right, it is
když	gdīž }				well, all right.

dělati	d'elā-t'i	to do	prodávati	prodārā-t'i	to sell; to be selling;
platiti	plāťi-t'i	to pay	chtíti	kh'tee-t'i	to want.
kupovati	kūporā-t'i	to buy; to be buying;			

Note 1. English verbs in the infinitive have various endings; *to do, to pay, to sell, to speak, to converse, to understand, etc.*

Bohemian verbs invariably end in **ti**. However, in ordinary discourse the final **i** is nearly always dropped, and very often it is also omitted in spelling; the preceding **t** in such cases should indeed be written and pronounced **ť**; but it generally retains its common *hard* sound:

dělat	dělat	to do	kupovat	kŭpovăt	to buy
platit	platit	to pay	prodávat	pro lăvăt	to sell
	chtít	to want.			

Note 2. *Budu, budeš, etc.*, connected as an auxiliary with the infinitive of another verb forms the future tense of this verb:

budu dělati	} I shall (will) do	bude kupovat	he will buy
“ dělat		budeme prodávat	we shall (will) buy
budeš platit		budete chtít	you will want
		budou chtít	they will want.

Zde jsem, here I am.

Už jste tu? are you here already?

Je zde taky bratr? is brother also here?

Není, ale bude tu hned; he is not, but he will be here presently.

To bude dobře, that will be all right.

Kdy zde bude otec? when will father be here?

Dnes sotva, hardly to-day.

Snad zejtra, perhaps to-morrow.

Proč tu bude? why will he be here?

Kupovat obilí a seno, to buy grain and hay.

Budete mít letos víno? will you have wine this year?

Nebudeme mít žádné víno, we shall have no wine.

Co budou u vás prodávat? what will they sell at your place?

Nebudou nic prodávat, they will sell nothing.

Máte čerstvé* máslo? have you fresh butter?

Dnes nemáme, to-day we have not.

Nemáme žádné, we have none.

Ale budeme mít zejtra, but we shall have (some) to-morrow.

*) See lesson VI, note 2.

Co budete dělat dnes večer? what will you do this evening?	Nemám co dělat, I have nothing to do.
Nebudu nic dělat, I shall do nothing.	Až bude zase práce, budu dělat; when there will be work again, I shall work.
A proč? and why?	

LESSON XII.

Míti	<i>meet'i</i>	}	to have	chtíti	<i>kh'tee'ti</i>	}	to want
mít ¹⁾	<i>meet</i>			chtít ¹⁾	<i>kh'tee't</i>		
chci	<i>kh'tsi</i>		I want	chceme	<i>kh'tsěmě</i>		we want
chceš	<i>kh'tsěsh</i>		thou wantst	chcete	<i>kh'tsětě</i>		you want
chce	<i>kh'tsě</i>		he wants	chtějí	<i>kh'te-yee</i>		they want
chtěl jsem ²⁾	<i>kh'tel sěm</i>		I wanted	chtěli jsme	<i>kh'teli smě</i>		we wanted
budu	chtíti ³⁾	<i>būďū kh'tee'ti</i>	}				I shall (will) want
“	chtít	<i>“ kh'tee't</i>					
budeme	chtíti	<i>būdēmě kh'tee'ti</i>	}				we shall (will) want
“	chtít	<i>“ kh'tee't</i>					

Note 1. Irregular verbs in the Bohemian language are far less numerous than in English. There is not a full dozen of them, whereas in English we find nearly two hundred. On the other hand, regular verbs have only one conjugation in English, whereas in Bohemian there are several conjugations, as we shall see in due time.

Chťiti and **míti** are irregular verbs.

1) See Lesson XI. Note 1.

2) See Lesson IX. **Chťel** simply takes the place of **byl**.

3) See Lesson XI. Note 2.

Od	<i>od</i>	since, from	nůž	<i>noož</i>	knife
pro	<i>pro</i>	for	vidlička	<i>vidličká</i>	fork
více	<i>veetsě</i>	more	jídlo	<i>yedlō</i>	{ something to eat; victuals; meal
ještě	<i>yesh-tě</i>	{ still, more, another	jíst (jísti)	<i>ycest</i>	to eat
trochu	<i>trokhŭ</i>	some, somewhat	krájet (i)	<i>krájet</i>	to cut
spolu	<i>spōlŭ</i>	together	mluvit (i)	<i>mlŭvit</i>	to speak
dlouho	<i>dloŭhō</i>	long	dát (i)	<i>dát</i>	to give
už dávno	<i>ŭsh dávnō</i>	{ already long (a long time already)	dejte mi	<i>deytě me</i>	give me
na prodej	<i>nă prodey</i>	for sale	kůň	<i>kŭň</i>	horse
nový, á, é,	<i>nōvee</i>	new	koně*)	<i>koňe</i>	{ of the horse; for the “
starý, á, é,	<i>stāree</i>	old	ani	<i>āni</i>	{ not one; not even; neither
dříví,	<i>drshee-ree</i>	wood	asi	<i>āssi</i>	about, probably
stavivo	<i>stāvivō</i>	lumber	se, s	<i>sě</i>	with
míti hlad	<i>meeti hlad</i>	to be hungry	opravdu	<i>oprāvdŭ</i>	truly, really
			muž	<i>moož</i>	man

EXERCISES.

Máte peníze? have you money?

Mám asi dollar, I have about a dollar.

Nic více? nothing more?

Ani cent, not a cent.

Co s dollarem? what (can you do) with a dollar?

Aha, zde je ještě půl dolaru; ah, here is half a dollar more.

Bude to dost? will that be enough?

Sotva, hardly.

Ani to nebude dost, even that will not be enough.

Já mám hlad (literally: *I have hunger*), I am hungry.

Chci něco jíst, I want something to eat.

Máte nějaké jídlo? have you something to eat?

Tu máte maso, here you have (some) meat.

Dejte mi nůž, give me a knife.

Zde máte nůž a tu je vidlička; here you have a knife and here is a fork.

Nožem můžete dobře krájet, with the knife you can cut well.

Tu je kůň a vůz, here is a horse and a wagon.

Vy máte zde koně; you have a horse here.

*) The plural of the noun **kůň** is also **koně**, *koňe* (the horses).

Ano, jsem tu s koněm; yes, I am here with the horse.

To je dobrý kůň, that is a good horse.

Tuže dobrý; a také není na prodej; very good; and he is not for sale.

Máte nový vůz? have you a new wagon?

Ne; to je starý vůz; o no; that is an old wagon.

Ale jako nový; but (it looks) like a new one.

Opravdu? really?

Co máte na voze (ve voze)? what have you got in the wagon?

Dříví, wood.

Stavivo, lumber.

Trochu obilí je tam, some grain is in there.

Budete něco kupovati? will you buy something (will you make some purchases?)

Koně pro syna a vůz pro strýce, a horse for my son and a wagon for my uncle.

Chci dáti synovi dobrý potah, I want to give my son a good team.

Chtěl jsem to už dávno; I wanted (to do) it long ago.

On je zde se strýcem, he is here with uncle.

Jsou tu spolu, they are here together.

Jak dlouho jsou tu? how long are they here?

Od večera, since evening.

A jak dávno vy jste tu? and how long are you here?

Od poledne, since noon.

Tam ten muž má koně na prodej, that man there has a horse to sell.

Chcete vidět toho (těhō) muže? do you want to see that man.

Chci mluvit s tím (střim) mužem; I want to speak with that man.

Je na koni, he is on horseback.

Dobře že je tu s tím koněm; it is well he is here with that horse.

Je to velký kůň; it is a big horse.

Note 2. In the English language the noun remains nearly unchanged in all its relations, there being only a slight change in the genitive or possessive case: *brother, brother's, (of the brother)*; but this form of the possessive case is being more and more limited. The relations of one person or thing to another are expressed by separate words, called prepositions: *of a brother; to a brother; with a brother.*

In Bohemian these relations are expressed by changes in the termination of the noun, which process is called declension: *bratr, brother; —bratra, of a brother; bratru, to a brother; bratrem, with a brother.*

This is a heavy encumbrance which the Bohemian language shares with the German and Latin. The declension of the nouns is followed by that of the adjectives joined to the nouns, which are subject to corresponding changes in their terminations. Pronouns also have declensions, and these continue to exist even in the English tongue.

Note 3. The declension of Bohemian nouns varies according to their gender and the termination of their nominative; there is, besides, a slight variation between animate and inanimate nouns of the masculine gender.

The following table will bring before the student's eyes the different changes of the termination of Bohemian masculine nouns, in the singular, omitting the vocative case. A glance over the same now and then may assist him to become more rapidly familiar with the different endings and their signification in English; but only frequent use in common sentences during the further progress of these lessons will make them handy to him.

Inanimate nouns:

Dollar,	vůz	<i>dolār,</i>	<i>vooz</i>	the dollar, the wagon;
dollaru,	vozu	<i>dolārŭ,</i>	<i>vōzŭ</i>	of the dollar, the dollar's; of the wagon, the wagon's; (v dollaru , in the dollar; ve voze , in the wagon; etc.)
dollarem,	vozem	<i>dolārem,</i>	<i>vōžem</i>	(or s dollarem , s vozem), with the dollar, with the wagon.

Animate nouns:

Syn,	muž	<i>syn,</i>	<i>moož</i>	the son, the man;
syna,	muže	<i>synā,</i>	<i>moožě</i>	{ of the son; the son's: of the man, the man's; also in the <i>accusative</i> : the son, the man);
synu,	muži	<i>synŭ,</i>	<i>mooži</i>	{ to the son, to the man; (v synu , v
—ovi,	—ovi	<i>synŏvi,</i>	<i>moožŏvi</i>	synovi , in the son; etc.)
synem,	mužem	<i>synem,</i>	<i>moožem</i>	(or se synem , s mužem), with the son, with the man.

Note 4. It will be observed that the letter *û* in the nominative case of a monosyllable changes into *o* in the inflected cases:

vûz,	the wagon;	vozu,	-e of the wagon;
kûñ,	the horse;	koně,	of the horse;
nûž,	the knife;	nože,	of the knife;

Nûž and similar nouns (masculine inanimate and ending in a soft consonant) are declined just like **muž**; only in the dative and locative case we cannot use the long form like **mužovi**, **v mužovi** (to the man, in the man), but must always employ only the short form: **noži**, **v noži**, **nožì**, **vnòžì** (to the knife, in the knife); and the accusative agrees with the nominative: **nûž**—**nûž**.

Note 5. Prepositions consisting of a single consonant (**v**, **s**, **k**, simply abbreviations of **ve**, **se**, **ke**, — in, with, to) are always joined in pronunciation to the succeeding syllable; hence we write: **v synu**, **s koněm**; and pronounce *vsynû* (or *fsinû*, *skoñem*; in the son, with the horse).

It may hardly be necessary to mention that the locative case does not always appear with the preposition **v** or **ve**, but employs also different other prepositions. For instance: **ve voze**, in the wagon; **na voze**, on the wagon; **o voze**, about the wagon.

LESSON XIII.

Museti	<i>mûset'i*</i>	} must, to have to	jiti	<i>yeet'i</i>	} to go, to come,
	<i>mûset</i>			<i>yeet</i>	
musiti	<i>mûsi'ti</i>				
musím	<i>mûseem</i>	I must	jdu	<i>dû</i>	I go
musíš	<i>mûseesh</i>	thou must	jdeš	<i>děsh</i>	thou goest
musí	<i>mûsee</i>	he must	jde	<i>dě</i>	he goes
musíme	<i>mûseemě</i>	we must	jdeme	<i>děmě</i>	we go
musíte	<i>mûseetě</i>	you must	jdete	<i>dětě</i>	you go
musí	<i>mûsee</i>	} they must	jdou	<i>doû</i>	they go
musejí	<i>mûsě-yee</i>				

(* The letter *s* has the same sharp sound as in *must*.)

muset platit	to have to pay	šel	<i>shell</i>	he has gone;
buďn muset	<i>bŭdŭ mŭset</i> , I shall have to; I shall be obliged.			he went
musel jsem	<i>mŭsell sĕm</i> I was obliged	pŭjdu	<i>pŭydŭ</i>	(colloquially <i>pŭdŭ</i> , I shall go
musel	<i>mŭsell</i> he was obliged	pŭjdeš, pŭjde, pŭjdeme, pŭjdete, pŭjdou;	<i>pŭydeš, pŭyde, pŭydeš, pŭyde, pŭydeš, pŭyde, pŭydeš;</i>	colloquially: <i>pŭdeš, pŭde, pŭdeš, pŭde, pŭdeš, pŭde, pŭdeš;</i>
muset	to have to go, to be obliged to go	jdi	<i>d'i</i>	go (thou)
šel jsem	<i>shell sĕm</i> I have gone; I went	jděte	<i>d'etě</i>	go (you)

Note 1. All Bohemian verbs in the infinitive (as stated in Lesson XI. Note 1) end in **ti**, which becomes a simple **t** in ordinary discourse:

dělati, to do, to make; **platiti**, to pay; **kupovati**, to buy, to be buying;

prodávati, to sell, to be selling; **museti**, must.

Note 2. Leaving out **ti** and putting **I** in its place (**la** for the feminine, **lo** for the neutre gender), we get the past tense of every regular verb, using the auxiliary **jsem**, **jsi** in the first and second person singular, **jsme**, **jste** in the first and second person plural, and changing **I** into **li** in the plural (feminine **ly**, neutre **la**, — of no account in ordinary conversation); in the third person singular and plural no auxiliary is used:

dělal	<i>d'elāl</i>	he made;	he has made;
dělali	<i>d'elāli</i>	they made;	they have made;
dělal jsem	<i>d'elāl sem</i>	I made;	I have made;
dělal jsi	<i>d'elāl si</i>	thou madest;	thou hast made;
dělali jsme	<i>d'elāli smě</i>	we made;	we have made;
dělali jste	<i>d'elāli stě</i>	you made;	you have made;
platil	<i>plātil</i>	he paid;	he has paid;
kupoval	<i>kāpovāl</i>	he was buying;	he has been buying;
prodával	<i>prodāvāl</i>	he was selling;	he has been selling;
musel	<i>mŭsell</i>	he had to;	he was obliged.

Ho	<i>hō</i>	him, it; of it;	žena	<i>ženā</i>	woman
ven	<i>ven</i>	{ out	služka	<i>slūshkǎ</i>	servant girl
venku	<i>venkǎ</i>		země, f.	<i>zemyě</i>	land, earth
prý	<i>pree</i>	{ they say;	snídaně, f.	<i>sñeedañe</i>	breakfast
(colloq. prej)	<i>prey</i>		oběd, m.	<i>ob-yěd</i>	dinner
náš, m.	<i>násh</i>	our, ours	večeře, f.	<i>věcherschě</i>	supper
naší, f.	<i>náshee</i>	of our	kost', f.	<i>kōst</i>	bone
dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well; right	kus, m.	<i>kūss</i>	piece
tuze dobře	<i>toozě dobrshě</i>	very well	oděv, m.	<i>oďef</i>	clothing
časně	<i>chässñe</i>	early	oblek, m.	<i>oblěk</i>	suit of clothes
nějaký, á, é, ě	<i>ñeyǎkee</i>	{ some	kabát, m.	<i>kábát</i>	coat
(colloq. ňákej	<i>ňákey</i>		kalhoty, pl.	<i>kállhoty</i>	pants
pohromadě	<i>pō-hromǎde</i>	{ together	vesta, f.	<i>vestǎ</i>	vest
najednou	<i>nǎyednoū</i>		klobouk, m.	<i>kloboūk</i>	hat
dál	<i>dál</i>	in, farther	boty, pl.	<i>botty</i>	boots
ať	<i>ǎť</i>	{ let him be, let	škoda	<i>shkōdǎ</i>	pity
			hotov, a, o,	<i>hōtof</i>	ready
po	<i>pō</i>	after	ke	<i>kě</i>	to
do	<i>dō</i>	tc, before			

podívat se	<i>pod'eerǎt se</i>	to take a look	dělati	<i>d'elǎti, d'elǎt</i>	to make
spáti	<i>spǎti, spát</i>	to sleep	myslím	<i>mysleem</i>	I think
státi	<i>stǎti, stít</i>	to stand	koupiti	<i>koūpit</i>	to buy
čekati	<i>chekǎti, čekǎt</i>	to wait	kupovati	<i>kūpōvǎt</i>	to be buying
viděti	<i>vid'eti vid'et</i>	to see	predati	<i>prōdǎt</i>	to sell
dívati se	<i>d'eerǎt sě</i>	to look, to be looking	prodávati	<i>prōdávǎt</i>	to be selling

EXERCISES.

Musím jít ven. I must go out.

Půjdu se podívat ven. I shall go and look out.

Je někdo venku? Is somebody out of doors?

Kdo je venku? Who is out of doors?
Nějaká žena je tam. Some woman is there.

Co chce ta žena? What does that woman want?

Chce viděti dceru. She wants to see (her) daughter.

Je to matka naší služky. It is the mother of our servant girl.

Ať jde dál. Let her come in,

Proč nejde dál? Why doesn't she come in?

Chce něco jíst? Does she want anything to eat?

Dejte ženě jíst a pít. Give that woman to eat and to drink.

Maso na kosti a pivo. Meat on the bone and beer

Až bude oběd. When dinner is (shall be) ready.

Bude zde spáti? Will she sleep here?

Já myslím, I think so.

Dobře teda. Very well, then,

Musí spáti se služkou. She must sleep with the servant girl.

Holka má mnoho práce. The girl has much to do.

Bude sotva do večera*) hotova. She will hardly be done before evening.

Myslím že bude s prací hotova. I think she will be done with the work.

Po večeři nemusí dělat nic. After supper she need not do anything.

Ať je večer brzy hotova. Let supper be soon ready.

Bude zde ta ženská ke snídani? Will that woman be here to breakfast?

Myslím že bude. I think (that) she will.

Budeme mít snídani brzy ráno. We shall have breakfast soon in the morning.

Ano, časně ráno. Yes, early in the morning.

Chci něco koupit. I want to buy something.

Chci si něco koupit. I want to buy me something.

Co si chcete koupit? What do you want to buy (yourself)?

Myslím že nějaký oděv. I think (that) some clothing.

Kabát, kalhoty, vestu, klobouk. A coat, (a pair of) pants, a vest, a hat.

Snad také boty. Perhaps also (a pair of) boots.

Celý oblek. A whole suit.

Pravda, bude dobře koupit oblek. True, it will be well to buy a suit.

Už jdu. I am going already.

Jdete taky? Are you going, too?

My taky jdeme. We are going, too.

Oni všichni jdou. They are all going.

Myslím že sestra půjde taky. I think that sister will go, too.

Ano, půjde s tetou. Yes, she will go with auntie.

*) **Do večera**, instead of **do večeru**. — **Večer** has the same endings in the singular as the animate noun **syn**, excepting **-ovi** in the dative and locative.

Půjdeme všichni pohromadě. We will all go together.

Jdi se podívat zdali jsou hotoví. Go (thou and see if they are ready.

My zde nebudeme stát a čekat. We shall not stand here and wait.

Jděte se tam zase podívat. Go (you) there and see again.

Už jdou; tu jsou. They are coming already; here they are.

Půjdou všichni najednou. They will all go together.

Ten dům chci prodat. That house I want to sell.

A proč to? And why?

Je malý; musím ho prodat. It is small, I must sell it.

Myslím že je trochu malý. I think it is somewhat small.

Ten starý dům byl dost velký. The old house was large enough.

Škoda že museli sme ho prodat. It is a pity we had to sell it.

Náš nový dům nebude na prodej. Our new house will not be for sale.

Není dobře prodávat nový dům. It is not well to sell (to be selling) a new house.

Budeme mít u domu kus země. We shall have by (our) house a piece of land.

Note 3. The changes of endings of feminine nouns, excepting the vocative case, are shown in the following exhibit:

1. **Žena** *ženā* the woman;
ženy *ženy*, of the woman;
ženu *ženŭ* the woman, (accusative);
ženě *žeňe* to the woman, (*v ženě*, in the woman, etc.);
ženou *ženoŭ*, (or *se ženou*) with the woman.
2. **Země** *zemyě* the earth, of the earth;
zemi *zemi* to the earth, (*v zemi*, in the earth, etc.);
zemí *zemeē* (or *se zemí*) with the earth;
3. **Košť** *kōst* the bone;
kosti *kostŭi* of the bone, to the bone, (*v kosti f*kostŭi**, in the bone, etc.);
kostí *kostēē* (or *s kostí skostēē*) with the bone.

Nouns ending in **e** (like **růže** *roožě*, the rose) agree with **země**.

Nouns ending in **ka** change the hard consonant **k** into **c** *ts*, when the final **a** changes into **e** :

matka, služka, mātškā, slūshka, the mother, the servant girl.

matce, služce, mātšě, slūshtsě, to the mother, to the servant girl.

Nouns ending in **st'**, like **kost'**, are ALWAYS of the feminine gender.

Note 4. The verb **jíti** is irregular. Its future tense is formed by the prefix **pů**, and not by the auxiliary **budu**. The formation of the future by means of prefixes occurs quite often, as will be seen hereafter.

Note 5. The verbs **prodávati, kupovati** (to be selling, to be buying) are in fact reiterative forms of **prodati** (to sell, to make a sale) and **koupiti** (to buy, to make a purchase).

Common indefinite verbs, denoting a continuous action, may, as a rule, be changed into REITERATIVES, denoting a repeated action, by inserting **va** before the final syllable **ti** (or the final **t**) and lengthening the preceding vowel, if it be short. For instance:

dělati, to make; **dělávati, d'elávāťi** or **d'elávāt,** to use to make,
to be in the habit of making.

platiti, to pay; **platívati, plāťeevāt,** to use to pay;

spáti, to sleep; **spávati, spávāt,** to use to sleep;

jísti, to eat; **jidávati, yeedávāt,** to use to eat; (irregular verb).

Note 6. In English, verbs are sometimes formed by prefixes joined to other verbs, to vary their signification; for instance:

to deck, — to bedeck | to judge — to prejudge | to sell — to undersell
to grow — to outgrow | to stand — to withstand | to turn — to overturn.

The same rule finds application in Bohemian in a much higher degree. Prefixes may be joined to most of the verbs in order to modify or change their meaning; and it is astonishing how many new verbs are sometimes derived from the original verb by that process. As an example, let us take the verb **jíti**, to go:

dojiti,	<i>dǎ-yeet'i,</i>	to go (get, reach) somewhere; to make an errand
najiti,	<i>nǎ-yeet'i,</i>	to find;
nadejiti,	<i>nǎdē-yeet'i,</i>	to gain, to get ahead, to head off;
obejiti,	<i>obē-yeet'i,</i>	to go around;
odejiti,	<i>odē-yeet'i,</i>	to go away, to leave;
pojiti,	<i>pǎ-yeet'i,</i>	to perish, to die;
podejiti,	<i>podē-yeet'i,</i>	to deceive, to cheat;
přejiti,	<i>prshē-yeet'i,</i>	to pass over, to pass by;
předejiti,	<i>prshēdē-yeet'i,</i>	to come before, to get a'head, to anticipate;
přijiti,	<i>prshi-yeet'i,</i>	to come;
projiti,	<i>pro-yeet'i,</i>	to pass through;
rozejiti se,	<i>rǎzē-yeet'i sč,</i>	to part, to disperse;
ujiti,	<i>ǔ-yeet'i,</i>	to escape;
vejiti,	<i>vē-yeet'i,</i>	to go in, to come in;
vyjiti,	<i>vy-yeet'i,</i>	to go out, to come out;
zajiti,	<i>zǎ-yeet'i,</i>	to go down, to set, to pass behind;
zajiti si,	<i>zǎ yeet'i si,</i>	to go out of one's way.

This shows the immense adaptability of the Bohemian verb, and certainly looks somewhat perplexing at first sight; but it is only necessary to fix in one's mind the meaning of a dozen of prefixes, which occur in all such cases, in order to have a key to the whole system. The same is true in English; a knowledge of the signification of the prefixes used in connection with verbs explains the modified meaning. Verbs formed by prefixes are in most cases contained separately in Bohemian dictionaries, the same as in English.

Note 7. An indefinite verb like **jiti**, *to go*, denotes a continuous action. When a new verb is formed by means of a prefix, it is definite, denoting a completed action: **dojiti**, *to go (get, reach) somewhere*; **najiti**, *to find*; etc. The present form of these verbs denotes, in fact, a future action: **dojdu**, *I shall go or get somewhere*; **najdu**, *I shall find*. Hence it is actually the future tense, there being no present, and the

auxiliary **budu** can never be used. Such compound verbs have therefore only a past with the auxiliary **jsem**, and a simple future:

došel jsem , <i>dōshell sem</i> , I went (got, reached) somewhere;	dojdu , <i>doydū</i> I shall go (get, reach) somewhere;
našel jsem , <i>nāshell sem</i> , I found;	najdu , <i>nāyāū</i> I shall find.

LESSON XIV.

Slovo , n. <i>slorō</i>	word	teprv	<i>tep^erf</i>	only, not before
horko , n. <i>hor^kō</i>	heat; hot	vedle	<i>vēdlē</i>	beside, next to
teplo , n. <i>teplō</i>	warmth; warm	nebe , n. <i>nēbē</i>		heaven, sky
chladno , n. <i>khlādnō</i>	cool	slunce , n. <i>slūntsē</i>		sun
blato , n. <i>blātō</i>	mud	měsíc , m. <i>myē-seets</i>		moon, month
město , n. <i>myēs-tō</i>	city	počasí , n. <i>pōchāsee</i>		weather
pšenice , f. <i>pshē-ñitsē</i>	wheat	znamení , n. <i>znāmeñee</i>		sign
pole , n. <i>polē</i>	field	dešť , m. <i>desht^ʹ</i>		rain
poupě , n. <i>poūpyē</i>	bud	stín , m. <i>stēen</i>		shade, shadow
dítě , n. <i>dēet^e</i>	child	vítr , m. <i>vēe-t^er</i>		wind
den , m. <i>den</i>	day	pěkný , á, é, <i>pyēk-nee</i>		nice, fine
noc , f. <i>nots</i>	night	jasný , á, é, <i>yāss-nee</i>		clear, bright
týden , m. <i>teeden</i>	week	hezky	<i>hessky</i>	nice
odpoledne	<i>ōdpoleānē</i>	afternoon	zle	<i>zlē</i> bad, badly
půlnoc , f. <i>poolnots</i>	midnight	posud	<i>pōsūd</i>	till now, stil
dnes v noci	<i>dness vnotsi</i>	to-night	okolo	<i>ōkolō</i> about
západ slunce	<i>západ slūntsē</i>	sunset	na	<i>nā</i> on, in
cesta , f. <i>tsestā</i>	way, road	s tím	<i>s^tēem</i>	with that
radost	<i>rādost</i>	pleasure	za	<i>zā</i> behind, beyond
les	<i>less</i>	forest, timber	zase, zas	<i>zāssē, zāss</i> again
			o	<i>ō</i> at, on.

vidím	<i>vid^eem</i>	I see	svítiti	<i>sweetⁱit</i>	to shine
pršetí	<i>p^ershē^ti</i>	to rain	svítí	<i>sweet^eēē</i>	shines
prší	<i>p^ershee</i>	it rains	už není	<i>ūsh neyñee</i>	is no more

choditi	<i>khōďit</i>	to walk	dej mu	<i>dey mǔ</i> give (hou) him
chodím	<i>khōďeem</i>	I walk	dejte mu	<i>deytě mǔ</i> give (you) him
chodí	<i>khōďee</i>	he (she, it) walks		

Note 1. **Pršetí, pršet,** *p^ersheťi, p^ersHet*; to rain; **vítr,** *veet.^er*; ^e is silent and placed there simply to elucidate the pronunciation. See Sec 4. Part I.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl špatný den. Yesterday was a bad day	Nebude tak zle s tím horkem. It won't be so bad with the heat.
Dnes je hezky. To-day is nice.	Cesta je pěkná. The road is fine.
Opravdu, je pěkné počasí. Truly, it is fine weather.	Není žádné blato. There is no mud.
Myslím že bude tak celý den. I think it will be so all day.	Včera bylo ještě dost blata. Yesterday there was still enough mud.
Bude teplo celý den. It will be warm all day.	Nerad chodím v blatě. I do not like to walk in mud.
Odpoledne bude horko. In the afternoon it will be hot.	Náš hoch rád chodí blatem. Our boy likes to walk through mud.
Rád jsem venku za tepla. I like to be out when (it is) warm.	To snad každé dítě. Perhaps every child (likes that).
V horku nerad jdu do města. In the heat I do not like to go to town.	To je radost dítěte. That is a child's pleasure.
Já také ne. Neither do I.	Ano, to dělá radost dítěti. Yes, it makes pleasure to a child.
Je nebe jasné? Is the sky clear?	Je skoro chladno ve stínu. It is almost cool in the shade.
Bylo, ale už není. It was, but is no more.	Na slunci je dosud horko. In the sun it is still hot.
Vidím na nebi znamení deště. I see in the sky a sign of rain.	Dnes v noci svítí měsíc. To-night the moon shines.
Ale slunce ještě svítí. But the sun is still shining.	Teprv o půlnoci. Only at (i. e. not before) midnight.
Po slunce západu bude snad pršet. After sunset perhaps it will rain.	Ano, okolo půlnoci. Yes, about midnight.
Je silný vítr. There is a strong wind.	

Zde je náš dům. Here is our house.
Vedle domu je stodola. Beside the house there is a barn.

Za stodolou máme pole. Behind the barn we have a field.

Na tom poli je pšenice. On that field there is wheat.

Za tím polem máme kus lesa. Beyond that field we have a piece of timber.

Je to dobrý kus lesa. It is a good piece of timber.

Pak je zase kus pole s obilím. Then there is again a piece of a grain-field, (*literally*: of a field with grain).

Jděte na pole. Go to (on) the field.

Jdi s tím dítětem. Go (thou) with the child.

Dej dítěti poupě z růže. Give (thou) the child a rose bud, (*literally*: a bud from the rose).

Otec je na poli. The father is in the field

Note 2. The following little scheme shows the changes of the endings of *neutrenouns*, which in the nominative always end in **o, e, ě** or **í**:

slovo,	slůvō	the word;	ve slovu,	vě slůvů	} in the word; (o “ slově,	vě slůvyě	} slovu,	about the word);
slova,	slůvā	of the word;	slovem	slůvem,		(or se slovem)		
slovu,	slůvŭ	to the word;						or with the word.
poupě,	poŭpyě,	the bud;	poupěti,	poŭpyet'i,	to the bud; (v			
poupěte,	poŭpyetě,	of the bud;	poupěti,		poupěti, in the bud, etc.)			
			poupětem,	poŭpyětem	(or s poupě-			
					tem) with the bud.			
pole,	pŏľě,	the field; of the field;	polem,	polem,	(or s polem) with			
poli,	pŏľi,	to the field; (v poli,			the field.			
		in the field; etc.)						
znamení,	znāmēñee,	the sign; of	znamením,	znāmēñeem	(or se zna-			
		the sign; (ve znamení,			mením), with the sign.			
		in the sign; etc.);						

LESSON XV.

Jeden	<i>žělen</i>	one	můj, m.	<i>mooy</i>	my, mine
jedna, f.	<i>yědnā</i>	"	moji, pl.	<i>moye</i>	my, mine, pl.
dva	<i>dwā</i>	two	mých, pl.	<i>meeh</i>	of my
dvě, f. & n.	<i>dwyě</i>	"	mým, pl.	<i>meem</i>	to my
tři	<i>trshī</i>	three	mými, pl.	<i>meemi</i>	with my
čtyry	<i>shīri</i>	four	ty	<i>ty</i>	those
pět	<i>pyět</i>	five	k těm	<i>křem</i>	to those
šest	<i>shěst</i>	six	těch	<i>řekh</i>	} of those, from those
sedm	<i>sedūm</i>	seven	z těch	<i>stekh</i>	
osm	<i>osūm</i>	eight	v těch	<i>fřekh</i>	in those
devět	<i>dev-yet</i>	nine	od nás	<i>od nás</i>	from us, from
deset	<i>desset</i>	ten			our place
oba, m.	<i>obā</i>	} both	jaký, á, é,	<i>yākee</i>	what, what kind
obě, f. & n.	<i>obyě</i>		tamhle	<i>tāmlě</i>	there, over there
pár	<i>pār</i>	} some, a few	hned	<i>hněd</i>	right away
několik	<i>ñekolik</i>		a sice	<i>ā sitsě</i>	that is, namely
mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>	a good deal	možná	<i>mōžná</i>	perhaps, possibly
mnoholi	<i>mnohō-li</i>	how much	dokonce	<i>dōkontsě</i>	perhaps even
kolik	<i>kōlik</i>	how many	ještě něco?	<i>yeshťe ñetso</i>	anything
asi tak	<i>āsi tāk</i>	about			else?
tolik	<i>tōlik</i>	so many, so much	nejmín	<i>neymeeñ</i>	at least, least of all
k, ke, ku,	<i>kě, kŭ</i>	to, unto	mu, jemu,	<i>mŭ, yēmŭ,</i>	to him
i	<i>e</i>	oh! well	v, ve,	<i>vě</i>	in
s, se,	<i>sě</i>	with	z, ze	<i>zě</i>	from, of

Mluvit	<i>mlŭvit</i>	to speak	utratiť	<i>ŭtrāťil</i>	spent
mluvil*)	<i>mlŭvil</i>	spoke	prodati	<i>prodāt</i>	to sell
utratiti	<i>ŭtrāťit</i>	to spend	prodal	<i>prodāl</i>	sold

*) See Lesson XIII. Note 2.

koupiti	<i>koŭpit</i>	to buy	hospoda , f.	<i>hōspodā</i>	saloon, tavern
koupil	<i>koŭpil</i>	bought	mouka , f.	<i>moŭkā</i>	flour
koupím	<i>koŭpeem</i>	I shall buy	cena , f.	<i>tsěná</i>	price, value
rozuměti	<i>rozŭmyet</i>	to understand	podpora , f.	<i>pōdporā</i>	support
rozuměl	<i>rozŭm'yell</i>	understood	drobné , pl.	<i>drōbné</i>	change
rozumím	<i>rozŭmeem</i>	understand	výběr , m.	<i>veeb-yer</i>	choice
jezditi	<i>yez'dit</i>	to drive, to ride	tucet , m.	<i>tūtset</i>	dozen
jezdil	<i>yez'dil</i>	drove, rode	domu	<i>domŭ</i>	home
jezdím	<i>yez'deem</i>	I drive, I ride	na venku	<i>nā venkŭ</i>	in the country
znám	<i>znām</i>	I know, I am acquainted	spokojen	<i>spōkōyen</i>	satisfied
			můžete	<i>mōžětě</i>	you can, you may
vím to	<i>veem tō</i>	I know it	počítejme	<i>pocheeteymě</i>	let us count
dělá	<i>dělá</i>	makes	sto ,	<i>stō</i>	a hundred
člověk , m.	<i>chlō-vyěk</i>	man	víc, více	<i>veets, veetsě</i>	more
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	stojí	<i>stōjee</i>	costs
farma , f.	<i>farmā</i>	farm			

EXERCISES.

Tady jsme zas. Here we are again.
Jaký pěkný den! What a nice day!
Máte ještě peníze? Have you still
 (some) money?

I ještě něco mám. Well, I have still
 something.

Mnoho-li asi máte? About how
 much have you?

Ne mnoho. Not much.

Mám ještě dva dollarů. I have still
 two dollars.

Já taky mám pár dollarů. I also
 have a few dollars.

Kolik dollarů? How many dollars?

Asi tak čtyry dollarů. About four
 dollars.

Žádné drobné? No change?

Mám také pár centů. I have also
 a few cents.

Utratil jsem mnoho. I have spent
 a good deal.

Jak mnoho asi? About how much?
Nejmín pět nebo šest dollarů. At
 least five or six dollars.

Já také utratil několik dollarů. I
 also spent a few dollars.

Víc než já? More than I?

Možná asi sedm dollarů. Perhaps
 about seven dollars.

Nebo dokonce osm. Or perhaps
 even eight.

K dollarům počítejme čas. To the dollars let us count the time.

Ten má taky cenu v dollarech. It also has a price (value) in dollars.

To dělá mnoho. That makes much.

Devět nebo deset dolarů je pryč. Nine or ten dollars are gone.

Co stojí ten vůz? How much is that wagon? (*literally*: what costs that wagon?)

Sto dolarů. A hundred dollars.
Za sto dolarů můžete koupit dva vozy. For a hundred dollars you can buy two wagons.

Dost možná. Very likely.

Já rozumím vozům. I understand wagons.

Je velký rozdíl ve vozech. There is a great difference in wagons.

Já jezdím s vozy už dávno. I drive wagons a long time already.

Zde je můj syn. Here is my son.
Oba moji synové jsou tu. Both my sons are here.

Ano, myslím že jsou. Yes, I think (that) they are.

Jeden z mých synů právě šel ven. One of my sons has just gone out.

Dejte mým synům oběd; a sice hned. Give (to) my sons a dinner; I mean right away.

Ano, dáme pánům dobrý oběd. Yes, we shall give to the gentlemen a good dinner.

V synech (mých) mám nyní podporu. In my sons I have now a support.

To je dobře. That is well.

Jsem spokojen se syny. I am satisfied with (my) sons.

Jsmě všichni na farmě. We are all on the farm.

Synové jsou rádi na farmě. My sons like it on the farm.

Jsmě všichni rádi na venku. We all like it in the country.

Koupil jsem mouku. I bought (some) flour.

Chtete koupit ještě něco? Do you want to buy anything else?

Půjdu a koupím dva nože. I shall go and buy two knives.

Já půjdu taky a koupím deset nožů. I shall go, too, and buy a dozen knives.

Ale k nožům také vidličky. But to the knives also forks.

Tamhle mají velký výběr v nožích. Over there they have a large choice in knives.

Ano, vím to; mají tuze dobré nože. Yes, I know it: they have very good knives.

Máte pravdu. You are right (*literally*: you have right).

Tamhle v hospodě jsou tři muži.

Over there in the saloon there are three men.

Znám ty muže. I know those men.

Jeden z těch mužů je od nás. One of those men is from our place.

Prodal jsem mu koně. I sold (to) him a horse.

Jaký je to člověk? What kind of a man is that?

Je dobrý muž. He is a good man.

Jděte k těm mužům. Go to those men.

Půjdu, chci mluvit s těmi muži. I will go; I want to speak with those men.

Myslím že ti mužové půjdou brzy domů. I think that those men will soon go home.

Note 1. The formation of the *plural* of masculine inanimate and animate nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are seen in the following table:

dollar, dollár, the dollar; **vůz, vooz,** the wagon; **syn, syn,** the son; **muž, moož,** the man;

dollary *dollāry* the dollars

vozy *vōzy* the wagons

syni *synī* }
—ové *synově* } the sons

muži *mooži* }
—ové *moožové* } the men;

REMARK. The long termination **ové** belongs to animate nouns; only in poetic language or solemn expressions does it sometimes appear connected with inanimates. —

In the accusative or objective case animate nouns have **syny, muže; Mám syny zde,** I have my sons here; **vidím ty muže,** I see those men. — **S dollary, s vozy, se syny, s muži; sdollāry, svōzy, se syny, s mooži;** with the dollars, with the wagons, with the sons, with the men.

dollarů *dollāroo* }
—ův *dollāroof* } of the dollars

vozů *vōzoo* }
—ův *—f* } of the wagons

synů *synoo* }
—ův *—f* } of the sons

mužů *mūžoo* }
—ův *—f* } of the men

REMARK. Both animate and inanimate nouns use the long termination **ův**, — but never in ordinary discourse and seldom in the spoken language generally.

dollarŭm <i>dollārŭm</i> to the dollars	synŭm <i>synoom</i> to the sons
vozŭm <i>vōzoom</i> to the wagons	mužŭm <i>mŭžoom</i> to the men;
v dollarech <i>vdollārekh</i> in the dollars	REMARK. Also with other prepositions: o dollarech , about the dollars: po dollarech , after the dollars <i>or</i> dollar by dollar); etc.
ve vozech <i>vě vōzekh</i> in the wagons	
v synech <i>vsyněkh</i> in the sons	
v mužích <i>vmŭžeech</i> in the men.	

Note 2. The prepositions **k**, **s**, **v**, **z**, consisting of a single consonant, are simply abbreviations of **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ve**, **ze**, as before explained. Their use is almost arbitrary, in cases where they can easily be connected and pronounced with the succeeding syllable; hence they are nearly always used when the following word begins with a vowel or with a consonant followed by a vowel: **v obleku**, *vō-blě-kŭ*, in the suit of clothes; **v dollarech**, *vdol-lā-rěkh*, in the dollars; **v synech**, *vy-syněkh*, in the sons; — **s oblekem**, *sō-blě-kem*, with the suit of clothes; **s dollarem**, *sdol-lā-rem*, with the dollar; **s mužem**, *smoo-žem*, with the man: — **k obleku**, *kō-blě-kŭ*, to the suit of cloth s; **k vozu**, *k ō-zŭ*, to the wagon; etc.

We can never say **v vozu**, **s synem**, **k koni** (in the wagon, with the son, to the horse), because it could not be pronounced; the letter **e** has to be retained and it is ridiculous to leave it out in writing as a silent letter, as it can never be silent. We speak and write: **ve vozu** (or **ve voze**), *vě vōzŭ* (*vōzě*), in the wagon; **se synem**, *sě syněm*, with the son (or with my son); **ke koni**, *ke kōñi*, to the horse.

On the other hand, the long form **ke**, **ku**, **ve**, **ze** may nearly always be employed, when the following word begins with a consonant; we can say and write **ve dollarech**, **ve synech**; but it is not customary. The sound of **v** connects easily with every other consonant without the help of an **e**. However, the short prepositions **k**, **s**, **z** are being limited in their use and the proper long form **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ze** is employed wherever practicable.

Note 3. The letters **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r** are called *hard* consonants "par excellence". When they occur in a **MASCULINE ANIMATE** noun, or

in its ultimate syllable, they are changed or softened in the nominative plural after the following manner:

h	changes into	z	k	changes into	c
ch	“ “	š	r	“ “	ř

The following examples will explain it:

soudruh , <i>soŭdrŭh</i> , (<i>soŭdrŭkh</i>), a comrade;	soudruzi , <i>soŭdrŭzi</i> , comrades;
hoch , <i>hŏkh</i> , a boy;	hoši , <i>hŏ-she</i> , boys;
kluk , <i>klŭk</i> , a boy, an urchin;	kluci , <i>klŭtsi</i> , boys, urchins;
bratr , <i>brat^er</i> , a brother;	bratři , <i>brăt-rshi</i> , brothers;

But whenever the long form of the nominative plural (**ové**) is employed, the hard consonant remains unchanged: **soudruhové**, the comrades; **bratrové**, the brothers. In the other cases (excepting the vocative, which is like the nominative: **o soudruzi!** o comrades!), the hard consonant also retains its place: **soudruhů**, **hochů**, **kluků**, **bratrů**, of the comrades (boys, brothers); **soudruhům**, and so forth.

LESSON XVI.

Líbí se mi <i>leebee sě me</i> I like it, (him, her, etc)	dejte <i>deytě</i> give, put
nésti <i>nest'i</i> to bring, to yield	posázím <i>posázeem</i> I shall set out
nesou <i>nessou</i> they bring, they yield (<i>or</i> pay)	povídá <i>poveedá</i> says
přines <i>prshi-ness</i> bring (thou)	letos <i>letoss</i> this year
přinesu <i>prshi-nessŭ</i> I shall bring	v loni <i>vloňi</i> last year
vede se <i>vědě sě</i> thrives	hodně <i>hodně</i> } much, many
čítám <i>cheetám</i> I read (i. e. I use to read)	(the same as mnoho) } a good deal
sednu <i>sednŭ</i> I sit down	třeba <i>trshě-bă</i> } it needs, need-
bavím se <i>băveem sě</i> I amuse myself	} ed. necessary
	i třeba <i>e trshě-bă</i> I don't care
	všeho druhu <i>vshěhŏ drŭhŭ</i> of all kinds
	krajina , f. <i>krăyină</i> country

soused, m.	<i>soŭsed</i>	neighbor	pŭda, f.	<i>poodă</i>	land, soil
užitek, m.	<i>ŭžitek</i>	profit	prairie, f.	<i>prairiě</i>	prairie
kukuřice, f.	<i>kŭkŭrshitsě</i>	} corn	bahno, n.	<i>băhnŏ</i>	swamp
korna, f.	<i>kornă</i>		řezník, m.	<i>rshěz-ñeek</i>	butcher
brambory, pl.	<i>brănbory</i>	potatoes	kniha, f.	<i>kñihă</i>	book
oves, m.	<i>ovess</i>	oats	knihovna, f.	<i>kñihŏvnă</i>	library
ječmen, m.	<i>yěchmen</i>	barley	milovník, m.	<i>milŏv-ñeek</i>	lover
sklizeň, f.	<i>sklizeň</i>	crop	záliba, f.	<i>zálibă</i>	pleasure
slad,	<i>slăd</i>	malt	růže, f.	<i>roože</i>	rose
trh, m.	<i>t^erh</i>	market	pivonka, f.	<i>pivonkă</i>	peony
u cesty	<i>ŭ tsěsty</i>	} by the road near the road	okno, n.	<i>oknŏ</i>	window
			poklad, m.	<i>poklăd</i>	treasure
samý, á, é	<i>sămee</i>	nothing but	kdykoli	<i>gdĭ-kolĭ</i>	whenever
úrodný, á, é	<i>oo-rodnee</i>	fertile	ještě jeden	<i>yeshťe yěden</i>	one more,
obzvláště	<i>ob-zvlášťe</i>	} especially particularly			another
zvláštní	<i>zvlášht-ñee</i>		před	<i>prshěd</i>	before
		special,	bez	<i>běz or bess</i>	without
		particular	za	<i>ză</i>	beyond, behind
zpátky	<i>spátke</i>	back			

EXERCISES.

Zde se mi líbí. I like it here.

Zde je pěkná krajina. This is (here is) a nice country.

Každý to povídá. Everybody says so.

My máme zde farmu. We have a farm here.

Strýc je náš soused. Uncle is our neighbor.

On má zde dvě farmy. He has two farms here.

Má velký užitek z těch farem? Has he a large profit from those farms?

Myslím že má, I think (that) he has.

Myslím že nesou mu hodně. I think (that) they yield (i. e. pay) him a good deal.

V loni měl mnoho sklizně (*sklíz-ñe*, of the c.) všeho druhu. Last year he had a large crop of all kinds.

Je to tuze úrodná farma. It is a very fertile farm.

Měl mnoho sena, pšenice, kukuřice i brambor. He had a great deal of hay, wheat corn and potatoes.

Letos bude mít také oves, ječmen a žito. This year he will also have oats, barley and rye.

Ječmen na slad má vždycky (dycky *dit-ski*) dobrý trh. Barley for malt has always a good market.

Na farmách zde ječmen vede se dobře. On the farms here barley thrives well.

Za farmami u cesty je kus špatné půdy. Beyond the farms by the road there is a piece of bad land.

Já myslel, že je to úrodná prairie. I thought (that) it was a fertile prairie.

Není; je to skoro samé bahno. It is not; it is almost nothing but swamp.

Knihy jsou poklad. Books are a treasure.

Rád čítám knihy. I like to read books.

Obzvláště když jsem doma. Especially when I am at home.

Jste teda milovník knih. You are then a lover of books.

To je pravda. That is true.

Máte mnoho knih? Have you many books?

Má knihovna je veliká My library is large.

Jaké knihy máte? What books have you?

Mám knihy všeho druhu. I have books of all kinds.

Sednu ke knihám kdykoli mám čas. I sit down to the books whenever I have time.

Teda máte zálibu ve knihách. Then you have (you find) pleasure in books.

Ano, tuze rád bavím se s knihami. Yes, I like very much to amuse myself with books.

Máte růže před oknem. You have roses before the window.

Máme tam hodně růží. We have many roses there.

K růžím dejte pivoňky. To the roses put peonies.

V růžích mám zvláštní zálibu. In roses I have (I take) particular pleasure.

Posázím ještě jeden záhon růžemi. I shall plant another bed with roses.

Byl jsem u řezníka. I was at the butcher's.

Koupil jsem maso od řezníka. I bought (some) meat from the butcher.

Tu je to maso. Here is that meat.

To je samá kost. That is nothing but bone.

Jsou tu nějaké kosti. There are some bones here.

Ano, kostí je dost. Yes, there are bones enough.

K těm kostim třeba více masa. To the bones (besides the b.) we need more meat.

Na těch kostech není ho mnoho. On these bones there is not much of it.

Co s kostmi? What (can we do) with the bones?

Nechceme tolik kostí. We do not want so many bones.

Přines maso bez kostí. Bring meat without bones.

Půjdu zpátky a přinesu ho. I shall go back and bring it.

Note 1. The formation of the plural of feminine nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are shown in the following table:

cena, *tsěná*, the price; **růže,** *roožě*, the rose; **kost',** *kůst*, the bone;

ceny *tsěny* the prices

růže *roožě* the roses

kosti *kost'i* the bones;

cen *tsěn* of the prices

růží *roožee* of the roses

kostí *kost'ee* of the bones;

REMARK. When two consonants terminate the noun in the genitive, an e is interpolated: **farmy**, the farms; **farem** (instead of **farm**), of the farms; **matky**, the mothers; **matek** instead of **matk**), of the mothers.

cenám *tsěnám* to the prices

růžím *roožeem* to the roses

kostem *kostem* to the bones;

v cenách *ftsě-nákh* in the prices

v růžích *vroo-žeekh* in the roses

v kostech *fkős-těkh* in the bones;

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o cenách**, about prices; **při cenách**, at the prices; etc.

cenami	<i>tsě-nāmi</i>	with the prices
růžemi	<i>roo-žemi</i>	with the roses
kostmi	<i>kostmi</i>	with the bones.

REMARK. Usually with the preposition **s** (with): **s cenami**, *stsě-nāmi*; **s růžemi**, *sroo-žemi*; **s kostmi**, *skost-mi*.

LESSON XVII.

Vám	<i>vám</i>	to you
jim	<i>yim</i>	to them
mi, mě	<i>me, myě</i>	to me
moje, mé	<i>moyě, mé</i>	mine, my
naše	<i>nāshě</i>	our, ours
vaše	<i>vāshě</i>	your, yours
s těmi	<i>sťemi</i>	with those
tohle	<i>tōhlě</i>	this here
tam ty	<i>tām ty</i>	those over there
tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very much
blíže	<i>bleežě</i>	nearer
nikoli	<i>ñi-koli</i>	no, not at all
kolem	<i>kōlem</i>	round
pojďme	<i>pojďme</i>	let us go
jde	<i>dě</i>	comes
hled'te	<i>hled'tě</i>	see, look
vidím	<i>vid'eem</i>	I see
vidíte	<i>vid'eeťě</i>	you see
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know
znáte	<i>znátě</i>	you know
přidám	<i>prshi dām</i>	I shall add
řeknu	<i>rshuk nū</i>	I shall tell
slyšet	<i>slisheet</i>	to hear
postačí	<i>postā-chee</i>	is sufficient
roste	<i>rostě</i>	grows

bohactví, n.	<i>bōhāts-tvee</i>	richness
štěstí, n.	<i>shťess-t'i</i>	happiness, luck, good fortune
moudrost, f.	<i>moūdrost</i>	wisdom
váha, f.	<i>váhā</i>	weight
poupě, n.	<i>poūpyě</i>	bulb
poupata	<i>poūpātā</i>	buds
plot, m.	<i>plōt</i>	fence
obtíž, f.	<i>ob t'eež</i>	trouble
mýlka, f.	<i>meilkā</i>	mistake
máte pravdu	<i>māte prāvdū</i>	you are right (<i>literally</i> : you have right)
není třeba	<i>nañi trshě-bā</i>	it is not necessary
obalený, á, é	<i>obālěnee</i>	covered
drátěný, á, é	<i>drā-t'ence</i>	of wire
hluboký, á, é	<i>hlūbōkee</i>	deep, pro- found.
zdravý, á, é	<i>zdrāvee</i>	healthy, well, sound
děvče	<i>d'ef-chě</i>	girl ^l
děvčata	<i>d'ef-chātā</i>	girls
dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well, all right
slovem	<i>slōvem</i>	in a word

EXERCISES.

Já vám něco řeknu. I will tell you something.

Bohactví není štěstí. Riches are not happiness.

To jsou slova moudrosti. These are words of wisdom.

Znáte váhu těch slov? Do you know the weight of those words?

K těm slovům nic více není třeba.
To those words nothing more is needed.

V těch slovech je hluboká pravda.
In those words there is a profound truth.

Chcete slyšeti více? Do you want to hear more?

Nikoli; ta slova postačí. Not at all; those words suffice.

Jsem spokojen s těmi slovy. I am satisfied with those words.

Slovem: máte pravdu! In a word: you are right!

Tam ty růže už mají poupata. The roses over there already have buds.

Ano, mají mnoho poupat. Yes, they have many buds.

Letos jsou obaleny poupaty. This year they are covered with buds.

V loni byly skoro bez poupat. Last year they were almost without buds.

Pojďme blíže k těm poupatům. Let us go nearer to those buds.

Vidím něco na těch poupatech. I see something on the buds.

To není nic. That is nothing.

Máte pravdu; poupata jsou zdravá.
You are right; the buds are sound.

Ano, jsou; yes, they are.

Aha, zde je moje děvče! Ah, here is my girl!

Jsou vaše děvčata zdravá? Are your girls well?

Obě naše děvčata jsou zdravá. Both our girls are well.

Přines děvčeti poupě Bring (thou) to the girl a bud.

Jsou zde dvě děvčata. There are two girls here.

Přineste jim několik poupat. Bring (you to) them some buds.

Tady jde s těmi poupaty. Here he comes with the buds.

Tu je pár poupat. Here are some buds.

Dobře. All right.

Hleďte! See!

Ty pole co vidíte jsou moje. The fields you see are mine.

Kolem těch polí je nový plot. Around those fields there is a new fence.

Je to drátěný plot. It is a wire fence.
K těm polím je dobrá cesta. To those fields there is a good road.
Co bude na těch polích? What will there be on those fields?
Na těch polích bude obilí a kukuřice. On those fields there will be grain and corn.

Jste spokojen s těmi polemi? Are you satisfied with those fields?

Jsem tuze spokojen. I am very much satisfied.

Všechno dobře roste na těch polích. Everything grows well on those fields.

Co je tohle? What is this here?
Nějaká znamení. Some signs.
To jsou moje znamení. These are my signs.
Já něco přidám k těm znamením. I shall add something to those signs.

Není mýlka v těch znameních! Is there no mistake in those signs?

S těmi znameními je někdy obtíž. With those signs there is sometimes trouble.

Pravda, je někdy obtíž. True, there is sometimes trouble.

Note. The formation of the plural of neutre nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, will appear from the following table:

slovo	<i>slŏvŏ</i>	the word	pole	<i>polě</i>	the field
poupě	<i>poŭpyě</i>	the bud	znamení	<i>znāměňee</i>	the sign;
slova	<i>slŏvā</i>	the words	pole	<i>pŏlē</i>	the fields
poupata	<i>poŭpātā</i>	the buds	znamení	<i>znāměňee</i>	the signs;
slov	<i>slof</i>	of the words	polí	<i>pŏlee</i>	of the fields
poupat	<i>poŭpāt</i>	of the buds	znamení	<i>znāměňee</i>	of the signs;
slovům	<i>slŏvŏom</i>	to the words	polím	<i>pŏleem</i>	to the fields
poupatům	<i>poŭpātŏom</i>	to the buds	znamením	<i>znāměňeem</i>	to the signs;
ve slovech	<i>vě slŏvěkh</i>	in the words	REMARK. Also with other prepositions: o polích , about the fields; na polích , on the fields.		
v poupatech	<i>fpoŭpātěkh</i>	in the buds			
v polích	<i>fpolēekh</i>	in the fields			
ve znameních	<i>vě znāměňeekh</i>	in the signs;			

slovy *slōvy* with the words
poupaty *poŭpāty* with the buds
poli (-emi) *poli (-ēmi)* with the fields
znameními *znāměněemi* with the
 signs.

REMARK. Also with the preposition
se, s: *se slovy, se slōvy; s poupaty,*
spoŭpāty; s polemi, spolěmi; se zna-
meními, sě znāměněemi.—Instead of
polemi, the short forms **polmi** and
poli (*polmi, polli*) are also used.

LESSON XVIII.

Mrak, m. *mrāk* cloud
mráček, m. *mrá-ček* little cloud
žena *ženā* wife
míle*), f. *meelě* mile
hodina*), f. *hōďinā* hour, o'clock
jízda, f. *ye zdā* drive, ride
k večeru *kwěchěrū* toward evening
za světla *zā swyět-lā* by daylight
tma *tmā* dark, darkness
pozdě *pōzďe* late
dobrá! *dobrá* very well!
krásný, á, é *krásssnee* beautiful
s námi *s námi* with us
brzy *b^er-zy* soon
po svém *pō svém* after one's
 business
ještě *yeshťe* still, yet.

já pravil *yá prāvīl* I said
járku *yá-rshkū* I said, I say
 (like the colloq. "says I".)
jeti *yet'i, yet* to drive, to ride
pojedem *pōyědem* we shall drive,
 we shall ride
pojed'me *poyěď'mě* let us drive,
 let us ride
vyjeti, *ve-yet'i, ve-yet* to drive
 out, to ride out, to start
vyjelijsme *ve-yelli smě* we started
vrátíme se *vrátěemě sě* we shall re-
 turn, we shall come back
vrátil mi *vrát'il me* he returned
 to me (something);
půjčené peníze *pŭychěné peñeězě*
 the money loaned;

*) **Jedna, dvě, tři, čtyry míle,** *yednā, dwyě, trshi, shtiri meelě,*
 one, two, three, four miles; **pět mil,** *pyět mill,* five miles; **šest mil,**
shěst mill, six miles; and so forth.

Jedna hodina, *yednā hōďinā,* one hour, one o'clock; **dvě, tři,**
čtyry hodiny, *dwyě, trshi, shtiri hōďiny,* two, three, four hours; two,
 three, four o'clock; **pět hodin,** *pyět hōďin,* five hours; five o'clock; **šest**
hodin, *shěst hōďin,* six hours, six o'clock; — and so forth.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl krásný den; — nebe bylo jasné, — ani mráčku nikde.

Jářku, ženo! dnes pojedem do města.

Ano, pojedme! pravila žena; — je den tak krásný!

Máme deset mil do města.

Brzy po snídani vyjeli jsme; — bylo právě osm hodin.

Soused pan Rohan byl s námi.

Já pravil: sousede, jak brzy budeme ve městě?

V deset hodin jsme tam! pravil pan Rohan.

A byli jsme.

Je to as dvě hodiny jízdy, když cesta je dobrá.

Ve městě soused šel kupovat něco a my také šli po svém.

Půjčil jsem mu pět dollarů.

Jářku, sousedě! kdy se vrátíme?

Myslím pozdě odpoledne, nebo k večeru; — to bude dost času.

Dobrá; vrátíme se asi v sedm hodin večer, — ještě za světla.

Ale bylo už tma, když jsme se vrátili.

Yesterday was a beautiful day; — the sky was clear, — not a cloud anywhere.

I said: wife, to-day we will drive to town.

Yes, let us drive! said (my) wife; — the day is so beautiful!

It is ten miles to town (*literally*: we have ten miles to town).

Soon after breakfast we drove out (we started); — it was just eight o'clock.

(Our) neighbor Mr. Rohan was with us.

I said: neighbor, how soon shall we be in the city?

At ten o'clock we are there! said Mr. Rohan.

And we were.

It is about a two hour's ride, when the road is good.

In the city, the neighbor went to buy something, and we also went after our business.

I loaned (to) him five dollars.

I said: neighbor, when shall we return?

I think late in the afternoon or towards evening; — that will be time enough.

Very well; we shall return about seven o'clock in the evening. — still by daylight.

But it was already dark, when we returned.

Soused šel domu a vrátil mi půjčené peníze.

The neighbor went home and returned to me the money I loaned him.

Note 1. The noun **mráček** is a diminutive of **mrak**. In English only a few nouns have their proper diminutives; for instance: man, *manikin*; eagle, *eaglet*; river, *rivulet*; goose, *gosling*.

In Bohemian diminutives are exceedingly numerous; and very often a noun has two, sometimes three diminutives, differing in degree. For example:

dům, m. *dům*, a house; **domek**, *děměk*, a small house; **domeček**, *děměček*, a very small house.

hoch, *hōkh*, a boy; **hošík**, *hōsheek*, a small boy; **hošíček**, *hōsheechek*, a very small boy.

ruka, f. *rūkă*, a hand; **ručka**, *rūchkă*, a small hand; **ručička**, *rūchich-kă*, a very small hand.

oko, n. *ōkō*, an eye; **očko**, *ōch-kō*, a small eye; **očíčko**, *ōchich-kō*, a very small eye.

Diminutives, however, are often used simply as expressions of fondness and endearment, apart from any relation of size or degree.

Note 2. The genitive or possessive case of **mráček** is **mráčku**, not **mráčeku**. All nouns ending in **ek** drop the letter **e** in their declension. They are all of the masculine gender (as observed in Lesson I, Note 5), and the animate have **ka**, the inanimate **ku** in the genitive:

ptáček, *ptáček*, (colloq. *ftáček*), a small bird; **ptáčka**, *ptáchkă* (*ftáchkă*), a small bird's;

svátek, *swátek*, a holiday; **svátku**, *swát-kă*, a holiday's.

Note 3. Reflexive verbs in English are followed by reflexive pronouns; for instance: to forswear *one's self*; I foreswore *myself*; he forswore *himself*; they forswore *themselves*; etc.

In Bohemian, the reflexive pronoun is always *se*, without any variation. But many verbs, which are reflexive in Bohemian, are not so in English; and vice versa:

Vrátiti se, *vrátit se* (to return, to come back), is a reflexive verb; we say: **vrátím se**, *vrátěem se*, I shall return; **vrátíme se**, *vrátěemě se*, we shall return; **vrátíte se**, *vrátěetě se*, you will return: **vrátí se**, *vrátěe se*, they will return.

Note 4. In the foregoing exercises, **sousedé**, **ženo**, are the vocative cases of **soused** (neighbor), **žena** (wife). The noun is put in the vocative case, when the person or thing is addressed: O Lord! o heavens!

In Bohemian, the vocative case in the singular is very often, in the plural *always* like the nominative, as will be seen from the following comparison:

Nominative.			Vocative.		
soused,	<i>soŭsed.</i>	the neighbor	sousedé!	<i>soŭsedě</i>	o neighbor!
muž,	<i>moož,</i>	the man	muži!	<i>mooži,</i>	o man!
žena,	<i>ženā,</i>	the woman	ženo!	<i>ženō,</i>	o woman!
kost, f.	<i>kōst,</i>	the bone	kosti!	<i>kōst'í,</i>	o bone!
růže, f.	<i>roožě,</i>	the rose	růže!	<i>roože</i>	o rose!
slovo, n.	<i>slōvō,</i>	the word	slovo!	<i>slōvō,</i>	o word!
pole, n.	<i>pōle,</i>	the field	pole!	<i>pōlē,</i>	o field!
znamení,	<i>znāmeňee,</i>	the sign	znamení!	<i>znāmeňee,</i>	o sign!

In the plural number, the nominative and vocative always agree

sousedí*),	<i>soŭsed'í,</i>	the neighbors;	o neighbors!
muži (-ové),	<i>mooži,</i>	the men;	o men!
ženy,	<i>žěny,</i>	the women;	o women!
kosti,	<i>kōst'í,</i>	the bones;	o bones!
růže,	<i>roožě,</i>	the roses;	o roses!
slova,	<i>slōvā,</i>	the words;	o words!
pole,	<i>pōlē,</i>	the fields;	o fields!
znamení,	<i>znāmeňee,</i>	the signs;	o signs!

*) **Sousedé**, *soŭsedé*, is the proper grammatical form, this noun forming an exception: but **sousedí** is the common usage.

Note 5. The Latin noun has six cases; the Bohemian noun has six cases corresponding perfectly with the Latin, and an additional case called "instrumental", because it denotes by whom, with whom or through whom (by means of what or through what) something happens or is done: **mužem, s mužem**, by the man, with the man; **dollarem, s dollarem**, with the dollar.

The nature of the six cases of the Bohemian noun apart from the vocative will appear more distinctly by stating the questions to which they respond.

The *nominative* case, of course, responds to the question **kdo? co?** *gdě, tsě*; who? what?

dollar, muž, žena, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word.—
dollary, muži, ženy, slova; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case responds to the question **čí, čeho?** *chee, chěhě*; whose? of what?

dollaru, muže, ženy, slova; of the dollar; the man's, the woman's, of the word; — **dollarů (-ův), mužů (-ův), žen, slov**; of the dollars, the men's, the women's, of the words.

The *dative* case responds to the question **komu? čemu?** *kěm, chěm*; to whom? to what?

dollaru, muži, ženě, slovu; to the dollar, to the man, to the woman, to the word; — **dollarům, mužům, ženám, slovům**; to the dollars; to the men, to the women, to the words.

The *accusative* or *objective* case responds to the question **koho? co?** *kěhě, tsě*; whom? what?

dollar, muže, ženu, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word; — **dollary, muže, ženy, slova**; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *locative* case responds to the question **v kom? v čem? (na kom? na čem? -- o kom? o čem?)**, *fkěm, fchěm*; in whom? in what? (on whom — what? about whom — what?)

v dollaru, v muži, v ženě, ve slovu (-ě); in the dollar, in the man,

in the woman, in the word; — **v dollarech, v mužích, v ženách, ve slovech**; in the dollars, in the men, in the women, in the words.

The *instrumen'al* case responds to the question **kým? čím?** — **s kým? s čím?** *keem, cheem, skeem, scheem*; by whom? by what? with whom? with what?

dollarem, mužem, ženou, slovem; with the dollar, with the man, with the woman, with the word; — **dollary, muži, ženami, slovy**; with the dollars, with the men, with the women, with the words.

LESSON XIX.

Pan	<i>păn</i>	Mr (mister)	blízký, á, é	<i>bleskee</i>	near
pán	<i>păn</i>	gentleman	hodný, á, é	<i>hodnee</i>	nice, good
paní	<i>pănnee</i>	Mrs. 'missis); lady	jiný, á, é	<i>ye-nee</i>	another
člověk	<i>chlōvyěk</i>	man; one;	letný, á, é	<i>letnee</i>	aged
Karel	<i>kărell</i>	Charles	bohatý. á, é	<i>bōhătee</i>	rich
Anna	<i>ănă</i>	Anna	chudý, á, é	<i>khŭdee</i>	poor
Marie	<i>mariě</i>	Mary	poctivý, á, é	<i>pots-t'ivee</i>	honest
dceruška	<i>tserŭshkă</i>	little daughter	mladý, á, é	<i>mlădee</i>	young
hošík	<i>hōsheek</i>	little boy	četný, á, é	<i>chetnee</i>	numerous
sousedka	<i>soŭsedkă</i>	female neighbor	pilný, á, é	<i>pīllnee</i>	industrious
vdova	<i>vdōvă</i>	widow	poslušný, á, é	<i>poslŭshnee</i>	obedient
vdovec	<i>vdō-věts</i>	widower	ještě tři	<i>yesh'te trshi</i>	} three other } three more
domov, m.	<i>dōmof</i>	home	usazen	<i>ŭssăzen</i>	
rok, m.	<i>rōk</i>	year	jmenuje se	<i>menŭyě sě</i>	is called
leta	<i>letă</i>	} years*)	v skutku	<i>fskŭt-kŭ</i>	} indeed, in } fact, really
let	<i>let</i>		opravdu	<i>oprăvdŭ</i>	
náklonnost, f.	<i>năklōnnost</i>	inclination	má být	<i>mă beet</i>	ought to be
několik	<i>ňekolĭk</i>	several, some, a few	máte rád	<i>mătě rád</i>	you like

*) **Dvě leta**, *dwyě letă*, two years; **tři leta**, *trshi letă*, three years; **čtyry leta**, *shtĭri letă*, four years; **pět let**, *pyět let*, five years; **šest let**, *shěst let*, six years; **sedm let**, *sědŭm let*, seven years; and so forth.

Máte to rád? <i>mátě to rád?</i> do you like it?	nesklame se, <i>nessklámě se,</i> will not be disappointed;
mám vždycky rád, <i>mám dit-ski rád,</i> I always like;	jednám, <i>yed-nám,</i> I deal;
dávno, <i>dávně,</i> a long time;	jedná, <i>yed-ná,</i> deals;
jak dávno, <i>yák dávně</i> how long;	váš, <i>váš,</i> your, yours;
	její, <i>yěyee,</i> her, hers.

EXERCISES.

Tak zde je váš domov!

Kdo je váš soused?

Pan Hodan je můj soused.

On je náš blízký soused.

Je pan Hodan hodný muž?

Ano, je hodný muž; a paní Hodanová je hodná žena.

Mají děti?

Mají jednu dcerušku.

Jak se jmenuje?

Myslím že jmenuje se Marie; je to hodné dítě.

Jiný soused náš je pan Braun.

Jak dávno je zde usazen?

Je zde usazen asi rok nebo dvě leta.

Je pan Braun bohatý?

Není; on je chudý člověk.

Je chudý a tuze poctivý.

Je letný muž?

Ne, pan Braun je mladý muž a paní Braunová je mladá žena.

Ale rodina je už četná.

Mají několik dětí.

So here is your home!

Who is your neighbor?

Mr. Hodan is my neighbor.

He is our near neighbor.

Is Mr. Hodan a nice man?

Yes, he is a nice man; and Mrs. Hodan is a nice woman.

Have they children?

They have one little daughter.

What is her name?

I think she is called Mary; she is a nice child.

Another neighbor of ours is Mr. Brown.

How long is he (has he been) settled here?

He has been settled here about a year or two (years).

Is Mr. Brown rich?

He is not; he is a poor man.

He is poor and very honest.

Is he an aged man?

No; Mr. Brown is a young man, and Mrs. Brown is a young woman.

But the family is already numerous.

They have several children.

Karel je asi deset let a pak mají ještě tři děti.

Karel je poslušný a pilný hoch.

Anna je také poslušná a pilná.

Je jí asi osm let.

Dítě má být poslušné a pilné.

Ano, má být; ale někdy není.

Vdova Borošová je také naše blízká sousedka.

Její bratr, pan Bloch, je také vdovec.

Charles is about ten years, and then they have three more children.

Charles is an obedient and industrious boy.

Anna is also obedient and industrious.

She is (*literally*: it is to her) about eight years.

A child should be obedient and industrious.

Yes, it ought to be; but sometimes it is not.

The widow Borosh is also our near neighbor.

Her brother, Mr. Bloch, is also a widower.

Teda máte rád pana Hodana? (*pěňň hoděňň*),—accusative).

Mám vždycky rád hodného muže, a hodnou ženu také.

K hodnému muži a k hodné ženě máme vždy náklonnost.

A je také pravda, že v hodném muži a v hodné ženě se člověk nikdy neskame.

S hodným mužem a hodnou ženou každý rád jedná.

Tež rád jedná s hodným dítětem.

Pana Branna hošík je v skutku hodné dítě.

So you like Mr. Hodan?

I always like a nice man, and a nice woman too.

Toward a nice man and a nice woman we always have an inclination. And it is also true, that in a good man and in a good woman one is never disappointed.

With a nice man and a nice woman everybody likes to deal.

I also like to deal with a nice child. Mr. Brown's little boy is really a good child.

Note 1. In Lesson VI. Note 2, it was explained that the termination of adjectives changes according to the gender of the nouns which they qualify:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženā,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child (in ordinary discourse hodný dítě , like the masculine).

Adjectives, also, are declined and agree in number and case with the nouns. The changes of termination in the singular number appear in the following table:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child;
hodného muže,	<i>hodného moožě,</i>	of a nice man,
“ dítě,	“ <i>d'eeťetě,</i>	of a nice child;

REMARK. The accusative or objective agrees with the possessive in the masculine, and with the nominative in the neutre gender:
vidím hodného muže, *viďeem hodného moožě,* I see a nice man;
vidím hodné dítě, *viďeem hodné d'eeťe,* I see a nice child.

hodnému muži,	<i>hodnémů mooži,</i>	to a nice man,
“ dítěti,	“ <i>d'eeťet'i,</i>	to a nice child;
v hodném muži,	<i>vhodném mooži,</i>	in a nice man,
“ “ dítěti,	“ <i>d'eeťet'i,</i>	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	<i>shodneem moožem,</i>	with a nice man,
“ “ dítětem,	“ <i>d'eeťet'em,</i>	with a nice child.

hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženā,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné ženy,	<i>hodné ženy,</i>	of a nice woman;
“ ženě,	“ <i>žeňe,</i>	to a nice woman;
v “ ženě,	v “ “ ,	in a nice woman;
hodnou ženu,	<i>hodnoů ženů,</i>	a nice woman (<i>accusative</i>);
s hodnou ženou,	<i>shodnoů ženů,</i>	with a nice woman.

Note 2. In common discourse no distinction whatever is made between the masculine and neutre gender, and the terminal *ý* does not change. We hear:

hodný muž,	hodný dítě;	a nice man,	a nice child;
hodnýho muže,	hodnýho dítěte;	of a nice man,	of a nice child;
hodnému muži,	hodnému dítěti;	to a nice man,	to a nice child;
hodnýho muže,	hodný dítě;	((<i>accusative</i>); a nice man,	a nice child;
v hodným muži,	v hodným dítěti;	in a nice man,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	s hodným dítětem;	with a nice man,	with a nice child.

In the feminine gender, we hear: **hodná žena, hodnou ženu** (*accus.*), **s hodnou ženou**; but in the other cases:

hodný ženy,	of a good woman;
hodný ženě,	to a good woman;
v hodný ženě,	in a good woman;

The ordinary usage of the people evidently rejects all artificial, and unnecessary grammatical distinction, always tending to simplicity; and it will be noticed that there is much more consistency in this common rule as applied to the declension of adjectives, when we come to treat of their plural number.

Note 3. In Bohemian, the adjective may be placed either before or after the noun, according to the speaker's pleasure;

pan Hodan je hodný muž;	}	Mr. Hodan is a nice man;
pan Hodan je muž hodný;		
je to letný muž;	}	he is (<i>literally</i> , it is) an aged man.
je to muž letný;		

It is usually placed after the noun when the speaker wishes to lay particular stress upon the adjective (*hodný, letný*) qualifying the noun.

LESSON XX.

Sousedstvo, n. <i>soŭsedstvŏ</i>	neighborhood	vejde	<i>veydě</i>	enters, calls	
celý, á, é	<i>tselee</i>	whole, all	rád vejde	<i>rád veydě</i> , likes to call	
milý, á, é	<i>millee</i>	pleasant, pleasing, dear	rád promluví, rád promlŭvee,	likes to talk (to have a chat)	
příjemno, f. <i>prshee-yěmnŏ</i>	agreeable, pleasant	má rád	<i>má rád</i>	he likes	
nehodný	<i>ně hodnee</i>	naughty	má ráda	<i>má rádă</i>	she likes
bydleti	<i>bidlet</i>	to live, to reside	doufám	<i>doŭfám</i>	I hope
vše	<i>fshě</i>	{ everything, all	ba právě	<i>bă právyě</i>	that is so; to be sure;
všechno	<i>fshekh-nŏ</i>		ba věru	<i>bă vyěrŭ</i>	certainly: no doubt of it;
však	<i>fshăk</i>	but	v pořádku	<i>fpo-rshád-kŭ</i>	right; all right;
však je	<i>fshăk yě</i>	but there is (there are)	dobrá vůle	<i>dobrá voolě</i>	good will
nad	<i>năd</i>	over	na štěstí	<i>nă shěstěti</i> ,	happily, fortunately;
není nad něni năd		there is nothing better than . . . ; nothing like. . . . ;	je na to čas, yě nă tŏ chăss,		there is time for it.
velmi	<i>velmi</i>	very	že ne? žě ně?	{ isn't it so? is it not? are they not?	
jich	<i>yikh</i>	of them			
nám	<i>nám</i>	to us	to víš	<i>tŏ veesh</i>	thou knowest
vám	<i>vám</i>	to you	to víte	<i>tŏ veetě</i>	you know

REMARK. When standing alone and used as a rejoinder, *to víš* and *to víte* signify; *of course, to be sure.*

EXERCISES.

Myslím že všichni vaši sousedé jsou hodní.

Pravda; celé sousedstvo je hodné.

Pak je příjemno bydlet zde.

Opravdu, velmi příjemno.

A jaké je sousedstvo vaše?

My také máme pár hodných sousedů.

Myslím že je vám to také milé.

Je nám to tuze milé.

Člověk rád vejde k hodným sousedům.

Každý má rád hodné sousedy.

Ba právě; a v hodných sousedech vždycky (*dit-ski*) má podporu.

Když je na to čas, člověk rád promluví s hodnými sousedy.

Není nad hodné sousedy!

I think that all your neighbors are nice.

True; the whole neighborhood is nice.

Then it is agreeable to live here.

Truly, very agreeable.

And what kind is *your* neighborhood?

We also have some nice neighbors (i. e. some *of* the nice neighbors).

I think (that) it is also agreeable to you.

It is very agreeable to us.

One likes to call on nice neighbors; (*literally:*) one likes to enter to nice neighbors).

Everybody likes good neighbors.

To be sure; and in good neighbors one always has (finds) a support.

When there is time for it, one likes to have a chat with good neighbors.

There is nothing like good neighbors!

Má žena je zde velmi spokojena.

Vaše sousedky jsou všechny hodné, že ne?

Naše sousedky jsou hodné.

To víte, že mezi hodnými sousedkami je dobrá vůle.

Není nad dobrou vůli v sousedstvu.

To víte.

Když sousedé také mají hodné děti, všechno je v pořádku.

My wife is very much satisfied here.

Your female neighbors are all nice, are they not?

Our female neighbors are nice.

You know that among nice female neighbors there is good will.

There is nothing like good will in a neighborhood.

Of course (i. e. you know).

When the neighbors also have nice children, everything is all right.

Máme opravdu mnoho hodných dětí v sousedstvu.

Však je také několik nehodných.

Doufám že není jich mnoho.

Na štěstí není jich mnoho.

Je jich jen pár; ale je to dost.

Ba věru.

We have indeed many nice children in the neighborhood (i. e. many of the nice children)*).

But there are also a few naughty (ones).

I hope (that) there are not many of them.

Fortunately there are not many of them.

There are only a few; but it is enough.

No doubt of it.

Note 1. In the plural, the masculine gender of an adjective changes the terminal *ý* into an *í*;

hodný muž, *hodnee moož*, a nice man; **hodní muži**, *hodñee mooži*, nice men.

The feminine gender changes the terminal *á* into an *é* :

hodná žena, *hodná ženā*, a nice woman; **hodné ženy**, *hodné ženy*, nice women.

The neutre gender changes the terminal *é* into an *á* :

hodné děcko, *hodné d'et-sko*, a nice child; **hodná děcka**, *hodná d'et-skā*, nice children.

Dítě, *d'ee'te*, (child,) follows the feminine in the plural: **hodné děti**, *hoāné d'et'i*, nice children.

Note 2. Adjectives containing in their last syllable the hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, change these consonants in the plural of the masculine animate gender into **z, š, c, ř**, in the same manner as stated in Lesson XV. Note 3. For example:

*) **Mnoho, málo, pár, kolik, několik**, (many, few, a few, how many, some, as well as all numbers after "four" (see foot-notes in Lessons XVIII and XIX) govern the *genitive or possessive* case; hence the noun, or pronoun, adjective, which follows them, must always appear in that case.

dlouhý had, *dloŭhee hăd*, a long snake; **dlouzí hadi**, *dloŭzee hăďi*, long snakes;

hluchý muž, *hlŭkhee moož*, a deaf man; **hluší muži**, *hlŭshee mooži*, deaf men;

velký hoch, *velkee hŏkh*, a big boy; **velcí hoši**, *veltsee hŏ-shi*, big boys;
dobrý soused, *dobree soŭsed*, a good neighbor; **dobří sousedí**, *dobr-shee soŭsedďi*, good neighbors.

Note 3. The following table presents a complete view of the plural number of adjectives ending in *ý* (*á*, *é*).

The *nominative* and *accusative* cases:

hodní muži (*accus. hodné muže*), *hodňee mooži*, *hodné moožě*, nice men;

hodné ženy, *hodné žěny*, nice women;

hodná děcka, *hodná ďetskă*, nice children.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case :

hodných mužů, žen, děcek, *hodneekh moožoo. žen, ďetsek*, of the nice men, women, children.

The *dative* case :

hodným mužům, ženám, děckům, *hodneem moožoom, ženám ďet-skoom*, to the nice men, women, children.

The *locative* case:

o hodných mužích, ženách, děkách, *o hodneekh moožeekh, ženákh, ďetskákĥ*, about the nice men, women, children.

The *instrumental* case:

s hodnými muži, ženami, děcky, *shodneemi mooži, ženămi, ďetski*, with the nice men, women, children.

Note 4. In common discourse, however, the grammatical distinction of gender in the nominative plural of this class of adjectives is treated as perfectly useless, which in fact it is. The Bohemian language, as it lives in the daily intercourse of millions, employs the masculine singular form of the adjective in all three genders of the plural, recognizing only one form of declension :

hodný muži, hodný ženy, hodný děti (or děcka); the nice men, women, children;

hodných mužů, žen, dětí; of the nice men, women, children:
and so forth.

LESSON XXI.

Sousedův, m. *soŭsedoof* }
sousedova, f. *soŭsedŏvǎ* } the
sousedovo, n. *soŭsedŏvŏ* } neigh-
sousedovi, pl. *soŭsedŏvi* } bor's.

bratrův, m. *brǎtroof*, the brother's

plný, á, é *pl-nee* full

nový; á, é *nŏvee* new

falešný, á, é *fǎleshnee* false

co nového? *tsŏ nŏvéhŏ*, what is
the news?

noviny, pl. *nŏviny* news, news-
paper

tiskárna, f. *tiskárnǎ* printing office

list *list*, paper, sheet, leaf

hlas, m. *hlǎss* voice

sloupec, m. *sloŭpets* column

sloupce *sloŭp-tsě* columns

čísti, *cheestŭi*, *cheest*, to read

čteme *chtěmě* we read

v tom, m & n. *flŏm*) in that

v té, f. *fté*)

proto *prŏtŏ* hence, therefore

proto ale přece, *prŏtŏ ǎlě prshě-tsě*,

in spite of that, notwith-

standing that

denní *děňee* daily

týdenní *teeděňee* weekly

denník, m. *děňeek*, daily paper

týdenník, m. *teeděňeek* weekly "

dnešní *dnesh-ňee* today's

včerejší *fchěreyshee* yesterday's

poslední *pŏsledňee* last

volba, f. *volbǎ* election

zpráva, f. *správǎ* advice

den co den, *den tsŏ den*, day by day

co, něco *tsŏ, ňetsŏ* something

brzo hotovi, *b^erzo hotŏvi*, soon done

přinesl *prshi nessler* he brought

dopadnouti, *dŏpǎdnoŭt*, to come

out, to result

podívej se, *pŏdĕevey sě*, look thou)

podívejte se, *pŏdĕeveytě sě*, look

(you)

pokaždé, *pŏkǎždě* every time

též *těž* also

věřiti, *vyě-rhiŭi*, *vyě-rshit*, to be-

lieve

nesmíte *něsmeetě* you must not

pracovati *prǎtsŏvǎt* to work

pracuje *prǎtsŭyě* work

EXERCISES.

Kdo to byl?	Who was it?
To byl sousedův syn.	That was (our) neighbor's son.
Přinesl něco?	Has he brought something?
Přinesl nám noviny.	He brought (to) us a newspaper.
Sousedovy noviny?	Our neighbor's newspaper?
Ano, sousedovy noviny.	Yes, our neighbor's paper.
Jsou to denní nebo týdenní noviny?	Is it a daily or a weekly newspaper?
Je to denník.	It is a daily.
Jaký je to denník?	What daily is it?
Je to Denní Hlas.	It is the Daily Voice.
Bratrův hoch pracuje v té tiskárně, myslím.	My brother's boy works in that printing-office, I think.
Ano, a sousedova dcera též.	Yes, and (our) neighbor's daughter also.
Bratrova dcera chce tam pracovat též.	My brother's daughter wants to work there also.
A Hodanova Marie také.	And Mary Hodan too.
Je to dnešní list?	Is it to-day's paper?
Je dnešní; ale sousedův Jan také přinesl včerejší list.	It is to-day's; but (neighbor's) John also brought yesterday's paper.
Co je nového? Podívej se do dnešního listu.	What is the news? Look (thou) into to-day's paper.
Ve dnešním listu není mnoho nového; — jen něco o poslední volbě.	In to-day's paper there is not much news; only something about the last election.
Jak dopadla poslední volba?	How did the last election come out?
Hned to budu čísti.	I shall read it right away.
Budeme brzy hotovi s dnešním listem.	We shall soon be done with to-day's paper.
Denní listy vždycky (<i>dít-ski</i>) mají něco nového.	Daily papers always have something new.
Pravda, v denních listech je po každé co čísti.	To be sure, in daily papers there is every time something to read.

Ale nesmíte vždy věřiti denním listům.

S denními listy je to tak : sloupce musí býti plné den co den.

Proto jsou někdy falešné zprávy v denních listech.

Proto ale přece rádi čteme denní listy.

Čteme několik denních listů (*genit. case*, — “of the daily papers”).

But you must not always believe the daily papers.

With the daily papers it is so; the columns must be full day by day.

Hence there are sometimes false advices in daily papers.

In spite of that we like to read the daily papers.

We read several daily papers.

Note 1. Adjectives ending in *í*, like *denní*, *dnešní*, *poslední*, *včerejší*, have the same termination in all genders and both numbers; and in the singular of the feminine gender they remain unchanged in all cases: in the masculine and neutre gender the genitive case is characterized by the termination *ího*, the dative by *ímu*, the locative and instrumental by *ím*, — corresponding with *ého*, *ému*, *ém* & *ým* of the main order of adjectives.

In the plural, their declension is the same in all three genders, showing the termination *ích* in the genitive and locative, *ím* in the dative, and *imi* in the instrumental case.

Note 2. There is also a class of adjectives derived from nouns denoting persons or animals, by means of the suffixes *ův*, *ova*, *ovo*, according to gender. They are called “possessive adjectives”, and their sense is rendered in English by the “possessive case” of the noun :

sousedův syn,	<i>soŭsedoof syn,</i>	the neighbor's son;
sousedova dcera,	<i>sōŭsedōvā tsěřā,</i>	the neighbor's daughter;
sousedovo dítě,	<i>saŭsedōvō d'et'e,</i>	the neighbor's child;
sousedovi synové,	<i>soŭsedōvi synōvé,</i>	the neighbor's sons;
sousedovy dcery (děti),	<i>soŭsedōvi tsěry (d'et'i),</i>	the neighbor's daughters (children).

From feminine nouns they are derived by the suffixes *in*, *ina*, *ino* (*iny* in the plural, in colloquial usage).

ženin klobouk, *žeňin klobouk,* the woman's (or wife's) bonnet;
ženiny šaty, *žeňiny sháty,* the woman's (or wife's) clothes or dress.

Grammatically, these adjectives have their own mode of declension; but colloquially, they are declined just like adjectives of the main order: **hodný, á, é.**

Note 3. A few more examples of such possessive adjectives as are commonly in use, in connection with nouns of different gender, will make the student sufficiently familiar with them:

Otec, *otets,* the father :

otecův klobouk, m.	<i>otsoof klobouk,</i>	the father's hat;
otcova čepice, f.	<i>otsová chěpitsě,</i>	the father's cap;
otcovo místo, n.	<i>otsově meestě,</i>	the father's place;

Matka, *mātkā,* the mother:

matčín pokoj, m.	<i>mātchin pōkoy,</i>	the mother's room;
matčina stoliice, f.	<i>mātchinā stolitsě,</i>	the mother's chair;
matčino slovo, n.	<i>mātchinō slově,</i>	the mother's word.

Sestra, *sestrā* the sister :

sestrin šál, m.	<i>sest-rshin shawl,</i>	the sister's shawl;
sestrina taška, f.	<i>sest-rshinā tāshkā,</i>	the sister's satchel;
sestrino piano,	<i>sest-rshinō piāno,</i>	the sister's piano.

Hoch, *hōkh,* the boy :

hochův míč, m.	<i>hōkhooſ meeč,</i>	the boy's ball;
hochova mapa, f.	<i>hōkhovā mǎpǎ,</i>	the boy's map;
hochovo pero, n.	<i>hōkhově perě,</i>	the boy's pen;

Holka, *holkā,* the girl :

holčín kufr, m.	<i>holchin kūff^er,</i>	the girl's trunk;
holčina postel, f.	<i>holchinā postell,</i>	the girl's bed;
holčino prádlo, n.	<i>holchinō prádlě,</i>	the girl's linen,

REMARK. It will be noticed that in the derivatives from feminine nouns ending in **ka, ra**, the hard consonants **k, r**, change into the soft consonants **č, ř**: **matka, matčín**; **sestra, sestřín**.

LESSON XXII.

Mladý, á, é	<i>mlādee</i>	young	přítel, m.	<i>prshee-tel</i>	friend
mladší	<i>mlād-shee</i>	younger	obchod, m.	<i>ob-hkōd</i>	business
nejmladší	<i>ney-mlād-shee</i>	youngest	obchodník, m.	<i>ob-khōd-ñeek</i>	mer-
starý, á, é	<i>stāree</i>	old		chant, business man;	
starší,	<i>stār-shee</i>	older	krám, m.	<i>krám</i>	store
nejstarší	<i>ney-stār-shee</i>	oldest	sklad, m.	<i>sklād</i>	warehouse
bohatší	<i>bohāt-shee</i>	richer	zboží, n.	<i>zbožee</i>	goods, stock
nejbohatší	<i>ney-bohāt-shee</i>	richest			of goods;
chudší	<i>khūd-shee</i>	poorer	železný, á, é	<i>želēznee,</i>	of iron;
nejchudší	<i>ney-khūd-shee</i>	poorest	železné zboží,	<i>želēzné zbožee,</i>	hard-
nejposlednější	<i>ney-posled-ñeyshee</i>				ware;
	last of all, the very last		konkurent, m.	<i>concūrent,</i>	compet-
jak se jmenuje?	<i>yāk sě menūyě,</i>			itor;	
	what is his name?		lidi, lidé,	<i>līd'i, lidé,</i>	people
bud' jak bud',	<i>būd' yāk būd',</i>	be it	jeden z (ze),	<i>yēden z (zě),</i>	one of
	as it may; no matter how it is;		jeho	<i>yěhō</i>	his
není-li pravda?	<i>neyñi-li prāvdā,</i>		zatím	<i>zāt'eem</i>	} on the contrary
	isn't it so?		naopak	<i>nā-opāk</i>	
je-li možná!	<i>yelli mōžná,</i>	is it pos-	mezi	<i>mězi</i>	among
	sible!		přes	<i>prshēs</i>	over, across
já myslel,	<i>yá mīs-lēl,</i>	I thought	skoupý, á, é	<i>skoūpee</i>	miserly
oni myslí,	<i>oñi mīsee,</i>	they think	štědrý, á, é	<i>sh'tedree</i>	liberal
bydlíte,	<i>bidleetě</i>	you live (reside)	patří	<i>pātrshee</i>	belongs.

známý, á, é *znāmee*, known; (used as a noun) acquaintance;
půl leta, *pool letā*, half a year; **ze všech,** *zě fshěkh*, of all.

EXERCISES.

Jsem rád že jste tu.

Vy bydlíte teda v B.?

Ano; už přes rok.

Já mám přítele*) v B.

Je bohatý obchodník; — má veliký sklad — a krám plný zboží na Washington ulici.

Jaký má obchod?

Železné zboží. (Obchod v železném zboží).

Jak se jmenuje?

Jmenuje se Josef Baldwin; — znáte ho?

Znám ho; — je bohatý, — ale jeho konkurent p. Adams je bohatší, — a pan Fleming je nejbohatší.

Buď jak buď, pan Baldwin patří mezi nejbohatší obchodníky ve městě B.

Ano, jest jeden z nejbohatších obchodníků, — to je pravda.

Ale není pravda, že je skoupý; — naopak, on je tuze štědrý.

Jeho soused přes ulici, pan Wild, je také můj známý; — myslím že je posud chudý muž.

Ano, je prý chudší než lidi myslí; — však není ten nejchudší obchodník ve městě.

I am glad that you are here.

You live, then, in B.?

Yes; already over a year;

I have a friend in B.

He is a rich merchant; — he has a large warehouse — and a store full of goods on Washington street.

What business has he?

Hardware. (A hardware business).

What is his name?

His name is Joseph Baldwin; — do you know him?

I know him; — he is rich, — but his competitor Mr. Adams is richer, — and Mr. Fleming is the richest.

Be it as it may, Mr. Baldwin belongs among the richest business men in the city of B.

Yes, he is one of the richest merchants, — that is true;

But it is not true, that he is miserly; — on the contrary, — he is very liberal.

His neighbor across the street, Mr. Wild, is also my acquaintance; — I think that he is still a poor man.

Yes, he is said to be poorer than people think; — but he is not the poorest business man in town.

*) The noun *přítel* is somewhat irregular in its declension: *přítele*, *prshée-telě*, in the genitive and accusative case (of a friend: a friend); *příteli*, the dative, also the vocative (to a friend; friend!). The plural is *přátelé*, *prshá-telě*, the friends; *přátel*, *prshá-tel*, of the friends.

Váš Robert je klerkem*), není-li pravda?

Ano, je**) klerkem už půl leta.

Myslím že Robert bude dobrý obchodník(or dobrým obchodníkem).

Robert je pilný hoch, — ale Frank je pilnější, — a Edward je nej-pilnější ze všech.

Není Frank starší než Robert?

Ne; Robert je starší a Edward je nejstarší.

Je-li možná! — Já myslel, že Robert je mladší než Frank, — a Frank zatím je nejmladší.

Your Robert is a clerk, is he not?

Yes, he has been a clerk for half-a-year.

I think that Robert will be a good business man.

Robert is an industrious boy, — but Frank's more industrious, — and Edward is the most industrious of all.

Is not Frank older than Robert?

No, Robert is older, and Edward is the oldest.

Is it possible! — I thought that Robert was younger than Frank, — and Frank, on the contrary, is the youngest.

*) The noun *klerk* is here used in the instrumental case, answering the question *čím je?* *cheem yě*, what is he?

This is a common construction. — We may ask: *Co je váš syn?* *what is your son?* — The answer would be: *On je klerk*, *he is a clerk*.

We may also ask: *Čím je váš syn?* (which, in English, is identical with the first question;) the answer would be: *On je klerkem*, *he is a clerk*.

In a similar manner we say in Bohemian, using the instrumental case:

<i>Jsem farmerem,</i>	I am a farmer;
<i>on je farmerem,</i>	he is a farmer;
<i>on je obchodníkem,</i>	he is a merchant;
<i>je generalem,</i>	he is a general; etc.

**) *Je, on je, on jest*, *he is*, the simple present tense of *býti*, *to be*, is also used in Bohemian for the perfect tense *he has been*. (See Lesson IX. Note 1.) Similarly we say;

<i>jsem tu rok,</i>	I have been here a year;
<i>já jsem tu rok,</i>	“ “ “ “ “ “
<i>jsem farmerem deset let,</i>	I have been a farmer for ten years;
<i>jsme doma týden,</i>	we have been at home a week; etc.

Máte také dcery?	Have you also daughters?
Mám dceru; je ještě mladší než hoch Frank.	I have a daughter; she is still younger than the boy Frank.
To je nejposlednější dítě.	That is the very last child.
To je má celá rodina.	That is my whole family.

Note 1. In the English language, the comparative degree of adjectives is formed either by adding **er**, or by placing **more** before them. young, *younger*; industrious, *more industrious*.

The superlative degree is formed either by adding **est (st)**, or by placing **most** before the adjective: *youngest*; *most industrious*.

In Bohemian, the comparative degree is formed by adding **ší** or **ější** (sometimes **ejší**) in place of the final **ý** (**á**, **é**):

mladý, **á**, **é** *mládee*, young; **mladší**, *mládshee*, younger;
pilný, **á**, **é** *pillnee*, industrious: **piln-ější**, *pillñeyshee*, more industrious.

The superlative degree is always formed by prefixing **nej**, *ney*, to the comparative degree:

nej-mladší, *neymládshee*, youngest;
nej-pilnější, *neypillñeyshee*, most industrious.

Note 2. Some adjectives, in Bohemian as well as in English, have an irregular comparison. The most common of them are the following:

dobrý ,	<i>dobree</i> ,	good;	lepší ,	<i>lepshee</i> ,	better;
zlý ,	<i>zlee</i> ,	bad;	horší ,	<i>horshee</i> ,	worse;
malý ,	<i>málee</i> ,	small;	menší ,	<i>menshee</i> ,	smaller;
velký ,	<i>velkee</i> ,	large;	větší ,	<i>vyětshee</i> ,	larger;
dlouhý ,	<i>dloŭhee</i> ,	long;	delší ,	<i>delshee</i> ,	longer;
vysoký ,	<i>visōkee</i> .	high;	vyšší ,	<i>vishee</i> ,	higher;
hluboký ,	<i>hlŭbokee</i> ,	deep;	hlubší ,	<i>hlŭbshee</i> ,	deeper;
široký ,	<i>shirokee</i> ,	wide;	širší ,	<i>shirshee</i> ,	wider;
daleký ,	<i>dālekee</i> ,	far;	další ,	<i>dālshee</i> ,	farther;

blízký,	<i>bleskee,</i>	near;	bližší,	<i>blishee,</i>	nearer;
hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	pretty, (nice);	hezčí,	<i>hess-chee,</i>	prettier;
lehký,	<i>lēhkee,</i>	light;	lehčí,	<i>lēh-chee,</i>	lighter;
měkký,	<i>myēkee,</i>	soft;	měkčí,	<i>myēk-chee,</i>	softer.

The superlative is formed without exception by prefixing **nej** to the comparative.

LESSON XXIII.

Já jel,	<i>yá yell,</i>	I rode, I went;	domov, m.	<i>dōmōf,</i>	a home;
čekal,	<i>chekāl,</i>	(he) waited;	obydlí, n.	<i>ōbidlee,</i>	dwelling;
pravil,	<i>prāvil,</i>	(he) said;	světnice, f.	<i>swyētñitsě</i>	} room
vešel,	<i>věshell</i>	went in;	sednice, f.	<i>sedñitsě</i>	
psala,	<i>psālā,</i>	(she) wrote;	ložnice, f.	<i>lož-ñitsě,</i>	bedroom;
neviděl jsem,	<i>něvid'el sem,</i>	I did not see;	dráha, f.	<i>dráhā,</i>	road, railroad;
milujem se,	<i>milūyem se,</i>	we love each other;	po dráze,	<i>pō drázě,</i>	by railroad;
postavím si,	<i>postāveem si,</i>	I shall build for myself;	nádraží, n.	<i>nádrā-žee,</i>	depot;
ať to stojí,	<i>ať tō stoyee,</i>	let it cost;	pohodlí, n.	<i>pōhodlee,</i>	comfort;
řka,	<i>rshkā,</i>	saying;	pohodlný, á, é	<i>pōhod^elnee,</i>	comfortable;
řekl jsem,	<i>rshēkl sem,</i>	I said, I told;	švagrová,	<i>shwāgrová,</i>	sister-in-law;
		I have said (told);	dítko, n.	<i>d'etkō,</i>	child, baby;
mluvil jsem,	<i>mlūvil sem,</i>	I have spoken; I spoke;	nemoc, f.	<i>nēmots,</i>	sickness;
slyšel jsem,	<i>slīshell sem;</i>	I have heard; I heard;	všelico,	<i>fshellitsō,</i>	different things;
sednouti si,	<i>sednoūt si,</i>	to sit down;	dlouho,	<i>dloūhō,</i>	long, a long time;
tázati se,	<i>tízāt sě,</i>	to ask, to inquire;	onehdy,	<i>ōnēh-de,</i>	the other day;
			zdráv, a, o,	<i>zdrāv,</i>	well, healthy;
			unaven, a, o,	<i>ūnāven,</i>	tired;
			takový, á, é,	<i>tākovce,</i>	such;
			vedle,	<i>vě-dlē,</i>	next to; side by side;
			věru,	<i>vyērū,</i>	indeed;

zůstati , <i>zoostăt</i> , to stay, to remain;	pro	<i>prŏ</i>	for.
svlékni se , <i>svlékni se</i> , undress!	napřed ,	<i>năprshed</i> ,	first, ahead;
lehl jsem si , <i>lě-hl sem si</i> , I lay down;			
se, sebe , <i>sě, sěbě</i> , oneself; myself	thymself,	himself,	herself, itself;
	ourselves,	yourselves,	themselves;
si, sobě , <i>si, sŏbyě</i> , to oneself: to myself, etc. etc.			
sebou , <i>sěbou</i> , by or with oneself; etc. etc.			

EXERCISES.

Já jel*) oňehdy do Chicago; — mám tam bratra; — chtěl jsem ho vidět, — též jeho obydlí; — on čekal na mě v nádraží. — **Já přijel** po dráze C. & NW.

Pravil mi: “Rád tě vidím, bratře! — Čekal jsem tebe; — ukážu ti můj domov. — Dáme tobě naši největší ložnici.

Musíš zůstat u mě aspoň týden; — tak teda p'jd' se mnou.”

Řekl jsem mu, že já také rád ho vidím. — **Jsi zdrav?** tázal jsem se ho.

“**Ano, jsem tuze zdrav**”, pravil on; “**má žena je také zdráva**

I went the other day to Chicago; — I have a brother there; — I wanted to see him, — also his dwelling; — he waited for me at the depot. — I came by the C. & NW. railroad.

He said to me: “I am glad to see thee, brother! — I have been expecting thee; — I will show to thee my home. — We shall give (to) thee our largest bedroom.

Thou must stay with me (i. e. at my house) at least a week; — so, then, come with me.”

I told him that I also was glad to see him? — Are you well? I asked him.

“Yes, I am very well”, said he; “my wife is also well and the baby

*) **Jeti**, *yeťi* (commonly *yet*), to ride, to go by railroad or otherwise. **Já j-em jel**, *yá sem yell*, I rode, I went, — I have gone; **já jel**, *yá yell*, is the past tense with the auxiliary **jsem** left out, as explained in Lesson X. The same applies to **já přijel**, *yá prshi-yell* I came (by train or other means of conveyance). From the verb **jeti**, *yeťi*, (or *yet*) to ride, or to go by some conveyance, about as many new verbs can be derived by prefixes as from **jíti**, *yeet'i*, (or *yeet*) to go See Lesson XIII, Note 6.

a dítě je také zdrávo. — Jsme spokojeni a milujem se.”

A věru, na něm neviděl jsem žádnou nemoc. — Švagrová psala pravdu o něm, že je zdrav.

Šel jsem s nim. — Za půl hodiny byli jsme u něho. — Já šel napřed, on za mnou. — Jeho žena též ráda mě viděla; — ona také mě čekala.

Přinesl jsem jí všelico; — něco pro ní, něco pro její dítě. — Mluvil jsem s ní dlouho o všelichem, — a slyšel jsem od ní mnoho nového. — Ono bylo skoro všechno nové pro mě.

Myslí jsem si: Mají pěkný dům, — pohodlný domov. — Tolik světlé! — Já si postavím takový dům; — malou ložnici pro sebe a dvě velké ložnice pro rodinu. — Postavím sobě též vedle písárnu.

Ať to stojí něco; — postavím to pro sebe. — Anebo koupím si pěkný dům.

Sedl jsem si na sofa, řka: Jsem unaven!

“Udělej si pohodlí, — svlékni se,” — pravil bratr.

Já se svlékl a lehl jsem si.

is well, too.—We are contented and we love each other.”

And indeed, on him I didn't see any sickness.—Sister-in-law wrote the truth about him that he was well.

I went with him.—In half an hour we were at his house.—I went in first, he (followed) after me. — His wife also was glad to see me; — she also expected me.

I brought to her different things; — something for her, something for her baby.—I spoke with her long about different things,—and I heard from her many news.—It was nearly all news to me.

I thought to myself: They have a nice house,—a comfortable home. —So many rooms!—I shall build me such a house;—a small bedroom for myself, and two large bedrooms for the family. — I shall build myself also next to it an office.

Let it cost something; — I shall build it for myself.—Or, I shall buy me a nice house.

I sat down on the sofa, saying: I am tired!

“Make thyself comfortable,—undress (thyself),” — said my brother.

I undressed and lay (myself) down.

Note 1. The personal pronouns *já, ty, on (ona, ono)*, show the following variation :

Já,	yá,	I;	ty,	te,	thou;
mě,	myě,	me;	tě tebe,	tě, těbě,	thee;
mi, mně,	me, mñe,	to me;	ti, tobě,	ti, tōbyě,	to thee;
se mnou,	sě mnoŭ,	with me;	s tebou,	stěboŭ,	with thee;
on, ono,	ōn, ōnō,	he, it;			
ho,	hō,	him it;	ona,	ōnā,	she;
jeho,	yěhō,	his, its;	ji, jí,	ye, yee,	her, to her;
mu, jemu, němu,	mŭ, yěmŭ, ñěmŭ,		její,	yěyee,	her, hers;
		to him, to it;			
		in him, in it;			
v něm,	vñēm,	in him, in it;	v ní,	vñee,	in her;
s nim,	sñīm,	with him, with it;	s ní,	sñee,	with her.

Note 2. Adjectives sometimes take an indefinite form:

on je zdrav, ōn yě zdrav, he is well (or healthy);

ona je zdráva, ōnā yě zdrávā, she is well;

ono je zdrávo, ōnō yě zdrávō, it is well;

but when placed before a noun, the adjective must always have its definite form: **zdravý muž,** zdrávěe moož, a healthy man; **zdravá žena,** zdrávā ženā, a healthy woman; **zdravé dítě,** zdrávě d'eeťe, a healthy child.

The followi g indefinite adjectives are of common occurence:

nemocen,	nēmotsen,	instead of	nemocný,	nēmotsnee,	sick;
mrtev,	m ^e rtev,	“ “	mrtvý,	m ^e rtvee,	dead;
stár,	stár,	“ “	starý,	stāree,	old;
mocen,	mōtsen.	“ “	mocný,	motsnee,	capable;
znám,	znám,	“ “	známý,	znāmee,	known;
vesel,	vě-sell,	“ “	veselý,	vesslee,	cheerful;
práv,	práv,	“ “	pravý,	prāvee,	just;
bos,	bōs,	“ “	bosý,	bosee,	barefoot,

Adjectives ending in **vý** and **ný** frequently take the indefinite form in the nominative case, changing their termination into **v** and **en** (va, na in the feminine, vo, no in the neutre gender).

Note 3. As observed in Note 2. Lesson XIII, the past tense of regular Bohemian verbs is formed from the infinitive by an **l** in place of the usual termination **ti** :

jeti,	<i>yeťi</i> or <i>yet,</i>	to ride;	jel,	<i>yell,</i>	rode;
čekati,	<i>chekăt,</i>	to wait;	čekal,	<i>chekăl,</i>	waited;
mluviti,	<i>mlůvit,</i>	to speak;	mluvil,	<i>mlůvil,</i>	spoke;

But some verbs ending in **outi** show a slight deviation from this rule, changing **outi** into **ul**, and having besides a short form of the past tense, in which the letter **l** is substituted for the whole termination **nouti**, being attached immediately to the stem of the verb :

lehnouti,	<i>leh-noůťi</i> (or <i>leh-noůt</i>),	to lie down;	lehnul,	lehl,	<i>leh-nůl,</i> <i>lě-hl,</i>	lay down;	
sednouti,	<i>sednoůt,</i>	to sit down,	sednul,	sedl,	<i>sednůl,</i>	<i>sedl,</i>	sat down;
svléknouti,	<i>svlék-noůt,</i>	to undress;	svléknul,	svlékl,	<i>svléknůl,</i>	<i>svlékl,</i>	undressed.

The verb **svléknouti** has also an irregular form of the infinitive : **svléci,** *svlét-si.* In common conversation we hear **sliknout,** **slíkl,** **slečený,** *sleeknoůt,* (to undress), *sleekl,* *slěchěnee* (undressed, — as past participle and adjective).

LESSON XXIV.

At' jde,	<i>ăt' dě,</i>	let him (her, it)	to je škoda,	<i>tě yě shko-lă,</i>	that is a
		come, or go;			pity;
zůstanem,	<i>zoostănem,</i>	we shall stay;	pohostění, n.	<i>pohōstěēnee,</i>	hospita-
zůstaň,	<i>zoostăň,</i>	stay (thou);			licity;
ukáž,	<i>ůkăsh,</i>	show (thou), let see;	návštěva, f.	<i>náfshťeva,</i>	visit;
přijeti,	<i>prshi-yet,</i>	to come (by rail-	často,	<i>chăstě,</i>	often;
		way, etc);	bud' nebo,	<i>bůď...nebě,</i>	either..or;
přijedem,	<i>prshi-yědem,</i>	we shall	nemám co,	<i>nemám tsě,</i>	I have no-
		come (by some conveyance);			thing (to....);

líbí se mi, <i>leebee sě me,</i> I like it (him, her); it pleases me;	přijedou, <i>prshi-yědou,</i> they will come;
bude se jim líbit, <i>bŭdě sě yim leebit,</i> they will like it; it will please them;	povídal jsem, <i>poveedāl sem,</i> I said,
bude jim milé, <i>bŭdě yim mīlé,</i> it will please them;	slíbiti, <i>sleebit,</i> t o promise;
doufám, <i>doŭfám,</i> I hope;	tajiti, <i>tăyit,</i> to hide;
v Chicago*), <i>fchicago,</i> in Chicago;	ukrývati, <i>ŭkreevăt,</i> to cover up: to hide, to conceal;
	nemůžem, <i>nemoožem,</i> we can not;

EXERCISES.

My zůstanem v Chicago, — pravil bratr; — pro nás je to dobré místo; — ukaž nám lepší! — Ať rodina jde sem, — a zůstaň zde s námi.

Já pravil : Vy máte zde pěkný domov; — líbí se mi u vás; — myslím že často přijedem k vám, —

We shall stay in Chicago, — said I (my) brother: — for us it is a good place; — show (to) us a better one! — Let (your) family come here. — and stay here with us.

I said: You have here a nice house; — I like it here (i. e. at your house, with you,—u vás);—I think that we

*) If we insist upon declining **Chicago** like a Bohemian noun of the neutre gender (ending in o), we should say in the locative case; **v Chicagu,** *fchicagŭ*. However, this is rather an exception among the Bohemians in America, names of places of foreign origin being usually left unchanged, the same as in English. This may not exactly satisfy unyielding grammarians but it is a rule dictated by common sense, the inflection of such proper names being not only useless, but in many cases perfectly absurd, and often impossible. Hence we say: **do Milwaukee,** **v Milwaukee,** **za Milwaukee** (to Milwaukee, in M., beyond M.); **do Kewaunee,** **do Spring Valley,** **do Dubuque,** **do Des Moines,** etc. To attempt an inflection of such names, according to the rules of some declension of Bohemian nouns, would be an intolerable absurdity. The name of **Chicago**, indeed, yields easily to the Bohemian declension, and hence it is now and then declined, the same is true of some other names. There are also a few names of places well known throughout the world, which are always declined in Bohemian, presenting no difficulty to such a process; such are for instance: **New York,** — **v New Yorku,** **do New Yorku,** **za New Yorkem** (in New York, to N. Y., beyond N. Y.); **Boston,** — **v Bostonu,** **do Bostonu,** **za Bostonem**; **Washington,** **do Washingtonu**; and some others. — These names are masculine by force of their termination.

buď já, nebo jeden z nás. — Ale zůstatí s vámi nemůžem. — Náš domov je na venku.

Oni oba pravili: To je škoda!

Tázal jsem se jich, kdy přijedou k nám na návštěvu;—povídal jsem, že dáme jim také hezkou světnici; — že se jim bude líbit u nás, — jako se mně líbí u nich.

Slíbili přijeti na návštěvu. — Doufám že pohostění od nás bude milé jim, jako je milé mně od nich.

Ten den mluvil jsem s nimi dlouho; — nemám co tajiti před nimi; — nemám co ukrývati. — Tak mluvili jsme, až nebylo už co mluvití.

shall often come to you, — either I, or one of us. — But to stay with you we can not. — Our home is in the country.

They both said: That is a pity!

I asked them, when they would come to us on a visit: — I said, that we should give (to) them also a nice room;—that they will like it at our place (*u nás*, — as I like it at their house (*u nich*)).

They promised to come on a visit. — I hope that hospitality from us will be pleasing to them, as it is pleasing to me from them.

That day I spoke with them a long time; — I have nothing to hide from them;—I have nothing to conceal.— So we spoke, until there was no thing further to speak about.

Note. The personal pronouns *my, vy, oni* (*ony* f., *ona*, n.) show the following variation, which has already become somewhat familiar to the student from the preceding lessons :

<i>my,</i>	<i>me,</i>	<i>we;</i>	<i>vy,</i>	<i>ve,</i>	<i>you;</i>
<i>nás,</i>	<i>nás,</i>	<i>us;</i>	<i>vás,</i>	<i>vás,</i>	<i>you;</i>
<i>nám,</i>	<i>nám,</i>	<i>to us;</i>	<i>vám,</i>	<i>vám,</i>	<i>to you;</i>
<i>s námi,</i>	<i>snámi,</i>	<i>with us;</i>	<i>s vámi,</i>	<i>svámi,</i>	<i>with you;</i>

oni, (ony, ona,) ōňi, (ōne, ōňá), they;

jich, yikh, of them, them;

jim, yim, to them;

je, yě, them:

v nich, vñikh, in them, (o nich, about them; od nich, from them; etc.)

s nimi, sñime, with them; (za nimi, behind or after them, etc.)

LESSON XXV.

Státi,	<i>státŭ (stát),</i> to stand; to cost;	tisíc, m.	<i>tiseets,</i>	thousand;
stojí,	<i>stoyee,</i> stands; costs;	stát, m.	<i>stát,</i>	state;
stál,	<i>stál,</i> stood; cost;	úcta, f.	<i>ootstǎ,</i>	respect;
mluví,	<i>mlŭvee,</i> speaks;	rozprávka, f.	<i>roz-práfka</i>	} talk, conversation, discourse;
půjčil,	<i>pŭychil,</i> (colloquially : <i>pŭchil,</i> lent, loaned,	hovor, m.	<i>hŏvor,</i>	
snáší se,	<i>snáshee sě,</i> agrees;	zoubek, m.	<i>zoŭbek,</i>	little tooth;
smál se,	<i>smál sě,</i> he laughed;	něco,	<i>ñetsŏ,</i>	some;
podívej se,	<i>pod'eerey sě,</i> look (thou):	než,	<i>nesh,</i>	than;
podívejte se,	<i>pod'eereyť sě,</i> look (you);	rozen, a, o	<i>rŏzen</i>	} born
sejde se,	<i>seydě sě,</i> (he, she, it) will meet;	narozen, a, o	<i>nārŏzen</i>	
		právě jako,	<i>právyě yǎkŏ,</i>	same as;
		nebyla u nás,	<i>nebillǎ ůnáss,</i>	she was not at our house; she has not been to see us.

EXERCISES.

Můj bratr je posud mladý; — je mladší než já. — Já jsem o dvě leta starší než on.

Dům mého bratra stojí teprv rok; — stál pět tisíc*) dollarů; — sou sed půjčil něco peněz mému bratru.

On má rád mého bratra; — on mluví o mém bratru s úctou. — S mým bratrem každý se snáší dobře.

My brother is still young; — he is younger than I. — I am (by) two years older than he.

The house of my brother stands only a year; — it cost five thousand dollars:—the neighbor loaned some money to my brother.

He likes my brother: — he speaks of my brother with respect.— With my brother everybody agrees well

*) Jeden tisíc, yěden tiseets, one thousand; dva, tři, čtyry tisíce, dvě, trshi, shtiri tiseetsě, two, three, four thousand; pět tisíc, pyět tiseets, five thousand; šest tisíc, shěst tiseets, six thousand; and so forth,

Moje švagrová je ze státu Indiana*), — rozena v Terre Haute; — má žena je z Ohio.

Mojí švagrové**) líbí se v Chicago tuze; — mé ženě líbí se více na venku.

Rozprávka neb hovor s mojí švagrovou jest milý, — velmi milý, — právě jako s mojí ženou. — Nevím kdy sejde se s mou ženou zas; — nebyla u nás dávno.

Podívejte se na moje dítě, — má už zoubek! — pravila švagrová a smála se. — Hošík také smál se na mě. — To je mé dobré dítě! pravila matka.

My sister-in-law is from the state of Indiana, — born in Terre Haute; my wife is from Ohio.

My sister-in law likes it in Chicago very much: — my wife likes it more in the country.

A conversation or discourse with my sister-in-law is pleasant, — very pleasant,—the same as with my wife. —I don't know when she will meet (with) my wife again;— she has not been to see us a long time

Look at my baby, — he has already a tooth! — said my sister-in-law and laughed.—The little boy also smiled at me.—That is my good baby! said (his) mother.

Note 1. The so-called possessive pronoun *můj*, *můj* (my, mine), takes in the feminine gender the form *moje*, *má*, and in the neutre gender *moje*, *mé*. Hence we say: *můj bratr*, my brother; *moje sestra*, or *má sestra*, my sister; *moje dítě* or *mé dítě*, my child — The variation of this pronoun is shown in the following table:

<i>můj</i> , m.	<i>můj</i> ,	<i>moje</i> , <i>má</i> , f.	<i>moyě</i> , <i>má</i> ;	my, mine;
<i>mého</i> ,	<i>méhě</i> ;	<i>mojí</i> , <i>mé</i> ,	<i>moyee</i> , <i>mé</i> ;	of my;
<i>mému</i> ,	<i>mémě</i> ;	<i>mojí</i> , <i>mé</i> ,	“ “ ;	to my;
<i>v mém</i> ,	<i>vmém</i> ;	<i>v mojí</i> , <i>v mé</i> ,	<i>v “ v “</i> ;	in my;
<i>s mým</i> ,	<i>smeem</i> ;	<i>s mojí</i> , <i>s mou</i> ,	<i>smoyee</i> , <i>s moyě</i> ,	with my;

*) Or **Indiány**. See foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

) **Mojí švagrové, *mé ženě*, is the dative case, responding to the question *komu?* (to whom?). *Komu se líbí?* to whom is it pleasing? (whom does it please?) — *Líbí se mé švagrové*; — *líbí se mé ženě*; — it pleases (to) my sister-in-law; it pleases (to) my wife.

The neutre gender **moje, mé**, shows in the other cases the same variation as the masculine **můj**, excepting the accusative (or objective) and the vocative case, which are like the nominative: **to je mé dítě**, this is my child; **vidím mé dítě**, I see my child; **ó mé dítě!** oh my child!

Note 2. The possessive pronoun **tvůj**, m., *twŭy* (**tvoje** or **tvá**, f., *twŏyě, twá*; **tvoje** or **tvé**, n., *twé.*, thy, thine, — agrees in its declension perfectly with **můj** (**moje, má, mé**).

The same is true of the possessive pronoun **svůj**, (**svoje, svá**, f.; **svoje, své**, n.), *swŭy*, (*swŏyě, swá, swé*), which means "one's own", but frequently stands for **můj, tvůj, jeho, její** (my, thy, his, her), **náš, váš, jich** (our, your, their).

Moji lidé,	<i>moye lidé,</i>	my folks;	radši jsem,	<i>ráchi sem,</i>	I like better
půda, f.	<i>pooda,</i>	ground, soil;			to be;
krov, m.	<i>krof,</i>	roof;	nejradši jsem,	<i>nejráchi sem,</i>	I like
příbuzný, á	<i>prshee-bŭznee,</i>	relative,			best to be;
		kinsman, relation;	nerad jsem,	<i>nerád sem,</i>	I do not
vlastní,	<i>vlast-ñee,</i>	own;			like to be;
šťasten,	<i>shťásten,</i>	happy:	sejdu se,	<i>seydŭ sě,</i>	I meet;
nazpět,	<i>náspyět,</i>	back;	kolem sebe,	<i>kolem sěbě,</i>	around me
spěchám,	<i>spyě-khám,</i>	I hasten, I			(him, her, us, etc.)
		hurry;			

EXERCISES.

Mí přátelé*) v Chicagu všichni rádi mě viděli; — škoda že moji lidé nebyli se mnou.

Nerad jsem pryč od mých lidí; — pokaždé स्पेचám nazpět k mým lidem.

Rád vidím své přátele; — rád se sejdu se svými příbuznými — ale

My friends in Chicago all liked (were glad) to see me; — it is a pity that my folks were not with me.

I do not like to be away from my folks; — every time I hasten back to my folks.

I like to see my friends; — I like to meet (with) my relatives; — but I like

*) See foot-note in Lesson XXII.

radši jsem doma. — Opravdu, nejradši jsem doma s mými lidmi.

Nejradši vidím kolem sebe své lidi. — Jsem šťasten se svými lidmi ve svém vlastním domově, — na své vlastní půdě, — pod svým vlastním krovem.

better to be at home. — Truly, I like best to be at home with my folks.

I like best to see around me my folks. — I am happy with my folks in my own home, — on my own ground, -- under my own roof.

Note 2. The plural of *můj* m. *moje* or *má* f., and *moje* or *mé* n., is as follows : *moji*, *mí*, *moye*, *mee*, m

moje, *mé*, *moyě*, *mé*, f.

moje, *má*, *moyě*, *má*, n.

In common discourse *moje*, *mé* is used in the neutre as well as in the feminine gender. In English, we invariably employ *my* and *mine*.

In the plural number the following variation takes place :

moji, *mí*; *moje mé*. *moyi*, *mee*; *moyě*, *mé*; — *my*, *mine*;

mých, *meekh*, of *my* (*od mých*, from *my*; *v mých*, in *my*; etc.), of *mine*; *mým*, *meem*, to *my*, to *mine*;

s *mými*, *smeeme*, with *my*, with *mine*; (*za mými*, after or behind *mine*, etc.)

The plural of *tvůj* m., *tvoje*, *tvá* f., *tvoje*, *tvé* n. (*thy*, *thine*) is perfectly analogous: *tvoji*, *tví* m., *twoji*, *twee*; *tvoje*, *tvé* f. & n. *twoyě*, *twé* (*thy*, *thine*); *tvých*, *tweekh*, of *thine*; *tvým*, *tweem*, to *thine*; s *tvými*, *stweemi*, with *thine*.

LESSON XXVI.

Základ, m. *záklād*, foundation;

kolik světnic, *kōlik swyēt-nīts*, how many rooms;

kuchyně, f. *kūkhñe*, kitchen

sklep, m. *sklep*, cellar

zahrada, f. *zāhrādā*, garden

zahrádka, f. *zāhrádka*, small garden

strom, m. *strom*, tree

stromy, pl. *stromy*, } trees

stromoví, n. *stromōvee*, }

patro , n.	<i>pätrö</i> ,	story	ovoce , n.	<i>örotsě</i> ,	fruit
studně , f.	<i>stüdně</i> ,	well	ovocné ,	<i>övotsné</i> ,	fruit-bearing
cisterna , f.	<i>tsisternä</i> ,	cistern	nesou ,	<i>nesou</i> ,	they bear
altán , m.	<i>ältán</i> ,	bower	mrva , f.	<i>m^ervä</i> ,	manure
plot , m.	<i>plot</i> ,	fence	v letě ,	<i>vleťe</i> ,	in summer
docela ,	<i>dotselä</i> ,	quite	v zimě ,	<i>vzimyě</i> ,	in winter
úplně ,	<i>oop^elñe</i> ,	perfectly	z jara ,	<i>zyärä</i> ,	in the spring
dříve , <i>drshee-vě</i> (or <i>drsheev</i>))	} be- prve, <i>p^ervě</i> ,		půda , f.	<i>poodä</i> ,	land
			akr , m.	<i>äk^er</i> ,	acre
je-li pravda?	<i>yelli prävďä</i>	} isn't it že ne? <i>žě ně?</i>	zbytek , m.	<i>zby-tek</i> ,	remainder
			je, jest , <i>yě, yest</i> ,	there is, there are;	
			pouze ,	<i>použě</i> ,	only.

EXERCISES.

Váš dům je nový, je-li pravda?

Ano, náš dům je docela nový.

Základ našeho domu je dobrý.

Ten velký lot patří k vašemu domu, že ne?

Ten lot patří k našemu domu; — je to zbytek akru půdy co jsme měli dříve.

Co je ve vašem domě? kolik světnic máte?

V našem domě je kuchyně, pět světnic a dobrý sklep, — studený v letě, teplý v zimě.

Doufám že jste spokojeni s vaším domem (or se svým domem).

Ano, jsme úplně spokojeni s naším domem.

Váš dům má dvě patra, že ne?

Ne; pouze jedno patro.

Your house is new, isn't it?

Yes, our house is quite new.

The foundation of our house is good.

That large lot belongs to your house, does it not?

That lot belongs to our house; — it is a remainder of the acre of land (what) we had before.

What is in your house? how many rooms have you?

In our house there is a kitchen, five rooms and a good cellar,— cold in summer, warm in winter.

I hope that you are satisfied with your house.

Yes, we are perfectly satisfied with our house.

Your house has two stories, hasn't it?

No; only one story.

Myslím že máte u vašeho domu malou zahradu a za vaším domem studni, též cisternu.

Ano, naše místo je pěkné; — na naší zahradě máme altán; — kolem naší zahrady je vysoký plot. — Je to příjemná zahrádka.

I think that you have by your house a small garden and back of your house a well, also a cistern.

Yes, our place is nice; — in our garden we have a bower; — around our garden there is a high fence. — It is a pleasant little garden.

Naši lidé mají rádi stromoví*). — Naše stromy jsou ovocné. — Z jara dáváme**) mrvu k našim ovocným stromům. — Rád sedám**) s našimi lidmi ve stínu našich stromů.

Our folks like trees. — Our trees are fruit-bearing. — In the spring we put manure to our fruit-trees. — I like to sit with our folks in the shadow of our trees.

Note 1. The possessive pronoun *náš*, (*naše*, f. and n.) shows the following variation:

(*Masculine and neutre gender.*)

<i>náš</i> , m. <i>naše</i> , n	<i>násh</i> , <i>náshě</i> ,	our, (ours),
<i>našeho</i> ,	<i>náshěhō</i> ,	of our; our (in the accus. or objective case);
<i>našemu</i> ,	<i>náshěmŭ</i> ,	to our;
<i>v našem</i> ,	<i>vnáshěm</i> ,	in our, (o <i>našem</i> , about our; etc);

(*Feminine gender.*)

<i>naše</i> ,	<i>náshě</i> ,	our, ours;
<i>naši</i> ,	<i>náshi</i> ,	our (in the accus. or objective case);
<i>naší</i> ,	<i>nášhee</i> ,	of our, to our; (v <i>naší</i> , in our; s <i>naší</i> , with our; etc.)

*) *Stromoví*, *stromōvee*, is a collective noun and means trees (stromy) in general.

**) *Dáti*, *dáťi*, to give; *dávati*, *dáváťi*, to give repeatedly, to use to give; *dáváme*, *dávámě*, we use to give; we are giving. See Lesson XIII, Note 5. — *Seděti*, *seděťi*, to sit; *sedáti*, *sedáťi*, to sit repeatedly, to use to sit; *sedám*, I use to sit.

(Plural of all genders.)

naši, m. naše, f. & n. *nāshi, nāshě*, our, ours;

našich, *nāshikh*, of our; (v našich, in our; etc.)

naším, *nāshim*, to our;

s našimi, *snāshimi*, with our: (za našimi, beyond or back of our; etc.)

Note 2. The pronoun *váš* (*vaše*, f. and n.) is perfectly analogous with *náš* in its declension. (Instrumental case m. & n. gender singular, omitted above: *s naším, s vaším, snāsheem, svāsheem*, with ours, with yours.)

The English words *their* and *theirs* are both expressed by *jich*, — in common discourse nearly always *jejich*; *yikh, yěyikh*. This is in fact the genitive of the personal pronoun *oni* (*ony, ona*), *they*, and naturally remains unchanged. For instance:

Jich dům, jich domy, or jejich dům, jejich domy; yikh dům, dōmi; yěyikh dům, dōmi; their house, their houses.

Ten dům jest jejich, ten dům yest yěyikh, that house is theirs. — Ty domy jsou jejich, ty dōmi soŭ yěyikh, those houses are theirs.

LESSON XXVII.

The student is already somewhat acquainted with the indicative pronouns *ten, ta, to*, this or that; plural: *ti, ty, ta, ťi, ty, tā*, these or those (in common discourse *ty* for all genders). Hence, in a short practical review of their variations he will only meet old acquaintances.

Lidé,	<i>lidé</i> }	people	kuželna,	<i>kůželnā</i> , bowling-alley;
lidi,	<i>lid'i</i> }		zábava,	<i>zábāvā</i> , amusement;
stavěti,	<i>stāvŷet</i> ,	to build	bydlí,	<i>bidlee</i> , lives; they live;
stavení,	<i>stāvěñee</i> ,	building	co bydlí,	<i>tsō bidlee</i> , who lives
zděný dům,	<i>zďenee dům</i> }	brick house		(<i>lit.</i> what lives);
cihelný dům,	<i>tsihelnee dům</i> }		nic nechybí,	<i>ñits nēkhíbee</i> , nothing
střecha,	<i>strshě-khā</i> ,	roof		is wanting;

šindel,	<i>shindell,</i>	shingle	může,	<i>moožě,</i>	can, may;
učitel,	<i>učitell,</i>	teacher	býti za dobré,	<i>beeťi za dobré,</i>	to be
pokojný, á, é,	<i>pőkoynee,</i>	quiet			on good terms;
prázdný, á, é,	<i>práznee,</i>	vacant	na pravo,	<i>ně právě,</i>	to the right;
jistě,	<i>yistě,</i>	surely, certainly;	na levo,	<i>ně ľevě,</i>	to the left.

EXERCISES.

Ten dům je věru pěkný; — je to zděný dům.

Střecha toho domu je ze šindele, není?

Myslím že je. — Nic nechybí tomu domu; — jest příjemno bydleti v tom domě; — s tím domem každý může býti spokojen.

That house is indeed nice; -- it is a brick house.

The roof of that house is of shingle (i. e. covered with shingles), is it not?

I think it is. — Nothing is wanting to that house; -- it is agreeable to live in that house; — with that house everybody can be satisfied.

Ta zahrada má velkou cenu. — V té zahradě je mnoho ovocného stromů.

Tu zahradu mám radši než park. — Máme také kuželnu v té zahradě, pro naši (or pro svou) zábavu.

To místo s tím stavením a s tou zahradou má vysokou cenu.

That garden has a large value. — In that garden there are many fruit-trees.

That garden I like better than a park. — We have also a bowling-alley in that garden, for our amusement.

That place with the building and garden has a high value.

Ti lidé co bydlí vedle nás, jsou pokojní sousedé; — žádný z těch lidí není zlý; — se všemi těmi lidmi jsme za dobré.

Viděl jsem doktora jíti k těm lidem na pravo od nás; — jistě někdo je nemocen.

The people who live next to us, are quiet neighbors; — nobody (not one) of those people is bad; — with all those people we are on good terms.

I saw the doctor go to those people to the right of us; — surely somebody is sick.

Kdo jsou ti lidé na levo? — Na levo od nás bydlí učitel, pan Stanton, se svou (i. e. s jeho) rodinou.

Ty loty za námi jsou prázdné; — ale budou prý stavět na těch lotech.

Kolik těch lotů je? — Myslím že je šest těch lotů.

Who are those people to the left? — To the left of us lives a teacher, Mr. Stanton, with his family.

Those lots back of us are vacant, — but, it is said, they will build on those lots.

How many of those lots are there? — I think that there are six of those lots.

Note 1. The variation of the indicative pronouns employed in the foregoing is shown to be as follows :

ten, m. to, n. <i>těn, tǝ</i> , this, that;	ta, f. <i>tǎ</i> , this, that;
toho, <i>tǝhǝ</i> , of this, of that;	tu, <i>tǔ</i> , this, that (accus. or objec. case);
tomu, <i>tǝmǔ</i> , to this, to that;	té, <i>té</i> , to this, to that; v té, in that; o té, about that, etc.
vtom, <i>ftǝm</i> , in this, in that; (o tom, about that; etc).	s tou, <i>stǝŭ</i> , with this, with that; za tou, behind that; etc.
s tím, <i>sťeem</i> , with this, with that; (za tím, beyond that; etc.	

Plural:

ti, ty, ta,	these, those;
těch, <i>těkh</i> , of those; v těch, <i>ftěkh</i> , in those; etc.	
těm, <i>těm</i> , to those;	
s těmi, <i>sťemi</i> , with those;	
za těmi, behind those; etc.	

These indicative pronouns often occur in a compound form: **tento, tato, toto**, always meaning “this one”; in the plural: **tito, tyto, tato**, “these ones”. Their inflection remains the same, with the suffix **to** attached to the original pronoun in every case: **tohoto**, to this one; **tomuto**, of this one; and so forth.

Note 2. The numeral **jeden** (f. and n. **jedna, jedno**), *yěden, yědnā, yědnō*, one, — agrees perfectly with **ten, (ta, to)** in its inflection:

jeden člověk tam byl, one man was there;

viděl jsem jen jednoho (accus. or objective case) I saw only one;

dal jsem to jednomu z nich (*zñikh*), I gave it to one of them;

v jednom z nich se mejlím*, in one of them I am mistaken;

šel jsem s jedním z nich, I went with one of them.

Jedna žena je zde, one woman is here; — **vidím jednu ženu**, I see one woman; — **mám to od jedné z nich**, I have it from one of them (f.); — **mluvil jsem s jednou**, I spoke with one (f.).

LESSON XXVIII.

Sem,	<i>sēm,</i>	hither, here;	lék, m.	<i>lék,</i>	medicine;
sám,	<i>sám,</i>	alone;	lahv, f.	<i>lāhev,</i>	bottle;
čekáte,	<i>chekátě,</i>	you expect, you	v lahvi,	<i>vlāh-vi,</i>	in the bottle;
		await (or you wait);	dávka, s.	<i>dāfkā,</i>	dose;
nečekám,	<i>něchekám,</i>	I do not ex-	po dávkách,	<i>pō dāfkākh,</i>	in doses;
		pect;	nastuzen,	<i>nāstūzen,</i>	having a cold;
že přijde,	<i>žě prshiy-dě,</i>	that he will	jste nastuzen,	<i>stě nāstūzen,</i>	you have
		(or would) come;			a cold;
na ulici,	<i>nā ŭlitsi,</i>	on the street,	nastuzení, n.	<i>nāstūzeñee,</i>	a cold;
že jste?	<i>žě stě?</i>	you say you are?	kašel, m.	<i>kāshell,</i>	cough;
že s nikým?	<i>žě sñikeem,</i>	(literally:	dáti vinu,	<i>dāti vinū,</i>	to charge to;
		that with nobody?) you			to blame (for);
		say with nobody?	mysliti,	<i>mysliti,</i>	to think;

***) Mejliti se, mýliti se, meylit sě, meelit sě,** to be mistaken; **mejlím se, meyleem sě,** I am mistaken. — **Zmejliti se, zmýliti se, zmeylit sě, zmeelit sě,** to make a mistake; **zmejlil jsem se, zmeylil sem sě,** I made a mistake.

neotevru.	<i>něo-ter-rů,</i>	I shall not	mazati se, <i>mǎzǎti sě,</i> to rub oneself;
		open;	užívat, <i>ǔžeevǎt,</i> to take medicine,
jindy,	<i>yindy,</i>	before; at other	'otherwise: to use);
		times;	mazat se, <i>mǎzǎt sě,</i> to rub one's
tohle,	<i>tǒhlě,</i>	this here:	self.

EXERCISES.

Myslím že někdo jde sem; — kdo je to?

Nevím; — koho čekáte?

Nečekám nikoho; — dnes chci býti sám; nechci viděti nikoho.

Komu poslal jste to pozvání? — Nikomu.

O kom myslil jste včera, že přijde?—O nikom.

S kým mluvil jste dnes ráno na ulici?—S nikým.

Že s nikým? — Vy se mejlíte. — Viděl jsem vás státi s někým na ulici.

Pravda; ale dnes nečekám nikoho. — Je někdo zde; opravdu?

I ne; žádný tu není. -- Nevidím žádného a neotevru žádnému. — Já vím, že dnes nechcete mluvit se žádným.

I think that somebody is coming here; who is it?

I do not know; — whom do you expect?

I do not expect anybody; — to-day I want to be alone; -- I do not want to see anybody.

To whom did you send that invitation? — To nobody.

Of whom did you think yesterday, that he would come? — Of nobody.

With whom did you speak this morning on the street? — With nobody.

You say, with nobody?—You are mistaken.—I saw you standing with somebody on the street.

That is true; but to day I do not expect anybody. — Is somebody here, really?

O no; nobody is here. -- I do not see anybody, and I shall not open to anybody. — I know that to-day you do not want to speak with anybody.

Zde něco máte; — co to je?	Here you have something;—what is it?
To je lék.	That is medicine.
Jste nemocen?	Are you sick?
Mám nastuzení a zlý kašel.	I have a cold and a bad cough.
Že jste nastuzen? — od čeho to je?	You say you have a cold?—what is it from?
Nevím čemu dáti vinu.	I do not know, to what I should charge it.
K čemu je ten lék?	What is that medicine for?
Budu ho užívat po dávkách.	I shall take it in doses.
A co je v tom? — V čem? — V té malé lahvi. — To je liniment.	And what is in that?—In what?—In that small bottle. — That is a liniment.
Co s tím budete dělat? — S čím? S tím linimentem.	What will you do with that? -- With what?—With that liniment.
Tím se budu mazat.	With that I shall rub myself.
Čím jste se jindy mazal? — Ničím.	With what did you rub yourself before?—With nothing.

Note. The student is, by this time, quite familiar with the interrogative pronouns **kdo**, **co**, *gdě*, *tsě*, (who, what). This lesson is designed simply to serve as a review of their variation, already shown in Note 5, Lesson XVIII.

Kdo , co ,	<i>gdě</i> , <i>tsě</i> ,	who, what;
koho , čeho ,	<i>kěhě</i> , <i>chěhě</i> ,	whose, whom; of what; od koho , (čeho), from whom (what);
komu , čemu ,	<i>kěmů</i> , <i>chěmů</i> ,	to whom, to what; k čemu , <i>kchěmů</i> , what for;
v kom , v čem ,	<i>fkom</i> , <i>fchem</i> ,	in whom, in what; o kom , o čem , about whom (what); etc.
kým , čím ,	<i>keem</i> , <i>cheem</i> ,	by whom, by what; s kým , s čím , with whom, with what,

LESSON XXIX.

Číslo, n.	<i>cheeslō,</i>	number;	zdálo se,	<i>zđálō sě,</i>	it seemed;
pověra, f.	<i>povyěřā,</i>	superstition;	stěhovat se,	<i>sťehovāt sě,</i>	to move;
u stolu,	<i>ŭstolŭ,</i>	at (or by) the table;	vystěhovat se,	<i>vy-sťehovāt sě,</i>	to emigrate;
roku,	<i>rōkŭ,</i>	in the year;	přestěhovat se,	<i>prshě-sťehovāt sě,</i>	to remove;
po roce,	<i>pō rotsě,</i>	after a year;			
		in a year;	usadit se,	<i>ŭsādīt sě,</i>	to settle;
všecko,	<i>fshětsko,</i>	everything, all;	odtud	<i>ōtŭd</i>	} from here,
nynější,	<i>nyñeyshee,</i>	present;	odsud,	<i>ōtsŭd</i>	
sousední,	<i>soŭsedñee,</i>	neighboring;	odamtud,	<i>ōtāmtŭd,</i>	from there;
společně,	<i>spolechñe,</i>	jointly,	kolik je,	<i>kōlik yě,</i>	how many
		together;			are; how much is;
přes,	<i>prshēs,</i>	over;	vám je,	<i>vām yě,</i>	you are;
před,	<i>prshěd,</i>	before, ago;	že je,	<i>žě yě,</i>	(that) there is,
teda,	<i>tědā,</i>	therefore;			(that) there were;
o to více,	<i>ō tō veetsě.</i>	so much more;	to prý je,	<i>tō prēe yě,</i>	that is said
pouhý, á, é,	<i>pōŭhee,</i>	pure, mere;			to be.
nešťastný, á, é	<i>něshťāstnee,</i>	unlucky, unfortunate;			

Jedenáct,	<i>yědenátst,</i>	eleven	čtyřicet,	<i>shtiritset,</i>	forty
dvanáct,	<i>dwānátst,</i>	twelve	padesát,	<i>pāděsát,</i>	fifty
třináct,	<i>trshinátst,</i>	thirteen	šedesát,	<i>shěděsát,</i>	sixty
čtrnáct,	<i>sht^ernátst,</i>	fourteen	sedmdesát,	<i>sedŭmděsát,</i>	seventy
patnáct,	<i>pātnátst,</i>	fifteen	osmdesát,	<i>osŭmděsát,</i>	eighty
šestnáct,	<i>shěstnátst.</i>	sixteen	devadesát,	<i>děvāděsát,</i>	ninety
sedmnáct,	<i>sedŭmnátst,</i>	seventeen	sto jeden,	<i>stō yěden,</i>	one hundred
osmnáct,	<i>osŭmnátst,</i>	eighteen			and one

EXERCISES.

Kolik je nás u stolu? — Je nás dvanáct. -- To je dobře; já myslel že je nás třináct a to prý je nešťastné číslo.

I, to je pouhá pověra!

How many are we at the table? — There are twelve of us. — That is right; I thought there were thirteen of us, and that is said to be an unlucky number.

O, that is a mere superstition.

Kolik akrů má vaše farma? — Sto šedesát akrů. — A farma vašeho otce? — Otec má tři čtyřicátky; já mám o čtyřicet akrů více.

Moje farma stála o tisíc dolarů více, nežli farma otcova.

Oba máte dobré farmy; — obě farmy jsou dobré. — To jsou dvě pěkné farmy.

Jaká je asi nynější cena těch dvou farem? — Asi devět tisíc dolarů.

Nám dvoum*) také patří osmdesátka lesa v sousedním townshipu.

Vám oboum*)? — Ano, nám dvoum*) společně.

Kdy jste se tu usadili?

Otec usadil se tu před čtyřmi lety; — já též; strýc před dvouma*) nebo třemi lety.

How many acres has your farm? — One hundred and sixty acres. — And the farm of your father? — Father has three forties; I have forty acres more.

My farm cost one thousand dollars more than my father's farm.

Both of you have good farms; -- both farms are good. — Those are two nice farms.

What is about the present price of those two farms? — About nine thousand dollars.

To us two also belongs an eighty of forest in the neighboring township.

To both of you? — Yes, to us two jointly.

When did you settle here?

Father settled here four years ago; — I also; uncle two or three years ago.

*) In ordinary discourse always : *dvoum, oboum, dwoům, oboům*, to the two, to both; *před dvouma, před obouma, prshěd dwoůmě, prshěd oboůmě*, before two, before both. — The precise grammatical form is: *dvěma, oběma, dwyěmě, obyěmě*; *před dvěma, před oběma*.

Nám třem zdálo se, že musíme bydleti pohromadě.

My vystěhovali se z Evropy²⁾ do Ameriky²⁾, — usadili se v Ohio, — po roce přistěhovali jsme se do státu Illinois, odtud po dvou nebo třech letech do Nebrasky²⁾, a odtud po pěti letech do Kansasu.

Kdy jste narozen? — Roku tisíc osm set padesát dva. — Teda je vám třicet osm let.

Jak starý je váš otec? — Můj otec je přes šedesát; můj strýc je skoro sedmdesát let starý; — je o pět let starší než můj otec.

Já jsem jen o rok starší než má sestra a o tři leta starší než můj bratr.

To us three it seemed that we must live together.

We emigrated from Europe to America, — settled in Ohio, — after a year we removed to the state of Illinois, from there after two or three years to Nebraska, and from there after five years to Kansas.

When were you (“are you”) born? — In the year one thousand eight hundred fifty two. — Then you are thirty eight years.

How old is your father? — My father is over sixty; — my uncle is nearly seventy years old; — he is five years older than my father.

I am only one year older than my sister and three years older than my brother.

Note 1. We have seen that the numeral *jeden* is declined (Note 2, Lesson XXVII). The same is true of the numerals *dva*, *tři*, *čtyry* and *oba*. The feminine and neutre gender of *dva* and *oba* is *dvě*, *obě*; but the inflected cases are the same in all three genders. *Čtyry* is used in the feminine and neutre gender, and in connection with *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender: *čtyry ženy*, *čtyry děti*, *čtyry domy* (four women, four children, four houses); whereas the masculine inanimate use *čtyři*; for instance: *čtyři muži*, *čtyři hoši* (four men, four boys). Colloquially, however, *čtyry* is used without any discrimination.

²⁾ *Evropa*, *Amerika*, *evropě*, *amerikě*; *z Evropy do Ameriky*, *z evropy do ameriky*, from Europe to America. *Nebraska*, *do Nebrasky*, to Nebraska. *Kansas*, *do Kansasu*, to Kansas. — *Evropa*, *Amerika*, *Nebraska*, are feminine, *Kansas* is masculine, by reason of their termination. See also foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

The variation of these numerals is set forth in the following exposé.

dva, oba m., dvě, obě, (f. & n.) *dwā, obā, dwyě, obyě*, two, both;

dvou, obou, *dwoŭ, oboŭ*, of two, of both;

dvěma, oběma, (colloq. dvoum, oboum), dwýěmā, obyěmā, (dwoŭm, oboŭm),
to two, to both; **se dvěma, s oběma, (se dvouma,**
s obouma) with two, with both; etc.

tři, čtyři (čtyry), *trshi, stírshi (shŭiri)*, three, four;

tří, třech; čtyr, čtyrech; *trshee, trshekh, shtir, shtirekh*; of three, of
four; **ve třech, ve čtyrech,** in three, in four; etc.

třem, čtyrem, *trshem, shtirem*, to three, to four;

se třemi, se čtyrmi, sě trshěmi, sě shtirmi (colloq. **se třema, se čtyrma,**
with three, with four.

Note 2. The adverbial numerals *once, twice, three times, four times*, etc., are formed in Bohemian by adding the suffix **krát** to the cardinal number: **jedenkrát, dvakrát, třikrát, čtyrykrát**, etc.

In place of **jedenkrát, yědenkrát**, (once), the shorter form **jednou, yědnoŭ**, is generally employed:

Kolikrát jste tam byl? how many times have you been there? —
Jen jednou; only once.

Kolikrát se to stalo? how many times has it happened? - **Myslím že dvakrát;** I think (that) twice.

Note 3. The ordinal numbers are as follows:

první,	<i>p^ervñee,</i>	first	šestý,	<i>shěstee,</i>	sixth
druhý,	<i>drŭhee,</i>	second	sedmý;	<i>sedmee,</i>	seventh
třetí,	<i>trshětee,</i>	third	osmý,	<i>osmee,</i>	eighth
čtvrtý,	<i>shtv^ertee,</i>	fourth	devátý,	<i>děvátée,</i>	ninth
pátý,	<i>pátée,</i>	fifth	desátý,	<i>dessátée,</i>	tenth

From eleven to nineteen they are formed by appending *ý* to the cardinal number (corresponding with the English *th*): **jedenáctý**, *yědenátstee*, eleventh; etc.

Dvacet, **třicet**, **čtyřcet** have **dvacátý**, **třicátý**, **čtyřcátý**, *divátsátý*, *trshitsátee*, *shtiritsátee* (twentieth, thirtieth, fortieth). The rest of the tens are regular: **padesátý**, *păďěsátee*, fiftieth, etc. — **Stý**, *stee*, one hundredth; **tisící**, *tiseetsee*, one thousandth.

Dvacátý první, twenty first; **dvacátý druhý**, twenty second; etc. Both tens and units take the ordinal form.

There is also a distinction of gender, the feminine terminating in *á* and the neutre in *é* (in place of the masculine *ý*), corresponding exactly with the adjectives: **dobrý**, *á*, *é* (see Note 2, Lesson VI).

Hence we say: **druhý muž**, **druhá žena**, **druhé dítě**, the second man, the second woman, the second child;

The plural form **druzí**, **druhé**, *drůžee*, *drůhé*, means "the others".

První, **třetí**, have the same termination in every gender, like adjectives ending in *í*. (See Note 1, Lesson XXI.

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination: **prvního muže**, of the first man; **druhého dne**, of the second day (or: on the next day); **druhé ženy**, of the second woman (or wife); **druhého dítěte**, of the second child; **druhému**, to the second; **v druhém**, in the second; **s druhým**, with the second.

Note 4. The adverbs formed from cardinal numbers by means of the suffix **fold**, denoting multiplication, are in Bohemian called special numerals and formed as follows:

dvojí ,	<i>dwoyee</i> ,	twofold	paterý ,	<i>pătěree</i> ,	fivefold
trojí ,	<i>troyee</i> ,	threefold	šesterý ,	<i>shěstěree</i> ,	sixfold
čtverý ,	<i>shtwěree</i> ,	fourfold	sedmerý ,	<i>sedměree</i> ,	sevenfold;

and so forth, always appending **erý** to the cardinal number (in the feminine gender **erá**, in the neutre **eré**).

From these there is derived a distinct class of multiplicative numerals by changing *erý* into *ero* and appending *násobný* (which in English also means *fold*), only the first three forming an exception:

dvojnásobný,	<i>dwoy-násobnee,</i>	twofold (double);
trojnásobný,	<i>troy-násobnee,</i>	threefold (treble);
čtver násobný,	<i>shwer-násobnee,</i>	fourfold (quadruple);
pateronásobný,	<i>päterö-násobnee,</i>	fivefold (quintuple): etc.

LESSON XXX.

Všecek,	<i>fshětssek, m.</i>	} all, whole)	silný,	<i>sílnee,</i>	strong
všecka,	<i>fshětská, f.</i>		silně,	<i>sílně,</i>	strongly
všecko, vše,	<i>fshětsko. fshě, n.</i>		silněji,	<i>sílněyi,</i>	more strongly
prodej,	<i>m. proděy,</i>	sale	nejsilněji,	<i>neysílněyi,</i>	most strongly
výprodej,	<i>m. veeproděy,</i>	selling out;	pěkně,	<i>pyěkñe,</i>	nicely
zásoba,	<i>f; zásobā,</i>	stock	hluboký,	<i>hlūbokee,</i>	deep
látka,	<i>f. látkā,</i>	stuff	hluboko,	<i>hlūbōkō</i>	} deeply
látka na šaty,	<i>látkā nā shāte,</i>	dress-goods;	hluboce,	<i>hlūbotsě</i>	
známka,	<i>f. známkā,</i>	label	velice,	<i>vělitsě,</i>	greatly
kupec,	<i>m. kŭpets,</i>	buyer, purchaser,	hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	nice, pretty, fine;
(kupci,	<i>pl. kŭptsi)</i>		hezky,	<i>hesske,</i>	nicely, prettily, finely
odkupník,	<i>m. odkŭpñeek,</i>	customer	český,	<i>chesskee,</i>	Bohemian
věc,	<i>f. vyěts,</i>	thing, article;	česky,	<i>(adv.), chesske,</i>	"
výdělek,	<i>m. veedělek,</i>	profit	po česku,	<i>pō chesskŭ,</i>	in Bohemian
vůle,	<i>f. voolě,</i>	will	anglicky,	<i>(adv.), ānglitske,</i>	English
základ,	<i>m. zákłād,</i>	foundation	francouzsky,	<i>frāntsoŭske,</i>	French
základní,	<i>zákłādñee,</i>	fundamental	španělsky,	<i>shpāñelski,</i>	Spanish
kámen,	<i>m. kámen,</i>	stone	německy,	<i>ñemetske,</i>	German
zármutek,	<i>m. zārmutek,</i>	sorrow	pozdě,	<i>pozďe,</i>	late
			později,	<i>pozďeyi,</i>	later

psáti,	<i>psáti, psát,</i>	to write	dal jsem,	<i>ādl sēm,</i>	I gave, I put;
učiti se,	<i>učit sě,</i>	to learn	ručím (za),	<i>rūcheem</i>	I warrant;
vyprodán, a, o,	<i>veprodán, ā, ō,</i>	sold out	dojat,	<i>dojāt,</i>	moved
kladli jsme,	<i>klādli smě,</i>	we were laying:	trápilo*),	<i>trápilō,</i>	it grieved
položili jsme,	<i>pōložili smě,</i>	we laid;	zbylo*),	<i>zbylō,</i>	remained, was left
			zemřel,	<i>zembršel,</i>	died
			vál,	<i>vāl,</i>	blew

EXERCISES.

Měl jsem výprodej. — Můj krám je všecek vyprodán; — všechna zásoba je vyprodána; — prodal jsem všechno zboží lacino. — Vyprodal jsem všechno za hotové.

Ze všeho zboží zbylo jen něco látky na šaty.

Ke všemu zboží dal jsem ceny; — známky byly na všem. — Jsem teď hotov se vším.

Všichni kupci, doufám, budou spokojeni; — všechny věci byly dobré; — na všech věcech měl jsem jen malý výdělek.

Všem svým odkupníkům ručím za zboží; — chei míti se všemi dobrou vůli.

I had a selling out. — My store is all sold out; — the whole stock is sold out; — I sold all goods cheaply. — I sold out every thing for cash.

Of all the goods there only remained some dress goods.

To all the goods I put (i. e. attached) prices; — labels were on every thing. — I have now done with everything.

All the buyers, I hope, will be satisfied; — all articles were good; — on all articles I had only a small profit.

To all my customers I warrant my goods; — I want to have with all a good will.

*) Trápiti, *trápit* (trápit), to grieve, to trouble, to torment: trápil, a, o, (he, she, it) grieved, troubled, etc.

Zbýti, *zbeet* (zbeet), to remain, to be left; zbyl, a, o, (he, she, it) remained, was left; zbylo, there remained. — See Note 2, Lesson IX.

Dnes je hezký den. — Ano, dnes je hezký;— slunce svítí hezky.

Doufám že zítra bude také pěkný den a že slunce bude pěkně svítit.

Včera byl silný vítr. — Ráno vítr váł silně, odpoledne ještě silněji a nejsilněji k večeru.

Váš dům má hluboký základ. — Ano, položili jsme základy hluboko.

Když jsme kladli základní kámen, náš hošík zemřel a byl jsem hluboce dojat.

Byl to veliký zármutek; — trápilo nás to velice.

Kolik let mu bylo?*) — Bylo mu dvanáct let.

Mluvil anglicky i česky, — také psal po anglicku i po česku.

Později chtěl učiti se též francouzsky, španělsky i německy, — aspoň čísti a psáti trochu.

To-day is a fine day.—Yes, 'o-day it is nice;—the sun is shining nicely.

I hope that to-morrow will be also a nice day, and that the sun will shine nicely.

Yesterday there was a strong wind. — In the morning the wind blew strongly, in the afternoon more strongly yet, and most strongly toward evening.

Your house has a deep foundation. —Yes, we laid the foundations deep.

When we were laying the foundation stone, our little boy died, and I was deeply moved.

It was a great sorrow;— it grieved us greatly.

How old was he?—He was twelve years

He spoke English and Bohemian. —He also wrote in English and in Bohemian.

Later he wanted to learn also French, Spanish and German, — at least to read and write a little.

Note 1. Grammarians call **všecek** (all) an indefinite numeral; it also takes the form of **všechn** or **všecken** (feminine, **všechna**, **všeckna**, neutre, **všechno**, **všeckno**). The plural is **všickni**, **všecky**, **všecka**, *všitskñi*, *vshětski*, *vshětská*. In common discourse **všecky** or **všeci** is used in the plural in all three genders.

*) **Kolik let mu bylo?** (*literally*: how many years was it to him?) the same as: **jak byl stár?** how old was he? **Bylo mu**, the same as **byl**, he was.

This numeral is also declined and presents the following variation of form :

Singular :

všeho, m. & n *fshěhǝ*, (**vší**, f. *fshee*) of all (of the whole, of everything);
všemu, *fshěmǔ*; to all; **ve všem**, *vě fshěm*, in all; **se vším**, *sě fsheem*,
 with all.

Plural :

všech, *fshěkh*, of all; **ve všech**, *vě fshěkh*, in all; **všem**, *fshěm*, to all;
 se **všemi**, *sě fshěmi* with all.

Note 2. Adverbs (qualifying verbs) are often derived from adjectives, qualifying nouns. This rule obtains in Bohemian as well as in English.

Such adverbs are formed in English by adding *ly* to the adjective : *strong, strongly; nice nicely*. In Bohemian, the terminal *ý* of the adjective is changed into an *ě* :

silný, *silně*; **pěkný**, *pěkně*.

In some cases, however, the final *ý* changes into an *o*, or the final syllable *ký* into *ce*: **hluboký**, *hluboko*, **hluboce**, *deep, deeply*; **veliký**, *velice*, *great, greatly*. In a few cases the formation of adverbs is wholly irregular : **dobrý**, *good*; **dobře**, *well*.

Sometimes the long *ý* simply changes into a short *y* : **hezký**, *hezky*, *nice, nicely*. This is generally the case, when the adjective is derived from the name of a nation : **anglický národ**, *the English nation*; **mluvím anglicky**, *I speak English*;—**český jazyk**, *the Bohemian tongue*; **mluvím česky**, *I speak Bohemian*. In these cases we can also use the form: **po anglicku**, **po česku**.

In common discourse, the distinction between such adjectives and adverbs as **hezký** — *hezky*, **český** — *česky*, etc., is obliterated, their pronunciation being the same.

Note 3. Many adverbs of quality have a comparison, like adjectives, in order to express various degrees of quality. In regular com-

parison, the second degree is formed by adding **ji** to the adverb, and the third degree by prefixing **nej** to the second degree : **silně**, *strongly*; **silněji**, *more strongly*; **nejsilněji**, *most strongly*. Some adverbs have an irregular comparison, which must be learned and remembered. The following are mostly in use :

dobře, *dobrshě*, well; **lépe**, *lépě*, better; **nejlépe**, *neylépě*, best;
líp, *leep*, “ ; **nejlíp**, *neyleep*, “ ;
zle, *zlě*, bad'y; **hůře**, *hoorshě*, worse; **nejhůře**, *neyhoorshě*, worst;
hůř, *hoorsh*, “ ; **nejhůř**, *neyhoorsh*, “ ;
brzo, *b^erzō*, soon; **dříve**, *drsheevě*, sooner; **nejdříve**, *neydrsheevě*, soonest;
dřív, *drsheef*, “ ; **nejdřív**, *neydrsheef*, “ ;
dlouho, *dlouhō*, long; **déle**, *délě*, longer; **nejdéle**, *neydělě*, longest;
dýl, *deel*, “ ; **nejdýl**, *neydeel*, “ ;
blízko, *bleskō*, near; **blíže**, *bleežě*, nearer; **nejblíže**, *neybleežě*, nearest;
blíž, *bleež*, “ ; **nejblíž**, *neybleež*, “ ;
daleko, *dālěko*, far; **dál**, *dál*, farther; **nejdál**, *neydál*, farthest;
vysoko, *vysōko*, high; **výše**, *veeshě*, higher; **nejvýše**, *neyveeshě*, highest;
hluboko, *hlūbōko*, deep, deeply; **hloub**, *hloūb*, deeper; **nejhloub**, *neyhloūb*,
deepest;
snadno, *snādnō*, easily; **snáz**, *snáz*, more easily; **nejsnáz**, *neysnáz*, most
easily;
mnoho, *mnōhō*, much. **víc**, *více*, *veets*, *ceetsě*, more; **nejvíc**, *nejvíce*, *ney-*
veets, *neyveetsě*, most;
málo, *mālō*, little; **méně**, *míň*, *mēñe*, *meeñ*, less; **nejméně**, *nejmíň*, *ney-*
mēñe, *neymeeñ*, least;
draho, *drazo*, *drāhō*, *drážě*, dear, dearly; **dráže**, *drážě*, dearer; **nejdráže**,
neydrážě, dearest.

LESSON XXXI.*)

Nesti (or **nésti**), *to carry, to bear*, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

By means of prefixes numerous other verbs are derived from it (see Note 6, Lesson XIII), denoting a FINITE or finished action, or a solitary act of that nature :

přinaesti,	<i>prshinest'i,</i>	or <i>prshinest,</i>	to bring, to fetch;
přenesti,	<i>prshě-nest,</i>		to carry over, to transplace;
nanesti,	<i>nānest,</i>		to bring a heap; to pile on;
odnesti,	<i>ōdnest,</i>		to carry away; to take away;
donesti,	<i>dōnest,</i>		to carry to a place; to carry to somebody;
podnesti,	<i>pōdnest,</i>		to carry under;
přednesti,	<i>prshed-nest,</i>		to carry before; (hence: to lay before, to submit, to deliver;)
pronesti,	<i>prōnest,</i>		to carry through; prenesti se, to grow heavy, to tire out (said of a burden which is carried);
roznesti,	<i>rōznest,</i>		to carry round; to scatter or spread; to deliver;
unesti,	<i>ūnest,</i>		to carry off, to kidnap; (also: to be able to carry);
vynesti,	<i>vinest,</i>		to carry out;
zanesti,	<i>zānest,</i>		to carry behind, away, i. e. out of sight; (also: to enter in a book or list).

*) We bespeak the student's particular attention for this Lesson, designed as a systematic but easy and popular introduction to a complete mastery of the Bohemian verb, which is the most important and the most complicated part of the language. To a great extent, this introduction will not appear as a review of what has already been learned about the verb in the preceding lessons, and hence will be the more readily mastered by the student. There being only a few hundred verbs used in the ordinary intercourse of any language, their acquisition for practical every-day purposes is, after all, only a matter of a few weeks' application.

As before observed, the meaning of these derivatives becomes in most cases self-evident, when we bear in mind the signification of the prefixes, which constantly recur in this process of formation of new verbs:

do , <i>dŏ</i> , to;	pře , <i>prshě</i> , over;	pod , <i>pŏd</i> , under;
od , <i>ŏd</i> , from, off;	při , <i>prshi</i> , to, by, at;	nad , <i>năd</i> , over, up, above;
na , <i>nă</i> , on;	před , <i>prshed</i> , before;	pro , <i>prŏ</i> , through;
ve , <i>vě</i> , in;	ob , <i>ŏb</i> } round,	roz , <i>rŏz</i> , apart, asunder;
vy , <i>vy</i> , out;	o , <i>o</i> } about;	za , <i>ză</i> , behind, away, into;

The prefix **za** very often denotes a solitary action or sudden manifestation; for example :

pěti, *zpívati*, *pyětŭi*, *speevatŭi*, to sing; **zapěti**, *zazpívati*, *zăpyět*, *zăspeevăt*, to sing a song.

zvoniti, *zvoňit*, to ring; **zazvoniti**, *zăzvoňit*, to give a ring; to pull the bell once.

The prefix **u** denotes: 1. an action separating a part from the whole: **seknouti**, *seknouťi*, to make a cut; **useknouti**, *ŭseknouťi*, to cut off; — 2. a diminutive, momentary, or solitary action: **šklebiti se**, *shklěbitŭi sě*, to frown; — **ušklebiti se**, to make a frown; 3. a progressive destruction or disappearance: **páliti**, *pálitŭi*, to burn; **upáliti**, to burn up, to burn at the stake; — 4. a completion or carrying out of something: **dělati**, *dělătŭi*, to do, to make, to work: **udělati**, to make or finish something; to do a certain act.

These are the main modifications due to the prefix **u**, connected with verbs; there are, besides, two or three minor or incidental ones, which it is not necessary to mention.

The principal parts of a Bohemian verb, from which the entire conjugation may easily be formed by means of the proper endings, are the following:

The infinitive:	nesti , to carry;	the perfect indicative: nesl , carried;
the present indicative:	nesu , I carry;	the imperative: nes , carry (thou).

Nesu,	<i>nessŭ,</i>	I carry,	nesl*) jsem,	<i>nessl sem,</i>	I carried,
neseš,	<i>nessesh,</i>	thou carriest,	nesl jsi,	<i>nessl si,</i>	thou carriedst,
nese,	<i>nessě,</i>	(he, she, it) carries,	nesl,	<i>nessl,</i>	he carried,
neseme,	<i>nessěmě,</i>	we carry,	nesli**) jsme,	<i>nessli smě,</i>	we carried,
nesete,	<i>nessětě,</i>	you carry,	nesli jste,	<i>nessli stě,</i>	you carried,
nesou,	<i>nessou,</i>	they carry;	nesli,	<i>nessli,</i>	they carried:
nes,	<i>ness,</i>	carry (thou),			
ať nese,	<i>áč neseě,</i>	let him (her, it) carry,			
nesme,	<i>nessmě,</i>	let us carry,			
neste,	<i>nesstě,</i>	carry (you),			
ať nesou,	<i>áč nessoŭ,</i>	let them carry.			

Note 1. The future tense of **nesti** is usually not formed by means of the auxiliary **býti** (to be) in connection with the infinitive: **budu nesti**, **budeš nesti**, etc.; but by means of the prefix **po**, connected with the present tense: **ponesu**, *pŏnessŭ*, I shall carry; **poneseš**, *pŏnessesh*, thou wilt carry; and so forth.

The derivatives mentioned above, formed by means of prefixes, have in fact no present, but only a past and a simple future tense; for example:

přinesti, to bring; **přinesl jsem**, I brought; **přinesu**, I shall bring; — **odnesti**, to carry away; **odnesl jsem**, I carried away; **odnesu**, I shall carry away. (See Notes 4 and 7, Lesson XIII.)

*) Feminine **nesla**, *nesslă*; neutre **neslo**; — see Note 2, Lesson IX. — **Já jsem nesl**, **já nesl**, I carried; **ty jsi nesl**, **ty's nesl**, thou carriedst; **vy jste nesli**, you carried. See Lesson X.

As already mentioned in Note 1, Lesson IX, the distinction between the perfect tense, so difficult and puzzling for the student of the English language, does not exist in Bohemian. **Nesl jsem** means both *I carried* and *I have carried*; it also means *I did carry* and *I was carrying*, — when the latter relates to a separate action.

Likewise the present, **nesu**, means not only *I carry*, but also: *I am carrying*, *I do carry*; or, if used interrogatively: **nesu?** *do I carry?*

The same observations apply to all other verbs, there being *only one form* of the present tense, and of the past tense, in Bohemian.

) Feminine **nesly; neutre **nesla**; see Note 2, Lesson IX.

The verbs **lezu**, I crawl; **vezu**, I carry; **jedu**, I ride; **kvetu**, I blossom; **rostu**, I grow, — and some others, usually form their future in the same way as **nesu**, I carry. Hence we do not say **budu lezti**, etc: but we say :

polezu, *polěžŭ*, I shall crawl; **povezu**, *pověžŭ*, I shall carry; **pojedu**, *poyědŭ*, I shall ride; **pokvetu**, *pokvetŭ*, I shall blossom; **porestu**, *porostŭ*, I shall grow.

In the sequel we shall give the principal parts of every verb, from which the student can form the whole conjugation without any difficulty. There being a slight irregularity in the formation of the present tense from the infinitive in some cases, this course will obviate any confusion which might arise therefrom, for a beginner.

Veztí, <i>věztŭi, vezt*</i>), to carry (in a vehicle);	plestí se, <i>p. sě,</i> to be mistaken, confused; etc.**)
vezti se, <i>věztŭi sě,</i> to ride;	mástí, <i>mástŭi,</i> to confuse;
vestí, <i>vestŭi,</i> to lead;	mástí se, <i>mástŭi sě,</i> to be mistaken;
lezti, <i>lěztŭi,</i> to crawl, to climb;	méstí, <i>méstŭi,</i> to sweep;
kvestí, <i>kvestŭi,</i> to blossom;	klástí, <i>klástŭi,</i> to lay;
čístí, <i>cheestŭi,</i> to read;	krástí, <i>krástŭi,</i> to steal;
růstí, <i>roostŭi</i> }	pástí, <i>pástŭi,</i> to herd, to tend,
rostí, <i>rostŭi</i> } to grow;	to pasture.
plestí, <i>plesstŭi,</i> to twist, to knit;	pástí se, <i>p. sě,</i> to graze, to browse;
to confuse, to mix up;	
vezu, <i>věžŭ,</i> I carry; vezl jsem, <i>vězl sem,</i> I carried, or I have carried;	vez, <i>věz,</i> carry (thou)**);

*) See Note 1, Lesson XI.

**) This and many other verbs have a variety of significations, which cannot here be explained. We refer the student to the Dictionary of the Bohemian and English languages, by Charles Jonas, *second edition*.

***) The reflexive form of a verb is conjugated in the same way as the ordinary form, with **se** added: **vezu se**, I ride; **vezl jsem se**, I rode; **povezu se**, I shall ride; **vez se**, ride (thou)!

The student is already well aware that negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**, which stands for the English *do not, does not, did not*: **nevezu**, I do not carry; **nevezl jsem**, I did not carry; **nepovezu**, I shall not carry; **nevez!** do not carry!

vedu, vědŭ, I lead; vedl sem, vědl sĕm, I led; ved', ved', lead;
 lezu, lězŭ, I crawl; lezl jsem, lězl sem, I crawled; lez, lěz, crawl;
 kvete, květě, it blooms; kvetl, květl, it bloomed; kvet', kvěť, bloom;
 čtu, čtŭ, I read; četl jsem, chětl sem, I read; čti, čťi, read;
 rostu, rostŭ, I grow; rostl jsem, rostl sem, I grew; rost', rost', grow;
 pletu, pletŭ, I knit; (pletu se, I get mixed up, etc.); pletl jsem, I knit-
 ted; plet', plet', knit;
 matu, mătŭ, I confuse; matl jsem, mătł sem, I confused; mat', măt', con-
 fuse;
 metu, metŭ, I sweep; metl jsem, metł sem, I swept; met', met', sweep;
 kladu, kládŭ, I lay; kladl jsem, kládl sem, I laid; klad', klád', lay;
 kradu, krádŭ, I steal; kradl jsem, krádl sem, I stole; krad', krád', steal;
 pasu, păsŭ, I herd; pasl jsem, pásł sem, I herded: pas, pás, herd.

Pasák, m.	păsák,	the cowboy,	datum, n.	dătŭm,	the date
		the herdsman;	škola, f.	shkolă,	the school
dobytek, m.	dŏbytek,	the cattle	novela, f.	novellă	} the novel
chodník, m.	khodňeek,	the sidewalk	román, m.	rŏmán	
zloděj, m.	zlod'zy,	the thief	zem, f.	zem	} the floor
červ, m.	cherf,	the worm	podlaha, f.	podlăhă	
jabloň, m.	yăbloň,	the apple-tree	pastva,	păstwă,	the pasture
ptáci, pl.	ptátsi,	the birds	ruka, f.	rŭkă,	the hand
dějepis, m.	d'eyĕpis,	the history	noha, f.	nŏhă,	the foot
cestopis, m.	tsestŏpis,	the book of	mléko, n.	mlékŏ,	the milk
		travels;	zeleniny, f. pl.	zělěňiny,	the vegetables;
stádo, n.	stádŏ,	the herd	zaměstí,	zăměst'i,	to sweep up;
ovce, f. s & pl.	oftsĕ,	the sheep	dočísti,	dŏcheest'i,	to finish reading;
sotva,	sotwă,	hardly, scarcely;	může,	moožĕ,	he (she, it) can
snadno,	snădnŏ,	easily	zábavný, á, é,	zábăvnee,	entertaining.
nikam,	ňikăm,	nowhere			

EXERCISES.

Co neseš? (co to neseš?)

Nesu oběd pro otce*).

Co vezete na trh? — Vezu trochu obilí.

Co veze váš soused? — On veze brambory.

Kam vedete toho chlapce*?)? — Vedu ho do školy. — Ze školy povedu ho zas domu.

Nelez na strom! — Já nelezu. — Nelezl jsem nikam. — Viděl jsem tě lezti.

Co to zde leze? — Červi zde lezou.

Všecko kvete. — Stromy už kvetou. — Loni náš jabloň kvetl krásně;— nevím jak pokvete letos.

Co to čteš? — Já čtu zábavnou knihu; — a co vy čtete? — Dějepis Spojených Států**).

What doest thou carry? (what is it thou carriest?)

I carry dinner for my father.

What do you carry to market? — I carry some grain.

What does your neighbor carry? — He carries potatoes.

Where do you lead (or “take”) that boy? — I lead him to school. — From school I shall lead him home again.

Do not climb (on) the tree! — I do not (climb). — I did not climb anywhere. — I have seen thee climb.

What is that crawling here? — Worms are crawling here.

Everything blossoms. — The trees are blooming already. — Last year our appletree blossomed beautifully: — I don't know how it will bloom this year.

What is it thou readest? — I read an entertaining book; — and what do you read? — A history of the United States.

*) The rule stated in Note 2, Lesson XVIII, applies also to nouns ending in *ec* (declined like *muž*), the vowel *e* being dropped in the inflected cases: *otec*, *otets*, the father (or “my father”); *otce*, *otse*, of the father; *pro otce*, for the father; *otcové*, *otcůvé*, the fathers; — *chlapec*, *chlápets*, the boy; *chlapce*, *chlápce*, of the boy (or “the boy”, in the objective case).

** *Spojené Státy*, *spoyěné státy*, the United States: *Spojených Států*, *spoyěneekh států*, of the United States; *ve Spojených Státech*, *vě spoyěneekh státech*, in the United States.

Včera četl jsem román; — večer
jsem ho dočetl; — zítra budu čí-
sti nějaký cestopis.

Když je teplo, všechno roste rychle.
— Ty zeleniny rostou rychle; —
po dešti porostou ještě rychleji.

Já často se pletu v datum. -- Člo-
věk snadno se plete; — já také
často se matu.

Zameť krám. — Zametl jsem ho
už; — chodník zametu hned.

Ptáci nyní kladou vejce.

Zloděj kradе kde může. — Zloději
kradou vše.

Pasák pasе stádo. -- Dobytek se
pase. — Ovce se pasou.

Rád pasu krávy, kde je dobrá
pastva.

Yesterday I read a novel; — in the
evening I finished reading it; —
to-morrow I shall read some book
of travels.

When it is warm, everything grows
fast.—Those vegetables grow fast;
— after a rain they will grow still
faster.

I am often mistaken in the date. —
One is easily mistaken; -- I also
am frequently mistaken.

Sweep the store. — I have swept it
already; — the sidewalk I shall
sweep presently.

The birds now lay eggs.

The thief steals where he can. --
Thieves steal everything.

The cowboy tends the herd. — The
cattle are grazing --The sheep are
browsing.

I like to pasture cows where there
is a good pasture.

Bíti,	<i>beet'i,</i>	to beat, to strike;
píti,	<i>peet'i,</i>	to drink;
líti,	<i>leet'i,</i>	to pour;
síti,	<i>seet'i,</i>	} to sow, to seed;
seti,	<i>set'i,</i>	
mýti,	<i>meet'i,</i>	to wash;

krýti,	<i>kreet'i,</i>	to cover;
tříti,	<i>trsheet'i,</i>	to rub;
příti se,	<i>prsheet'i se,</i>	to dispute;
šíti,	<i>sheet'i,</i>	to sew;
žíti,	<i>žet'i,</i>	to live*).

*) Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XIII, explain that in common dis-
course the final *i* of the infinitive is nearly always dropped. Con-
sequently we hear: *beet*, instead of *beet'i*; *peet*, instead of *peet'i*; and so
forth. *Mýti* is often pronounced *meyt*, *krýti* — *kreyt*. (See Note 3, Les-
son VI.)—There is no difference of pronunciation between *bíti* (to beat),
and *býti* (to be), except when the latter is vulgarly pronounced *beyt*.

biju (or **biji**), *biyŭ*, I beat; **bil jsem**, *bill sem*, I beat (have beaten):
bij, *biy* or *be*, beat (thou);
piju (or **piji**), *piyŭ*, I drink; **pil jsem**, *pill sem*, I drank; **pij**, *piy*
(or *pee*), drink;
iju or **leju**, *liyŭ* or *leyŭ*, I pour; **lil jsem**, *lil sem*, I poured; **lij** or
lej, *liy*, *ley*, pour;
siju or **seju**, *siyŭ*, *seyŭ*, I sow; **sil jsem**, *sil sem*, I sowed; **sej**, *sey*, sow;
myju*), *miyŭ*, I wash; **myl jsem**, *mill sem*, I washed; **myj**, *miy*, wash;
kryju, *kriyŭ*, I cover; **kryl jsem**, *krill sem*, I covered; **kryj**, *kriy*, cover;
tru*), *trŭ*, I rub; **třel jsem**, *trshell sem*, I rubbed; **tři**, *trshi*, rub;
pru se*), *prŭ sě*, I dispute; **přel jsem se**, *prshell sem sě*, I disputed; **při se**,
prshi sě, dispute;
šiju, *she-yŭ*, I sew; **šil jsem**, *shil sem*, I sewed; **šij**, *shiy* (or *she*), sew;
žiju, *žiyŭ*, I live; **žil jsem**, *žil sem*, I lived; **žij**, *žiy*, (or *ži*), live;

Note 2. The paradigm of the present indicative of **bíti** would be: **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, **bijeme**, **bijete**, **bijou** (I beat, thou beatest, he beats, we beat, you beat, they beat). In the written language, the forms **biji** and **bijí** (*biye*, *biyee*) are frequently employed in the first person singular and third person plural, in place of **biju**, **bijou** (*biyŭ*, *biyoŭ*), which are always used in conversation. The same is true of the other verbs of this class.

EXERCISES.

Proč biješ to dítě? — Nebij ho! —

Já ho nebiju.

Hodiny**) bijou deset. — Už bilo
deset.

Why do you beat that child? — Do
not beat him!—I do not beat him.

The clock strikes ten. — It has al-
ready struck ten.

*) Colloquially also **meju**, **kreju**, **třu**, **přu se**, *meyŭ*, *kreyŭ*, *trshŭ*, *prshŭ sě*; **mej**, **krej**, *mey*, *krey*, (do) wash, (do) cover.

) **Hodiny (the clock) is a plural noun; the following verb must therefore be put in the plural: **bijou** or **bijí** (they strike).

Co piješ? — Piju pivo; — co vy pijete? — Pijeme víno; — děti pijou vodu. — Ráno všichni pili jsme mléko.

Lijeme mléko do kávy.

Služka myje zem. — Kryjeme podlahu kobercem.

Lil jsem liniment na ruku a třel jsem nohu.

Seju pšenici; — souseď sil ječmen. — Sejeme časně. — Cojste vy seli? — Nic ještě; — budeme síti oves.

What doest thou drink? — I drink beer;—what do you drink? — We drink wine; — the children drink water. — In the morning we all drank milk.

We pour milk in coffee.

The servant-girl washes the floor. — We cover the floor with a carpet.

I poured the liniment on (my) hand and rubbed (my) foot.

I sow wheat;—(my) neighbour sowed barley. — We sow early. — What have you sowed? — Nothing as yet;— we shall sow oats.

Note 3. All verbs consisting of a simple *root* or *stem*, to which the termination **ti** is directly attached, belong to the first conjugation.

They may be divided in two leading classes, slightly diverging in their inflection, but following the same general principle, as shown in the preceding two groups of examples; namely, 1. those terminating generally in **sti**, and 2. those terminating generally in **íti** :

1. **nesti**, to carry (**nes** in the root or stem); — **nesu**, **neseš**, **nese**, I carry, thou carriest, he carries; **neseme**, **nesete**, **nesou**, we carry, you carry, they carry; — **nesl jsem**, I carried; — **nes**, carry:
2. **píti**, to drink (**pí** is the root or stem); — **piju**, **piješ**, **pije**, I drink, thou drinkest, he drinks; **pijeme**, **pijete**, **pijou**, we drink, you drink, they drink; — **pil jsem**, I drank; — **pij**, drink.

Note 4. A few exceptional verbs of this conjugation, with the grammatical termination of **ci** (but popularly **cti**) in their infinitive, show a slight deviation from the above paradigms. For instance:

peci, *petsi*, to bake; — **peku, pečeš, peče, pečeme, pečete, pekou,** *pěků, pěchesh, pěchě, pěchěmě, pěchětě, pěkoů* (I bake, thou bakest, he bakes, we bake, you bake, they bake; **pekl jsem,** *pěkl sem*, I baked; **peč, pěch,** bake;

teci, *tetsi*, to flow; **teče, tekou, tekl, teč, těchě, těkoů, tekl, těch** (it flows, they flow, it flowed, flow).

But colloquially, the forms **peču, pečou, tečou** (I bake, they bake, they flow) are used in place of **peku, pekou, tekou**.

LESSON XXXII.

Minouti, *minouti*, to pass by; — **minu, minů,** I pass by; (**mineš, mine,** *minesh, mině*, thou passest by, he passes by; **mineme, minete, minou,** *miněmě, minětě, minoů*, we, you, they pass by; — **minul*) jsem, minůl sem**, I passed by or I have passed by; **miň,** *miň*, pass (thou) by.

hynouti, *hynouti*, to perish (or rather: to be perishing); — **hynu, hynů,** I am perishing; **hynul jsem,** I was perishing; **hyň,** *hyň*, perish.

zdvihnouti, *zdvihnouti*, to pick up, to raise; — **zdvihnu, zdvihnuů**),** I shall pick up; I shall raise; **zdvihnul jsem** (also **zdvihl jsem**, like the first conjugation), *zdvihnůl sem (zdvihl sem)*, I picked up, I raised; **zdvihni, zdvihni,** pick up. raise.

kopnouti, *kopnouti*, to kick; — **kopnu**),** I shall kick; **kopnul jsem** (also **kepl jsem**), *kopnůl sem*, I kicked; **kopni, kopni,** kick.

Dálka, f. <i>dálka</i> ,	the distance	osení, n. <i>osěnee</i> ,	growing crops;
planina, f. <i>pláňině</i> ,	the plain	takto, <i>taktě</i> ,	in this way;

*) Feminine **minula, minůlá**; neutre **minulo, minůlě**; — see Note 2, Lesson IX.

) The present tense having a *future* meaning, **zdvihnu, kopnu, is in fact the simple future tense of these verbs. See Note 7, Lesson XIII.

hruška , f. <i>hrůškā</i> ,	the pear	než ,	<i>nesh</i> ,	before;
jablko , n. <i>yāblkō</i> , (colloq. <i>yābkō</i>),	the apple	hleděti ,	<i>hled'et</i> ,	to look;
sucho , n. <i>sūkho</i> ,	drought (as an adverb: dry);	pes , m.	<i>pess</i> , the dog; psa , <i>psā</i> ,	of the dog, the dog (obj. case).

EXERCISES.

Než hodina mine, budu zde, — pravil.

Hodina minula, — dvě hodiny minuly, — pět hodin minulo (i. e. it passed), — den minul, — a nebyl zde.

Až mineme ten les, budeme viděti více.

Jak brzy minuli jste les?

Minuli jsme ho za hodinu; — pak viděli jsme celou planinu.

Ti lidé nás brzy minou*). — **Mineš ' mnoho lidí (lid'ee, gen. case).**

Je sucho; — všecko hyne; — osení hyne; — zeleniny hynou.

Bylo sucho a všecko hynulo.

Takto všecko bude hynouti.

Zdvihni to jablko. — Už jsem ho zdvihnul (or zdvihl). — Zdvihnula (or zdvihla) jsem dvě jablka a hrušku.

Before an hour passes by, I shall be here, — he said.

An hour passed, — two hours passed, — five hours passed, — the day passed by, — and he was not here.

When we pass that forest, we shall see more.

How soon did you pass the forest?

We passed it in an hour; — then we saw the whole plain.

Those people will soon pass us. — Thou wilt pass many people.

It is dry; — everything is perishing; — the crops are perishing; — the vegetables are perishing.

There was a drought, and everything was perishing.

In this way everything will be perishing

Pick up that apple. — I have picked it up already. — I picked up (*fem.*, two apples and a pear.

*) It is self-evident that this present tense of the verb **minouti** also has a *future* meaning, denoting an action which is expected to take place.

Zdvihli jsme se a hleděli do dálky.

— **Zdvihni se!** — **Zdvihněte se!**

— **Zdvihněte ruku** (plural *ruce*, *růtsě*).

Kopni toho psa! — Kopnul jsem ho trochu.

We raised ourselves and looked into the distance — Raise thyself! — Raise yourself!—Raise your hand (your hands).

Kick that dog! — I kicked him a little.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **minouti** is **min**, to which the termination **outi** is attached. All verbs ending in **outi** belong to the second conjugation.

Some of the verbs of this class are derived from adjectives, and their imperative is always formed like that of **zdvihnouti**: **zdvihni**. For example :

bled-ý, *bledēe*, pale; **bled-nouti**, *blednoŭti*, to grow pale; (**blednu**, I grow pale; **blednul jsem**, I grew pale; **bledni**, do grow pale);

bohat-ý, *bohātee*, rich; **bohat-nouti**, *bohātnoŭti*, to grow rich;

chud-ý, *khŭdee*, poor; **chud-nouti**, *khŭdnoŭti*, to grow poor;

mlad-ý, *mlādee*, young; **mládnouti**, *mládnouŭti*, to grow young;

star-ý, *stāree*, old; **stár-nouti**, *stárnouŭti*, to grow old;

slab-ý, *slābee*, weak; **sláb-nouti**, *slábnoŭti*, to grow weak;

měk-ký, *myēkee*, soft; **měk-nouti**, *myěknoŭti*, to grow soft;

tvrd-ý, *tw^erdee*, hard; **tvrd-nouti**, *tvrdnoŭti*, to grow hard.

Viděti, *vid'et'i*, to see;

seděti, *sed'et'i*, to sit;

běžeti, *byēžet'i*, to run, to go hurriedly;

držeti, *d^eržet'i*, to hold;

mlčeti, *m^elchet'i*, to be silent;

hořeti, *horshet'i*, to burn;

pršeti, *p^ershet'i*, to rain:

slyšeti, *slishet'i*, to hear;

služeti, *slŭshet'i*, to fit, to become;

styděti se, *stŭdet'i sě*, to be ashamed;

uměti, *ŭmyet'i*, to know; can;

rozuměti, *rozŭmyet'i*, to understand;

házeti, *házet'i*, to throw (continually);

poroučeti, *poroŭchet'i*, to command.

Vidím,	<i>vid'eem</i> , I see: — vidíš, vidí, <i>vid'eesh, vid'ee</i> , thou seest, he sees; vidíme, vidíte, vidí, (colloq. also vidějí) <i>vid'eemě, vid'eetě, vid'ee</i> , colloq. <i>vid'eyee</i> , we (you, they) see; — viděl jsem, <i>vid'el sem</i> , I saw, or I have seen; viz, see (being an irregular imper.).
sedím,	<i>sed'eem</i> , I sit; seděl jsem, <i>sed'el sem</i> , I sat; sed', sit.
běžím,	<i>byž'eem</i> , I run; běžel jsem, <i>byž'el sem</i> , I ran; běž, byž, run;
držím,	<i>d^eržeem</i> , I hold; držel jsem, <i>d^eržel sem</i> , I held; drž, d^erž, hold;
mlčím,	<i>m^elcheem</i> , I am silent, mlčel jsem, <i>m^elchel sem</i> , I was silent; mlč, <i>m^elch</i> , be silent;
hoří,	<i>horshee</i> , it burns; hořel, <i>horshel</i> , burned; hoř, <i>horsh</i> , burn;
prší,	<i>p^ershee</i> , it rains; pršelo, <i>p^ershělō</i> , it rained; prš, <i>p^ersh</i> , rain;
slyším,	<i>slisheem</i> , I hear; slyšel jsem, <i>slishel sem</i> ; I heard; slyš, <i>slish</i> , hear;
sluší,	<i>slūshee</i> , it fits; slušelo, <i>slūshělō</i> , it fitted.
stydím se,	<i>stid'eem sě</i> , I am ashamed; styděl jsem se, <i>stid'el sem sě</i> , I was ashamed; styď se, shame on thee!
umím,	<i>ūmeem</i> , I know, I can; uměl jsem, <i>ūmyěll sem</i> , I knew; uměj, <i>ūmyěy</i> , know;
rozumím,	<i>rozūmeem</i> , I understand; rozuměl jsem, <i>rozūmyěll sem</i> , I understood; rozuměj, <i>rozūmyěy</i> , understand;
házím,	<i>házeem</i> , I throw (I am throwing); házel jsem, <i>házel sem</i> I was throwing; házej, <i>házey</i> , throw;
poroučím,	<i>poroūcheem</i> , I command; poroučel jsem, <i>poroūchel sem</i> , I commanded; poroučej, <i>poroūchey</i> , command.

Vlak, m.	<i>vlāk</i> ,	the train;	pevně,	<i>pevñe</i> ,	tightly, fast;
oprátě, f. pl.	<i>oprāt'e</i> ,	the lines;	silně,	<i>silñe</i> ,	strongly, hard;
povyk, m.	<i>pōvik</i> ,	the cry;	výborně,	<i>veeborñe</i> ,	very well, excellently;
jazyk, m.	<i>yāzik</i> ,	the tongue;	špinavý, á, é	<i>shpināvee</i> ,	dirty;
prádlo, n.	<i>prádlō</i> ,	the linen;	jíný, á, é	<i>yínee</i> ,	other, different;
šaty, pl.	<i>shāty</i> ,	suit of clothes;	zapomněl jsem,	<i>zāpom-ñel sem</i> ,	I forgot;
kamení, n.	<i>kāmeñee</i> ,	stones (collectively);			

před tím, *prshed ťeem*, before that;
za něj, *žď ňey*, for him, of him,
(for it, of it);

hráti, *hrátĭ*, to play;
už ne, *ŭsh ně*, not any more.

Vidíš něco? — Co vidíš? — Nevidím nic*).

Vidíte dobře? — Ano, vidím všecko.
— Oni to vidí dobře.

Viděli jsme vlak; — viděli jste ho také?

Neviděli jsme ho; — děti ho viděly.

Zde budeme viděti všecko. — Naši přátelé budou viděti nás hned.

Kdo tu sedí? — To jsem já. — Proč tu sedíš? — Běž ven; — běžte oba ven.

Seděli jste pořád; — večer budete seděti zas.

Drž koně a mlě. — Držte opratě a mlčte. — Držíte pevně? — Držíme pevně.

Oni nás slyší. — Žádný nás neslyší. — Ta holka nás slyšela. — Slyšeli nás.

Prší; slyším to; — Slyšíte dešť?

Neprší ještě; ale bude pršet. — Včera pršelo silně; — před tím nepršelo už dávno.

Doest thou see something? — What doest thou see?—I do not see anything.

Do you (*or* can you) see well? Yes, I can see all. — They see it well. We have seen a train; — have you seen it too?

We have not seen it;— the children saw it.

Here we shall see all.— Our friends will see us immediately.

Who sits here?—It is I.—Why doest thou sit here?—Run out;— go out both (of you).

You have been sitting all the time; —in the evening you will sit again.

Hold (thou) the horse and keep still. — Hold (you) the lines and keep still. — Do you hold fast? — We hold fast.

They hear us.—Nobody hears us.— That girl has heard us. — They have heard us.

It rains; I hear it.—Do you hear the rain?

It does not rain yet; but it will rain —Yesterday it rained hard; — before that it had not rained for a long time.

*) There is a double negation in Bohemian, similar to the vulgar English way of speaking: *I don't see nothing*, See Note 1, Lesson V.

Ty šaty sluší vám výborně.
 Ten klobouk mi nesluší; stydím se
 za něj.
 Nestyd' se; sluší ti dobře dost.
 Tvé prádlo je špinavé; nestydiš se?
 Styd' se!
 Umíš česky? — Ano já umím česky.
 Umíte anglicky? — Trochu.
 Umíte německy? — Uměl jsem do-
 bře; ale zapomněl jsem trochu.
 Umíš hrát na piano? — Neumím.
 — Umíte zpívat? — Neumím.
 Naše děti umějí česky a anglicky,
 — a žádný jiný jazyk.
 Rozumějí německy? — Nerozumě-
 jí.
 Házej kamení za plot. — Neházej
 kamení na cestu.
 Házejte ty pytle dolu. — Neházejte
 tak rychle.
 Házeli jsme dříví na hromadu. —
 a budeme házetí zas. — Otec to
 poroučí.
 Házej ty hoši kamení? — Neháze-
 jí. — Už neházejí.
 Už dávno neházejí.

That suit of clothes fits you very well.
 That hat does not fit me; I am a-
 shamed of it.
 Do not be ashamed; it fits thee well
 enough.
 Thy linen is dirty; art thou not a-
 shamed?—Shame on you!
 Doest thou know Bohemian?—Yes,
 I know Bohemian.
 Do you know English? — A little.
 Do you know German? — I knew it
 well: but I have forgotten it some-
 what.
 Doest thou know how to play on
 the piano?—I do not. — Can you
 sing?—I can not.
 Our children know Bohemian and
 English, -- and no other tongue.
 Do they understand German? —
 They do not (understand).
 Throw (thou) the stones behind the
 fence. — Do not throw the stones
 on the road.
 Throw (you) the sacks down. —
 Don't throw so fast.
 We have been throwing the wood
 on a heap, -- and we shall throw
 again. — Father commands it.
 Are those boys throwing stones? —
 They are not. — They are not
 throwing any more.
 They have not been throwing for a
 long time (i. e. they stopped throw-
 ing long since).

Note 2. The root or stem of the verb **viděti** is **vid**, to which the termination **ěti** is attached. All verbs ending in **ěti** or **eti** belong to the third conjugation.

The root of the verb is the usual form of the imperative: **běž**, run (thou); **sed'**, sit; **drž**, hold; etc; — The third person singular and plural of the present tense are alike: **vidí**, he (she, it) sees; **vidí**, they see. But in colloquial usage it commonly takes the longer form: **vidějí**, **sedějí** (they see, they sit).

In some cases the imperative is formed by cutting off the terminal **ti** and adding **j**: **uměti**, — **uměj**, know; **házeti**, — **házej**, throw; etc. These verbs always use the long form in the third person plural: **umí**, he (she, it) knows; **umějí**, *ummyeyee*, they know, — **házejí**, *házeyee*, they throw.

LESSON XXXIII.

Činiti , <i>chiñiti</i> , to do;	souditi , <i>soūditi</i> , to judge;
choditi , <i>khod'ti</i> , to walk; to go (frequently).	platiti , <i>plătiti</i> , to pay; to rule, prevail, be in force;
mluviti , <i>mlŭviti</i> , to speak, to tell;	svítiti , <i>sweetiti</i> , to shine;
věřiti , <i>vyěrshiti</i> , to believe;	buditi , <i>bŭditi</i> , to wake;
učiti , <i>ŭchiti</i> , to teach;	blázniti , <i>blázñiti</i> , to fool; to be crazy;
učiti se , <i>ŭchiti se</i> , to learn (i. e. to teach one's self);	modliti se , <i>modliti se</i> , to pray.

Činím, *chiñeem*, I do; — **činíš**, *chiñeesh*, thou doest; **činí**, *chiñee*, he (she, it) does; **činíme**, **činite**, **činí** (colloquially also **činějí**) *chiñeemě*, *chiñeetě*, *chiñee* or *chiñeyee* we, you, they do; — **činil jsem**, *chiñil sem*, I did, or I have done; **čiň**, do (thou); **čiňte**, *chiñte*, do (you);

chodím, *khod'eem*, I walk; **chodil jsem**, *khod'il sem*, I walked; **chod'**, walk;

mluvím, *mlůveem*, I speak; **mlavil jsem**, *mlůvil sem*, I spoke; **mluv**, *mlůf*, speak;
 věřím, *vyěrsheem*, I believe; **věřil jsem**, *vyěrshil sem*, I believed; **věř**, believe;
 učím, *űcheem*, I teach; **učil jsem**, *űchil sem*, I taught; **uč**, teach;
 učím se, *űcheem sě*, I learn; **učil jsem se**, *űchil sem sě*, I learned; **uč se**, learn;
 soudím, *soűďeem*, I judge; **soudil jsem**, *soűďil sem*, I judged: **sud'**, *sűď'*, judge;
 platím, *plăt'eem*, I pay; **platil jsem**, *plăt'il sem*, I paid; **plat'**, pay;
 svítím, *sweet'eem*, I shine (I light); **svítil jsem**, *sweet'il sem*, I shined (lighted); **svit'**, shine (light);
 budím, *bűďeem*, I wake; **budil jsem**, *bűďil sem*, I waked; **bud'**, wake;
 blázním, *blázñeem*, I am crazy; **bláznil jsem**, *blázñil sem*, I was crazy; **blázni**, *blázñi*, be crazy;
 modlím se, *modleem sě*, I pray; **modlil jsem se**, I prayed; **modli se**, pray.

Učitel*), m.	<i>űchitel</i> ,	the teacher;	kresliti,	<i>kressliti</i> ,	to draw;
učitelka, f.	<i>űchitelkă</i> ,	a female teacher:	živý, á, é	<i>živee</i> ,	living;
žák, m.	<i>žák</i> ,	the scholar;	nahlas,	<i>năhlăs</i> ,	aloud;
soudce, m.	<i>soűtsě</i> ,	the judge;	pilně,	<i>pilñě</i> ,	diligently;
zákon, m.	<i>zákön</i> ,	the law;	právě,	<i>právyě</i> ,	rightly;
kostel, m.	<i>kőstel</i> ,	the church;	křivě,	<i>krshivě</i> ,	wrongly;
lampa, f.	<i>lămpă</i> ,	the lamp:	podle,	<i>pődlě</i> ,	according to;
			dříve,	<i>drsheevě</i> ,	formerly.

*) Učitel, the teacher; učitele, *űchitellě*, of the teacher; učiteli, *űchitelli*, to the teacher; (plural) učitelé, *űchitellé*, the teachers; — like přítel, přátelé (see foot-note on page 97).

EXERCISES.

Čiň dobré a budeš šťasten.

Co jsi učinil? Nenčinil jsem nic.
— On to učinil.

Chlapec chodí do školy; — obě děti
chodí do školy.

Chodíte často do města? — Dříve
chodil jsem tam často; — nyní
tam nechodím.

Proč nechodíte? — Nemám čas.

Mluv nahlas; já tě neslyším.

Mluvil jsi s učitelem? — Nemluvil;
ale mluvil jsem s učitelkou.

Věří ti učitel? — On vždy mi věří,
protože mluvím pravdu. — To
rád slyším.

Učitel učí nás mluvit pravdu. —
Učil nás tomu vždycky.

Uč se pilně. — Učte se dobře. —
Učme se společně.

Co se učíš*)? — Zeměpis. — Co vy
se učíte? — Kresliti. — Kreslíte
dobře. — Žák kreslil pěkně.

Soudil jsem křivě. — Vy jste sou-
dili právě. — Soudce soudil po-
dle zákona.

Do good and thou shalt be happy.

What hast thou done? — I have not
done anything — He has done it.

The boy goes to school. — both
children go to school.

Do you often go to town? — Formerly
I went there often; — now I do
not go there.

Why do you not go? — I have no
time.

Speak loud; I do not hear thee.

Hast thou spoken with the teacher?
— I have not (spoken); but I spoke
with the lady teacher.

Does the teacher believe you? — He
always believes me, because I speak
the truth. — I like to hear that.

The teacher teaches us to speak the
truth. — He has taught us that
always.

Learn (thou) diligently. — Learn (you)
well. — Let us learn together.

What doest thou learn? — Geogra-
phy — What is it you learn? — To
draw. — You draw well. — The
scholar drew nicely.

I judged wrong. — You judged
right. — The judge judged ac-
cording to law.

*) This is the colloquial expression. In the written language, *učiti* and *učiti se* govern the dative case, responding to the question *čemu?* (See page 82). Hence we should write: *čemu se učíš?* what doest thou learn? *čemu učíte?* what do you teach? And the answer would be: *zeměpisu.*

Zákon platí, vždy platil a musí vždy platit.	The law rules, always ruled, and must always rule.
Budil jsem každé ráno celou rodinu časně.	I waked up every morning the whole family early.
Myslím že blázníš. — Ten člověk blázní. — Neblázni! — Bláznil jsi? — Ba bláznil jsem!	I think that thou art crazy. — That man is crazy. — Don't be crazy! Wast thou crazy? — Surely, I was crazy!
Měsíc ještě svítí; svítil celou noc. — Ta lampa svítí špatně; včera svítila dobře.	The moon still shines; it has been shining all night. — That lamp shines badly; yesterday it shined well.
Modli se! — Modleme se! — Lidé modlí se v kostele. — Kněz modlil se za živé*) i za mrtvé.	Pray! — Let us pray! — People pray in church. — The priest prayed for the living and for the dead.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **činití** is **čin**, to which the termination **iti** is attached. All verbs ending in **iti** belong to the fourth conjugation.

The root of the verb is the common form of the imperative: **čiň**, do; **choď**, walk; **mluv**, speak; etc. In some cases, however, only the final **ti** is thrown off to form the imperative: **blázni**, be crazy; **modli se**, pray.

Note 2. The verbs **bydliti**, **mysliti**, **musiti** (to reside, to think, must) are also written **bydleti**, **mysleti**, **museti**, and in popular language this form is always employed. This does not materially modify their inflection, as the third and fourth conjugation are essentially almost identical. For instance :

*) **Živý**, living; plural: **živí**, in the objective case **živé**. These distinctions, however, disappear in common discourse. This adjective also has an indefinite or short form (see Note 2, Lesson XXIII) : **živ**, a, o, For instance; **je posud živ**, he is still living; **matka je živa**, the mother is living; **dítě je živo**, the child is living. The expression **živ a zdrav**, pronounced *žíf a zdráf*, is frequently heard.

(Third conjugation)			(Fourth conjugation)		
seděti, <i>sed'et'i</i> , to sit			činiti, <i>chīñit'i</i> , to do		
sedím,	<i>sed'eem</i> ,	I sit	číním,	<i>chīñeem</i> ,	I do
seděl jsem,	<i>sed'el sem</i> ,	I sat	činil jsem,	<i>chīñil sem</i> ,	I did
sed',	<i>sed'</i> ,	sit (thou)	čiň,	<i>chīñ</i> ,	do (thou)
budu seděti,	<i>būdū sed'et'i</i>	I shall sit	budu činiti,	<i>būdū chīñit'i</i>	I shall do.

The above three verbs, in colloquial discourse, always take in the third person plural the form: *bydlejí, myslují, musejí*, *bidlěyee, mislěyee, mŭsěyee* (they reside, they think, they must); whereas the proper grammatical form is like the third person singular : *bydlí, myslí, musí*.

LESSON XXXIV.

Volati, <i>volăt'i</i> ,	to call;	prodati, <i>prodăt'i</i> ,	to sell;
běhati, <i>byěhăt'i</i> ,	to run (about);	prodávati *), <i>prodávăt'i</i> ,	to be sell-
čekati, <i>chekăt'i</i> ,	to wait;		ing;
dělati, <i>d'elăt'i</i> ,	to do, to make, to	povídati, <i>poveedăt'i</i> ,	to say, to tell;
	work;	trestati, <i>trestăt'i</i> ,	to punish;
hledati, <i>hlědăt'i</i> ,	to seek, to look	znáti, <i>znăt'i</i> ,	to know;
	for;	ptáti se, <i>ptăt'i sě</i> ,	to ask, to inquire;
doufati, <i>doŭfăt'i</i> ,	to hope;	plovati, <i>plovăt'i</i> ,	to swim.
Volám, <i>volám</i> ,	I call; voláš, <i>volášh</i> ,	thou callest; volá, <i>he (she, it) calls;</i>	
voláme, <i>voláme</i> ,	voláte, <i>volají,</i>	<i>volámě, volátě, volăyee</i> ,	we, you, they
	call; — volal jsem, <i>volăl sem</i> ,	I called; volej, <i>voley</i> ,	call (thou);
	volejte, <i>voleytě</i> ,	call (you);	
běhám, <i>byěhám</i> ,	I run; běhal jsem, <i>byěhăl sem</i> ,	I was running; běž,	<i>byěž</i> ,
			run;
čekám, <i>chekám</i> ,	I wait; čekal jsem, <i>chekăl sem</i> ,	I waited; čekej, <i>chekey</i> ,	
			wait;
dělám, <i>d'elám</i> ,	I do, I make; dělal jsem, <i>d'elăl sem</i> ,	I did, I made; dělej,	<i>d'eley</i> ,
			do, make;

*) Reiterative form of **prodati**; see Note 5, Lesson XIII.

hledám, *hlědám*, I seek; **hledal jsem**, *hlěděl sem*, I sought; **hledej**, *hlědey*, seek;
doufám, *doůfám*, I hope; **doufal jsem**, *doůfěl sem*, I hoped; **doufej**, *doůfey*, hope;
prodám, I shall sell (having a future meaning; see Note 7, Lesson XIV; **prodal jsem**, *proděl sem*, I sold; **prodej**, *prodey*, sell;
prodávám, I am selling: **prodával jsem**, *prodával sem*. I was selling: **prodávej**, *prodávey*, sell;
povídám, *poveedám*, I say; **povídal jsem**, *poveeděl sem*, I said; **povědej**, *poveedey*, tell;
trestám (also **tresci**, *trestsi*), I punish; **trestal jsem**, *trestěl sem*, I punished; **trestej**, *trestey*, punish;
znám, I know; **znal jsem**, *zněl sem*, I knew; **znej**, *zney*, know;
ptám se, I ask; **ptal jsem se**, *ptěl sem se*, I asked; **ptej se**, *ptey se*, ask.

Květina, f. *kwyěťinā* }
kvítko, n. *kweetko* } flower
kytka, f. *kitkā*, bouquet;
majetek, m. *māyětek*, property;
na přesrok, *nā prshēsrok*, next year
před lety, *prshed lety*, years ago;
druzí, *drůzee*, the others;
naši, *nāshi*, our folks;

spatřiti, *spātrshťi*, to see (or to meet);
věděti, *vyědet'i*, to know;
poslušný, á, é *poslūshnee*, obedient;
neposlušný, disobedient;
tento (f. **tato**, n. **toto**), *tentō*, this one, this here.

EXERCISES.

Voláš mě? — Koho voláš? — Koho jsi volal?

Volám hochu; kde je? — Běhá venku; všechny děti běhají venku.

Volal jsem tě; kde's (abbrev. of kde jsi) byl?

Doest thou call me? — Whom doest thou call? — Whom didst thou call?

I call the boy: where is he? — He is running outside (i. e. out of doors); — all the children are running outside.

I called thee; where hast thou been?

Běhal jsem na zahradě; — čekal jsem až mě budete volati.

Co jsi dělal na zahradě? — Nedělal jsem nic; hledal jsem květiny.

Je tam mnoho květin? — Ano.

Co druzí dělali na zahradě? — Hledali květiny se mnou.

Hledej pěkné květiny a dělej kytky. — Jděte*) oba, ty a Karel, a hledejte kvítka.

Doufám že napřesrok budeme živi a zdraví. — Doufejme!

Doufal jsem spatřiti vás zde. — Všichni doufali sme sejíti se s vámi.

Prodám svůj majetek. — Prodejte ho brzy. — Můj bratr prodal svůj majetek lacino.

Naši prodali farmu a povídají že půjdou do města.

Povídal jsem mu, že mám dům na prodej. — Prodávám všechno co mám.

Tento majetek není na prodej. — Kdo to povídal? — Kdo vám to povídal?

Každý to povídá. — Všichni to povídají.

Znáš mě? — Znáš tě dobře; — znal jsem tě už před lety.

I was running in the garden,—I was waiting until you would call me.

What wast thou doing in the garden? — I was not doing anything; — I was looking for flowers.

Are there many flowers there?—Yes.

What have the others been doing in the garden?— They were looking for flowers with me.

Look for nice flowers, and make bouquets. — Go both of you, — thou and Charles, and look for flowers.

I hope that next year we shall be alive and well. — Let us hope!

I hoped to see (or meet) you here.— We all hoped to meet you.

I shall sell my property. — Sell it soon. — My brother sold his property cheap.

Our folks have sold the farm, and they say that they will go to the city.

I told him that I had a house for sale. — I am selling everything I have.

This property is not for sale. — Who said so? — Who told you so?

Everybody says so. — They all say so.

Doest thou know me?—I know thee well; — I knew you already years ago.

*) The infinitive is *jíti*, *yee'ti*, to go; See Lesson XIII.

Každý mě zná; — všichni mě znají.	Everybody knows me; — they all know me.
Znáte mého otce? — Neznám ho. — Znal jste mou matku? — Neznal jsem ji.	Do you know my father?— I do not know him. -- Did you know my mother? — I did not know her.
Proč se ptáš? — Ptám se, protože chci věděti.*)	Why doest thou ask?—I ask because I want to know.
Ptáte se po mě? — Ptal jsem se kde bydlíte; — povídali mi, že prodal jste svůj dům. — Neprodal jsem ho ještě.	Do you ask for me?—I asked where you lived;—they told me that you had sold your house.—I have not sold it yet.
Neptám se co učitel povídal; já to vím.	I do not ask what the teacher said; I know it.
Věděl jsem, že chlapec je neposlušný; — víte že musel jsem trestati ho.	I knew that the boy was disobedient;—you know that I was obliged to punish him.
To víme. — Všichni víme, že trestal jste ho často.	We know that. — We all know that you punished him often.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **volati** is **vol**, to which the termination **ati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ati** belong to the fifth conjugation.

Note 2. Some verbs ending in **áti** form their present like the verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, (**bíti**, to beat; **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, etc.); for example:

hráti, *hrátí*, to play: **hrajú***), **hraješ**, **hraje**, *hráýű*, *hráýesh*, *hráýě*, I play, thou playest, he plays; **hrajeme**, **hrajete**, **hrajou****) *hráýemě*, *hráýetě*, *hráýoű* we, you, they play; — **hrál jsem**, *hrál sem*, I played; **hraj**, *hráý*, play.

*) **Věděti** (to know) is one of the thoroughly irregular verbs: **vím**, *víš*, *ví*, *veem*, *veesh*, *vee*, I know, thou knowest, he (she, it) knows; **víme**, *víte*, *vědí*, *veemě*, *veetě*, *vyěďee*, we, you, they know; — **věděl jsem**, *vyěďěl sem*, I knew; **věz**, *vyěž*, know thou; **vězte**, *vyěžte*, know you.

) **Hraji, **hrají**, (I play, they play) are considered the pure grammatical forms of the first person singular and third person plural; but **hrajou**, *hrajou*, are exclusively used in the popular language.

However, this verb also follows the rule of the fifth conjugation in the present tense: **hrám, hráš, hrá; hráme, hráte, hrají** (I play, thou playest, he plays; we, you, they play).

A few verbs modify the letter **á** in the present tense:

Hřáti, hrshát'i, to warm; — **hřeju** (or **hřeji**) **hřeješ, hřeje; hřejeme, hřejete, hřejou** (or **hřejí**); I warm, thou warmest, he warms; etc.

— **hřál jsem, hrshál sem**, I warmed; **hřej, hrshey**, warm;

přáti, prshát'i, to wish; — **přeju** (or **přeji**), I wish; **přál jsem**, I wished; **přej, wish**;

smáti se, smát'i sě, to laugh; — **směju se** (or **směji se**), **smýěyŭ sě**, I laugh; **smál jsem se, smál sem sě**, I laughed; **směj se, smýěy sě**, laugh.

Note 3. There are some verbs essentially belonging to this conjugation, which show a considerable deviation in the present tense and imperative. The following are most frequently met with:

bráti, to take; — **beru, bereš, bere, bereme, berete, berou, berŭ, beresh, berě, berěmě, berětě, beroŭ**, (I take, thou takest, etc.); **bral jsem, brál sem**, I took; **ber**, take;

práti, to wash; — **peru, perŭ, I wash; pral jsem, prál sem**, I washed; **per**, wash;

psáti, to write; — **píšu, peeshŭ, I write; psal jsem, psál sem**, I wrote; **piš, pish**, write;

kázati, to preach (or to command); — **kážu, kážŭ, I preach; kázal jsem, I preached; kaž**, preach;

tázati se, to ask; — **tážu se, tážŭ sě, I ask; tácal jsem se, tážal sem sě**, I asked; **taž se**, ask;

plakati, to weep; — **pláču, pláchŭ**, (but also **plakám**), I weep; **plakal jsem, plákal sem**, I wept; **plač, plach**, weep.

skákati, to jump; — **skáču, skáchŭ**, (but also **skákám**), I jump; **skákal jsem, skákál sem**, I was jumping; **skákej, skákey**, jump;

stonati, to be sick; — **stůňu, stooňŭ**, (but also **stonám; stōnám**), I am sick; **stůněš, stooňesh**, thou art sick; **stůně, stooňě**, he is sick, etc.; **stonej, stōney**, be sick.

LESSON XXXV.

Milovati , <i>milǔvǎti</i> , to love;	pracovati , <i>prǎtsǔvǎti</i> , to work;
děkovati , <i>děkǔvǎti</i> , to thank;	radovati se , <i>rǎdǔvǎti sě</i> , to rejoice;
litovati , <i>litǔvǎti</i> , to be sorry, to regret;	opakovati , <i>ǒpǎkǔvǎti</i> , to repeat;
jmenovati , <i>menǔvǎti</i> , to name, to call;	pamatovati , <i>pǎmǎtǔvǎti</i> , to remember;
jmenovati se , <i>m sě</i> , to be called;	podporovati , <i>pǒdporǔvǎti</i> , to support, to assist;
kupovati , <i>kǔpǔvǎti</i> , to be buying;	ztravovati , <i>strǎvǔvǎti</i> , to board.

Miluju (or **miluji***) *milǔyǔ*; I love; **miluješ**, *milǔyesh*, thou lovest; **miluje**, *milǔyě*, he (she, it) loves; **milujeme**, **milujete**, **milujou** (or **milují***) *milǔyěmě*, *milǔyětě*, *milǔyoŭ*, we, you, they love; — **miloval jsem**, *milǔvǎl sem*, I loved; **miluj**, *milǔy*, love, **milujte**, *milǔytě*, love (you);

děkuju (or **děkuji**), *děkǔyǔ*, I thank; **děkoval jsem**, *děkǔvǎl sem*, I thanked; **děkuj**, *děkǔy*, thank;

lituju (or **lituji**), *litǔyǔ*, I regret; **litoval jsem**, *litǔvǎl sem*, I regretted; **lituj**, *litǔy*, regret;

jmenuju (or **jmenuji**), *menǔyǔ*, I name; **jmenoval jsem**, *menǔvǎl sem*, I named; **jmenuj**, *menǔy*, name;

jmenuju se, *menǔyǔ sě*, I am called; **jmenoval jsem se**, *menǔvǎl sem sě*, I was called; **jmenuj se**, *menǔy sě*, call yourself;

kupuju (or **kupuji**), *kǔpǔyǔ*, I am buying; **kupoval jsem**, *kǔpǔvǎl sem*, I was buying; **kupuj**, *kǔpǔy*, buy (or rather: keep buying);

*) **Miluju**, **milujou** (I love, they love) is always used in ordinary conversation: **miluji**, **milují**, *milǔyi*, *milǔyee*, (I love, they love) prevails in the written language, being considered the proper grammatical form. This applies to all verbs of this conjugation: **děkuju**, **děkujou**, or **děkuji**, **děkují** (I thank, they thank); **lituju**, **litujou**, or **lituji**, **litují** (I regret, they regret); etc.

pracuju (or **pracuji**), *prātsūyŭ*, I work; **pracoval jsem**, *prātsōvāl sem*, I worked; **pracuj**, *prātsūy*, work;
raduju se (or **raduji se**), *rādŭyŭ sě*, I rejoice; **radoval jsem se**, *rādōvāl sem sě*, I rejoiced; **raduj se**, *rādŭy sě*, rejoice;
opakuju (or **opakuji**), *opākŭyŭ*, I repeat; **opakoval jsem**, *ōpākōvāl sem*, I repeated; **opakuj**, *ōpākŭy*, repeat;
pamatuju (or **pamatuji**), *pāmātŭyŭ*, I remember; **pamatoval jsem**, *pāmā-tōvāl sem*, I remembered; **pamatuj**, *pāmātŭy*, remember;
podporuju (or **podporuji**), *pōdporŭyŭ*, I support; **podporoval jsem**, *pōd-porōvāl sem*, I supported; **podporuj**, *pōdporŭy*, support;
žaluju (or **žaluji**), *žālŭyŭ*, I complain; **žaloval jsem**, *žālōvāl sem*, I complained; **žaluj**, *žālŭy*, complain.

Bůh *)	m.	<i>booh</i> ,	God;	osud , m	<i>osŭd</i> ,	fate;
blízní **) m.		<i>bleežñee</i> ,	the fellow man,	vychování , n.	<i>vykhōvāñee</i> ,	education;
			(neighbor);	díl , m.	<i>deeel</i> ,	a part;
král ,		<i>král</i> ,	the king;	výdělek , m.	<i>veedēlek</i> ,	earnings. wa-
královna ,		<i>královnā</i> ,	the queen;			ges, profit;
žebřák , m.		<i>žēbrāk</i> ,	the beggar;	který, á, é	<i>kteree or keree</i> ,	which,
kamarád , m.		<i>kāmārād</i> ,	the comrade;			what, who;
objevitel , m.		<i>obyē-vitel</i> ,	the discov-	vespolek ,	<i>vespōlek</i> ,	{ all together;
			erer;			{ one another;
svět , m.		<i>swyēt</i> ,	the world;	nazpamět ,	<i>nāspāmyēt</i> ,	by heart;
země , f.		<i>zemyē</i> ,	the country, the	z paměti ,	<i>spāmyēti</i> ,	from memory;
			earth;	svobodný, á, é	<i>swōbodnee</i> ,	free;
vlast , f.		<i>vlāst</i> ,	one's country;			single;
dávati ,		<i>dāvāti</i> ,	to give, to offer;	Římané ,	<i>rshimāné</i> ,	the Romans;
život , m.		<i>živōt</i> ,	life;	Václav ,	<i>vātslāv</i> ,	Venceslaus,
válka , f.		<i>vālkā</i> ,	war;			Wencel.

*) **Bůh**, **Boha**, **Bohu**, s **Bohem** (*booh*, *bōhŭ*, *bōhŭ*, *sbōhem*), God of God (God's), to God, with God.

) Nouns having the termination of adjectives are declined like adjectives of the corresponding termination. Hence we decline: **blízní, — **blízního**, of (our) fellow man or neighbor; **blíznímu**, to (our) neighbor; **s blízním**, with (our) neighbor. See Note 1, Lesson XXI.

EXERCISES.

Miluj bližního svého*). — Milujte se vespolek.	Love thy neighbor. — Love (you) one another.
Miluješ rodiče své? — Miluju je velmi.	Doeſt thou love thy parents? -- I love them greatly.
Matka miluje své dítě. — Děti milují matku svou.	The mother loves her child. — The children love their mother.
Washington miloval svou vlast. — Římané milovali válku.	Washington loved his country; -- The Romans loved war.
Co kupuješ? — Kupuji obilí. — Co kupoval jsi onehdy? — Kupoval jsem pár koní.	What art thou buying? — I am buying grain.— What wert thou buying the other day?—I was buying a pair of horses.
Kdo kupoval tento dům? — Naši kupovali ten dům; — dávali za něj dva tisíce.	Who has been buying this house?-- Our folks were buying that house; --they offered for it two thousand.
Cheeš něco jisti? — Ňechci nie, děkuju.	Doeſt thou want something to eat? — I do not want anything, thank you.
Dal jsem žebráku pět centů a on děkoval mi.	I gave to) the beggar five cents and he thanked me.
Děkujme Bohu, že jsme zdraví. — Děkuj svému osudu, že jsi rozen ve svobodné zemi.	Let us thank God that we are healthy. — Thank thy fate that thou wast born in a free country.
Děkujte rodičům za dobré vychování.	Thank (your) parents for a good education.
Litaju že musím pryč. — Litoval jsem, že musil jsem odejít. Zůstaň zde, povídali všichni, nebo budeš litovati.	I am sorry that I must (go) away.— I was sorry that I had to leave. — Stay here, they all said, or thou wilt be sorry.

*) This is the objective case, responding to **koho?** *whom?* It agrees with the possessive case; see Remark on page 86.

Jak se jmenuješ? — Jmenuju se Václav Zeman. — A jak vy se jmenujete? — Já se jmenuju Staněk. Jmenuj mi pět dílů světa.

Jak se jmenoval objevitel Ameriky? — Křištof Kolumbus.

Jak se jmenoval král, který ho podporoval? — Ferdinand. — A královna? — Isabella.

Pracuj pilně a budeš radovati se nad výdělkem.

Rád pracuješ? — Ano, ale můj kamarád nerad pracuje; — on pořád žaluje, že musí pracovati.

Pracovali jsme celý den.

Učitel žaloval mi, že jsi neposlušný; — opakuju, že musíš býti poslušný; — pamatuj si to!

Pamatuj co se učíš; — pamatuješ si to? — Pamatuju to dobře; — učím se to nazpamět.

Pamatujme na chudé; -- podporujme je. -- Pamatujto že život jest krátký.

What is thy name? — My name is Wencel Zeman.--And what is your name? My name is Staněk. — Name (to me) the five parts of the world.

What was the name of the discoverer of America? — Christopher Columbus.

What was the name of the king who assisted him?—Ferdinand.— And of the queen? — Isabella.

Work diligently, and thou wilt rejoice over (thy) earnings.

Dost thou like to work?—Yes; but my comrade does not like to work; — he always complains that he must work.

We worked (*or* have been working) all day.

The teacher complained to me that thou art disobedient; — I repeat that thou must be obedient;—remember that!

Remember what thou learnest; — dost thou remember it? — I remember it well;—I learn it by heart.

Let us remember the poor; — let us support them. — Remember (you) that life is short.

Note. The root or stem of the verb **milovati** is **mil**, to which the termination **ovati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ovati** (when the termination is attached to the *root*) belong to the sixth conjugation.

LESSON XXXVI.

(Já) bych	<i>bikh</i>	I should	Abych (já)	<i>ábikh</i>	that I should
(ty) bys	<i>bis</i>	thou wouldst	abys (ty)	<i>ábis</i>	that thou shouldst
(on) by	<i>bi</i>	he would	aby (on)	<i>ábi</i>	that he should; etc.
(my)-bychom	<i>bikhōm</i>	} we should	Kdybych	<i>gdibikh</i>	if I should
“ bysme	<i>bismě</i>		kdybys	<i>gdibis</i>	if thou wouldst
(vy) byste	<i>bistě</i>	you would	kdyby	<i>gdibi</i>	if he would (or simply “if).
(oni) by	<i>bi</i>	they would			
Byl*) bych	<i>bill bikh</i>	I shou'd be	Abych byl	<i>ábikh bill</i>	that I should be
byl bys	<i>bill bisthou</i>	wouldst be	abys byl	<i>ábis bill</i>	that thou
byl by	<i>bill bi</i>	he would be;			shouldst be
		etc.	aby byl	<i>ábi bill</i>	that he should be; etc.
Byl bych byl,		} I should have	Kdybych byl,		if I were,
byl bych býval,			kdybys byl,		if thou wert,
byl bys býval,		thou wouldst have	kdyby byl,		if he were; etc.
		been; etc.			
Nesl bych,	<i>nessl bikh,</i>	I should	nesli bychom (or bysme)	<i>nessli bi-</i>	
	(or “would”) carry;		<i>khōm,</i>	we should (or “would”) carry	
minul bych,	<i>minŭl bikh,</i>	I should	minuli bychom,	<i>minŭli bikhom,</i>	we
	pass				should pass
viděl bych,	<i>vid'el bikh,</i>	I should	viděli bychom,	<i>vid'eli bikhōm,</i>	we
	see				should see
činil bych,	<i>chiñil bikh,</i>	I should	činili bychom,	<i>chiñili bikhōm,</i>	we
	do				should do
volal bych,	<i>vōlāl bikh,</i>	I should	volali bychom,	<i>vōlāli bikhōm,</i>	we
	call				should call
miloval bych,	<i>milōvāl bikh,</i>	I should	milovali bychom,	<i>milōvāli bikhōm,</i>	we
	love				should love.

*) In the feminine gender *byla bych, byla bys, byla by*; third person neutre: *bylo by*, it would be. See Lesson IX.

Byl bych nesl, I should have carried.	byl bych činil, I should have done;
byl bych minul, I should have passed.	byl bych volal, I should have called.
byl bych viděl, I should have seen;	byl bych miloval, I should have loved.

Kdyby, <i>gdibi</i> , if	kufr, m. <i>kűff^er</i> , the trunk
kterýkoli, <i>ktěreekoli</i> , whichever, any	košík, m. <i>kosheek</i> , the basket
kdož (same as kdo), <i>gdōž</i> , who	list, m. <i>list</i> , the letter
či, čili, <i>chi, chilli</i> , or	vodopád, m. <i>vōdōpád</i> , a waterfall
řici, <i>rsheetsi</i> , to say, to tell	krajina, f. <i>krāyina</i> , a section of country
řekni, <i>rshěkñi</i> , say, tell (thou)	počasí, n. <i>pōchāssee</i> , the weather
řekněte, <i>rshěkñetě</i> , say, tell (you)	štěkati, <i>shṭekāti</i> , to bark.
těžký, á, é <i>teshkee</i> , heavy, hard	

EXERCISES.

Nesl bych ten kufr, kdyby nebyl tak těžký.	I would carry that trunk, if it were not so heavy.
Byl bych nesl ten kufr, kdybyste byli chtěli.	I should have carried that trunk, if you had wanted it.
My bysme nesli košík a vy byste nesli pytel.	We should carry the basket, and you would carry the sack.
Četl bys tu knihu? - Četl bych ji rád, kdybych ji měl.	Wouldst thou read that book? — I would like to read it, if I had it.
My bychom (or my bysme) rádi četli dnešní noviny.	We should like to read today's newspaper.
Které noviny byste rádi četli? — Kterékoliv.	What newspaper would you like to read? — Any newspaper.
Byli bychom (or byli bysme) četli ten list, ale byl tuze dlouhý.	We should have read that letter, but it was too long.
Pil bych pivo, kdybych ho měl. — Pil byste*) čaj? — Nepil bych nic.	I should drink beer, if I had it. — Would you drink tea? — I would not drink anything.

*) Speaking to one person and using the second person plural: *vy*, you; speaking to several persons, we should say: *pili byste* (would you drink).

Kdyby bylo pěkně, sil bych pšenici.
Kdyby pes štěkal, kopnul bych ho.
Viděl bych rád vodopád Niagara.
Na cestě do Iowy viděli bysme řeku
Mississippi.

Kdybyste přijeli k nám, viděli byste
hezkou krajinu.

Kdybych věděl, jaké počasí bude,
řekl bych vám.

Chodil bych k tobě, kdybys chtěl.

On by chodil k vám často. — Proč
by nechodil? — Jen ať chodí!

Věřil bys tomu? — Věřil byste
že nemám čas? — Nevěřil bych
to**).

Věřili by nám? — Myslím že věřili
by vám to.

Prodal bych rád můj obchod. —
Těžko byste prodal nyní.

Litoval bych, kdybyste prodal ten
obchod. — Já bych nelitoval nic.

Je čas, abych šel. — Řekni mu
aby šel.

Chci abys přišel brzy. — Chci aby-
ste odešli.

Chteť abych to koupil?

If it were nice*), I should sow wheat.
If the dog barked, I should kick him.
I should like to see the Niagara Falls.
On (our) way to Iowa we should see
the river Mississippi.

If you would come to us, you would
see a nice country.

If I knew what kind of weather it
will be, I should tell you.

I should come to thee (i. e. "come
to see thee often", if thou wouldst
wish it.

He would come to you often.—Why
should he not come?—Do let him
come !

Wouldst thou believe it? — Would
you believe that I have no time?
— I should not believe it.

Would they believe us?—I think that
they would believe you (it).

I would like to sell my business. —
You would find it hard to sell now.

I should be sorry, if you would sell
that business. — I should not be
sorry at all.

It is time that I should go.—Tell him
to go *or* to come (i. e. tell him that
he should go).

I want thee to come soon.— I want
you to leave.

Do you want me to buy that?

* That is, "if the weather were nice".

**) Věřiti to (accus. case), věřiti tomu (dative case); both are used
with equal propriety.

Kdybys byl zde býval, byl bys viděl
všelico.

Kdybych tam byl, bylo by dobře.—
Kdybych tam byl býval, byl bych
rád.

If thou hadst been here, thou wouldst
have seen different things.

If I were there, it would be well.—If
I had been there, I should be glad.

Note 1. The English conjunctions *if, whether*, used to introduce a conditional sentence, are expressed in Bohemian by the suffix *li*, or by *jestli, zdali, pakli, yestli, zdáli, pákli*:

Jsem-li, *sem-li* } if I am,
jestli jsem, *yestli sem* } whether I
zdali jsem, *zdáli sem* } am;

byl-li jsem, *billi sem* } if I
jestli jsem byl, *yestli sem bill* } was,
zdali jsem byl, *zdáli sem bill* } if I
pakli jsem byl, *pákli sem bill* } have
been.

budu-li *bůdů-li* } if I shall
jestli budu, *yestli būdů* } be; etc.

nesu-li, *nessů-li* } if I carry;
jest-li nesu, *yestli nessů* }

jsme-li, *smě-li* } if I am,
jestli jsme, *yestli smě* } whether
zdali jsme, *zdáli smě* } we are;

byli-li jsme, *billi-li smě* } if we
jestli jsme byli, *yestli smě billi* } were,
zdali jsme byli, *zdáli smě billi* } if we
pakli jsme byli, *pákli smě billi* } have
been;

budeme-li, *būdēmě-li* } if we
jestli budeme, *yestli būdēmě* } shall
be; etc.

nesl-li jsem, *nesslli sem* } if I
jestli jsem nesl, *yestli sem nessl* } car-
ried

Arci (že), *artsi* } of course,
ovšem (že), *ofshēm* } to be sure;
nikam, *nikām*, nowhere;
nikdo jiný, *nikdō yinee*, no one else;
ani my, *āni me*, not even we,

neither we;
zač je, *zách yě*, what is it worth;
zač jsou, *zách soů*, what are they
worth;

mouka, f. *moůká*, the flour;

tuna, f. *tůňá*, a ton;

přijeti *prshiyěti*, to arrive (by
some conveyance);

směti, *smyěti*, to be allowed,
to dare;

smím-li, *smeemli*, if I may;

víte-li, *veetěli*, if you know;

slibiti, *sleebiti*, to promise;

pověděti, *povyědēti*, to tell;

pověz, *povyěz*, tell (thou);

utratiti, *utrătiti*, to spend;

vzítí si, *vzeetī si*, to take (to
one's self);

vezmu si, *vězmů si*, I shall take
(to myself).

Note 2. The pronoun **si** has the same meaning as **sobě**, *sobyě*, “to one’s self”, for one’s self”. It often accompanies verbs, denoting the closest relation between the subject and its predicate, somewhat after the manner of reflexive verbs (connected with **se**, the same as **sebe**, one’s self). For instance:

Vzíti means simply “to take”; **vzíti si** means, “to take to one’s self”, — to take for one’s own use or exclusive possession. — **Vzíti kytku**, to take a flower; **vzíti si kytku**, to take (and keep for one’s self) a flower. — **Vzíti si ženu**, to take to one’s self a wife; **vzal si ženu**, he took unto himself a wife.

Vezmi si peníze, take (to thyself) money, *or* the money; **vezměte si piva**, take (yourself) some beer; **vezměme si vína**, let us take (ourselves) some wine.

Koupím klobouk, I shall buy a hat; **koupím si klobouk**, I shall buy (myself) a hat, — I shall buy me a hat; **kup si klobouk**, buy (thyself) a hat.

Dej udělat obraz, (*děy ůdělāt obrāz*), let (hou) a picture be made; order a picture to be made; **děj si udělat obraz**, let a picture be made for thyself. — **Dejte udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made; **dejte si udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made for yourself.

Note 3. The *finite* verb **vzíti** (to take) has only a past and future tense, — the *continuous* verb **bráti** (to take) supplying the present: **beru**, I take. See Note 3 on page 153.

Vzal jsem, **vzal jsi**, **vzal**, I took, thou tookest, he took; **vezmu**, **vezmeš**, **vezme**, I shall take, thou wilt take, he will take; **vezmi**, **vezměte**, take (thou, you).

In common discourse we often hear **vemu**, **vemeš**, **veme**, *věmā, věmesh, věmě*, in place of **vezmu**, **vezmeš**, **vezme**; and **vem**, **vemte**, *vēm, věmtě*, in place of **vezmi**, **vezměte**.

EXERCISES.

Ptáte se, jsem-li rád? — Ovšem že jsem rád.	You ask if I am glad? — Of course I am glad.
Ptal jsem se, jsou-li naši zde. — Ar-ci že jsou, — pravil pan Hronek.	I asked if our folks were here. — Of course they are, — said Mr. Hronek.

Rád bych věděl, jestli sestra přijela.

Ráda bych věděla (f.), zdali bratr přijel.

Rád bych slyšel, je-li můj syn živ nebo mrtev.

Co myslíte, bude pršet? — Kdož ví, bude-li pršet čili nebude.

Myslíte-li že bude pršet, nepůjdu nikam.

Chci vědět má-li peníze; — nemá-li, ať odejde.

Dám-li mu peníze, utratí je. — Dáme-li mu dollar, bude spokojen. — Dáte-li mi něco, budu rád.

Podívám se, zdali je otec doma. — Pověz mi pak, je-li doma nebo není.

Povězte mi, musím-li jíti domu nebo ne. — Ať poví ti, musíš-li jíti do školy.

Povězte mi, smím-li vzíti si růži. — Smíš; ale nikdo jiný nesmí.

Vezmi si tu kytku. — Já nesmím.

Proč nesmíš? — Nesmíš-li ty, nesmím já.

Nesmí-li nikdo, nesmíme ani my.

Nevím smíme-li, nebo nesmíme.

To nesmíš dělat! — Jestli nesmím, teda nebudu.

Otec slíbil mi dollar, budu-li hodný.

I should like to know, if sister has arrived.

I should like to know if brother has arrived.

I should like to hear whether my son is alive or dead.

What do you think, will it rain? — Who knows if it will rain or not. If you think that it will rain, I shall not go anywhere.

I want to know if he has money; — if he has not, let him go away.

If I give him money, he spends it. — If we give him a dollar, he will be satisfied. -- If you give me something, I shall be glad.

I shall see if father is at home. — Tell me then if he is at home or not.

Tell me whether I must go home or not. — Let him tell thee, whether thou must go to school.

Tell me if I may take a rose. — Thou mayest; but nobody else may.

Take that flower. — I dare not (I must not).

Why must thou not? — If thou must not, I must not.

If nobody is allowed, then we too are not allowed.

I don't know whether we may or not.

Thou must not do that! — If I must not, than I shall not.

Father promised me a dollar if I am (i. e. shall be) good.

Jestli ti ho slibil, dá ti ho.

Povězte mi, víte-li zač je tuna se-
na. — Víte-li pak, zač jsou pra-
sata?

Znáte-li pak mě? — Víte-li*) pak,
že jsem zde dávno?

If he has promised it (to thee), he
will give it to thee.

Tell me if you know what is a ton of
hay worth. — Do you know what
hogs are worth?

Do you know me? — Do you know
that I have been here a long time?

Note 4. The present participle *being* varies in Bohemian accord-
ing to gender and number:

jsa, *sā*, m. — **jsouc**, *soŭts*, f. and n. — **jsouce**, *soŭtsě*, pl. of all three genders.

The past, *having been*, is rendered thus:

byv, *bif*, m. — **byvši**, *bifshi*, f. and n. — **byvše**, *bifshě*, pl. of all three
genders.

The following models will amply suffice for the verbs of all conjuga-
tions :

nesa	<i>nessā</i> , m.	carrying	sedě	<i>sed'e</i> , m.	sitting
nesouc	<i>nessoŭts</i> , f. & n.	"	sedíc ,	<i>sed'eets</i> , f. & n.	"
nesouce	<i>nessoŭtsě</i> , pl.	"	sedíce ,	<i>sed'eetsě</i> , pl.	"
pije	<i>piyě</i> , m.	drinking	volaje ,	<i>volāyě</i> , m.	calling
pijíc	<i>piyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	volajíc ,	<i>volāyeets</i> , pl.	"
pijíce	<i>piyeetsě</i> , pl.	"	volajíce ,	<i>volāyeetsě</i> , pl.	"
miluje	<i>millŭyě</i> , m.	loving	piv	<i>pif</i> , m.	having drank
milujíc	<i>millŭyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	pivši	<i>pifshi</i> , f. & n.	"
milujíce	<i>millŭyeetsě</i> , pl.	"	pivše	<i>pifshě</i> , pl.	"

seděv, *sěd'ef*, having sat; **volav**, *volāf*, having called; etc.

*) We may ask, for instance : **víte zač je mouka?** "do you know
what flour is worth?" But if we ask : **víte-li pak zač je mouka?** or **zdali
pak víte, zač je mouka?** there is a peculiar emphasis in the question, as if
we say in English : "I wonder if you know what flour is worth?" — **Zná-
te mě?** "do you know me?" **Znáte-li pak mě?** or **zdali pak mě znáte?**
"I wonder if you know me?"

Viděti, “to see”, is irregular, forming its partic. like **nesti** : **vida** m. **vidouc** f. & n., **vidouce**, pl. (*vidā, vidoŭts, vidoŭtsě*), seeing.

These participles occur in the written language and sometimes in solemn discourse, but are never used in ordinary conversation. Expressions may be greatly shortened and made incisive by their use; for instance :

“As he was going away from here, he fell down”, — may be translated into Bohemian: **Jda odsud, upadl**. In common discourse, however, people would say: **Když šel odsud, upadl** (or **upadnul**.*)

A verbal adjective is formed in Bohemian by adding an **í** to the present participle (f. and n.). **jsoucí**, *soŭtsee*, being; **nesoucí**, *nessoŭtsee*, carrying; **píjící**, *piyeetsee*, drinking; **volající**, *volāyeetsee*, calling; **milující**, *millŭyeetsee*, loving. — They are rarely employed in common conversation, but frequently in writing:

Muž nesoucí kufr minul mě; a man carrying a trunk passed me. — **Rodiče milující své děti jsou starostliví o ně**; parents loving their children are anxious about them.

LESSON XXXVII.

THE PASSIVE VERB. In English the “past participle” is also the *passive participle*, employed to form the “passive voice” or passive verb-phrases : *I am carried; I was carried; I shall be carried*.

In Bohemian there is a special “passive participle”, ending in **n** (**na** in the feminine, **no** is the neutre gender, — **ni, ny, na** in the plural), by which the passive voice of transitive verbs is formed :

Jsem nesen, *sem nessěn* (**nesena**, *nessěna* f., **neseno**, *nessěno* n.), I am carried; **jsme nesení, y, a, smě nesseňi**, we are carried;

byl jsem nesen, *bill sem nessěn*, I was carried;

budu nesen, *bŭďŭ nessěn*, I shall be carried.

*) **Padnouti**, *pădnoŭťi*, to fall; **upadnouti**, *ŭpădnoŭťi*, to fall down. As repeatedly stated in preceding lessons, the colloquial usage drops the final **i** of the infinitive, and the letter **t** has its ordinary hard sound : *pădnoŭt, ŭpădnoŭt*.

Jsem viděn, sem viděn, I am seen; | **jsem volán, sem volán**, I am called;
jsem učěn, sem ůčen, I am taught; | **jsem milován, sem millován**, I am
loved;

The passive participle of verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, and of verbs of the second conjugation (ending in **outi**) terminates in **it** and **ut**; for instance, — **bíti, minouti** (to beat, to pass):

Jsem bit, sem bit, I am beat (whipped or punished); **byl jsem bit**, I was beat; **budu bit**, I shall be beat;

jsem minut, sem minūt, I am passed; **byl jsem minut**, I was passed; **budu minut**, I shall be passed.

The imperative of the passive voice is expressed in Bohemian by **ať**, which is already familiar to the student as an equivalent of the English "let":

Ať jsem nesen, a, o,	āť sem nessěn,	let me be carried;
ať jsem bit, a, o,	āť sem bit,	let me be whipped;
ať jsem volán, a, o,	āť sem volán,	let me be called;
ať jsem milován, a, o,	āť sem millován,	let me be loved.

In English the past or passive participle is often used as an adjective; for example: "An *invited* guest."

In Bohemian every passive participle may be changed into an adjective by adding **ý** (and changing **a** into **á** in the feminine, **o** into **é** in the neutre gender). For instance:

nesen, a, o :	nesený, á, é,	carried	viděn, a, o :	viděný, á, é,	seen
bit, a, o :	bitý, á, é,	beaten	volán, a, o :	volaný, á, é,	called
minut, a, o :	minutý, á, é,	passed	milován, a, o :	milovaný, á, é,	loved, beloved.

In the termination **án, ána, áno** the long vowel **á** is shortened when the participle changes into an adjective:

volán m., volána f	voláno, n.	} called (as past participle and adjective).
volaný m. volaná f.	volané, n.	

POTENTIAL FORMS.

The potential mood employing the auxiliary *may* is formed in Bohemian by means of the verb **moci, motsi** (commonly **mociti**, vulgarly **mocht, mōtst**), which has an irregular inflection:

Mohu,	<i>mǒhŭ,</i>	I may	můžeme,	<i>moožěmě,</i>	we may
můžeš,	<i>moožesh,</i>	thou mayest	můžete,	<i>moožětě,</i>	you may
může,	<i>moožě,</i>	he (she, it) may	mohou,	<i>mǒhoŭ,</i>	they may;
mohl, (a, o) bych,	<i>mǒhl, (ǒ, ǒ), bikh,</i>		mohli, (y, a) bychom	(or bysme';	
		I might		<i>mǒhli bismě,</i>	we might
mohl bys,	<i>mǒhl bis,</i>	thou mightest	mohli byste,	<i>m. bistě,</i>	you might
mohl by,	<i>mǒhl bi,</i>	he might	mohli by,	<i>m. bi,</i>	they might
Mohu býti nesen,		I may be carried	mohl bych býti nesen,		I might be
					carried
mohu býti bit,		I may be whipped	mohl bych býti bit,		I might be
					whipped
mohu býti viděn,		I may be seen	mohl bych býti viděn,		I might be
					seen
mohu býti milován,		I may be loved	mohl bych býti milován,		I might be
					loved.

Mohl jsem býti nesen, *mǒhl sem beet'i nessěn,* I might have been carried;
 mohl jsem býti bit, *mǒhl sem beet'i bit,* I might have been whipped.

Otherwise **moci** has the meaning of "can" or "to be able":

Mohu to udělati; — nemohu to udělati;	I can do it; — I cannot do it;
mohl jsem to udělati; — nemohl jsem to udělati;	I could do it (or: I could have done it); — I could not do it;
budu moci to udělati; — nebudu moci to udělati.	I shall be able to do it; — I shall not be able to do it;
Můžete přijíti? — Nemůžeme přijíti.	Can you come? — We cannot come.
Mohou choditi? — Nemohou choditi.	Can they walk? — They cannot walk.

In common discourse **mohu** (I can), and **mohou** (they can) are displaced by **můžu** and **můžou**, *moožŭ, moožoŭ*, making the present tense consistent, if not regular.

REITERATIVE FORM.

The English reiterative form of "used to" is rendered in Bohemian:
 1. — By reiterative verbs derived from simple verbs as explained in Note

5, Lesson XIII; for instance: **hráti** means “to play”; **hrávati** means “to play often”, to use to play;

hrál jsem tam; hrával jsem tam;	I played there; I used to play there;
— hráli tam; hrávali tam.	— they played there; they used to play there.

2; — By verbs having in themselves a reiterative meaning; for instance : **přicházeti**, *prshikházěti*, means “to come often” (also “to be coming”); **docházeti**, *dōkházěti*, means “to go often somewhere”, to make frequent calls, (also “to be on the decline”);

on přichází k nám; on přicházel k	he often comes to us; he used to
nám; — my docházeli k němu;	come to us; — we used to go to
budeme docházeti k němu.	him; we shall often go to him.

LESSON XXXVIII.

English participles may be used substantively, or changed into nouns; for instance :

speaking, — *the speaking*; sitting, — *the sitting*; calling, — *the calling*.

In Bohemian, nouns are derived from verbs in two different ways, illustrated by the following examples :

1.

bíti,	<i>beet'i,</i>	to beat; — bití,	<i>bi'tee,</i>	the beating;
píti,	<i>peet'i,</i>	to drink; — pití,	<i>pi'tee,</i>	the drinking;
šíti,	<i>sheet'i,</i>	to sew; — šití,	<i>shi'tee,</i>	the sewing;
žíti,	<i>žee'ti,</i>	to live; — žití,	<i>ži'tee,</i>	the living;
bod-nouti,	<i>bodnoŭ'ti,</i>	to stab; — bod-nutí,	<i>bodnŭ'tee,</i>	the stabbing, a stab;
hyn-outi,	<i>hynoŭ'ti,</i>	to be perishing; — hyn-utí,	<i>hinŭ'tee,</i>	the perishing;
kop-nouti,	<i>kopnoŭ'ti,</i>	to kick; — kop-nutí,	<i>kopnŭ'tee,</i>	the kicking, a kick

2.

nes-ti,	<i>nessťi,</i>	to carry; —	nes-ení,	<i>nessěnee,</i>	the carrying;
pás-ti,	<i>pást'i,</i>	to herd; —	pas-ení,	<i>pässenee,</i>	the herding;
vid-ěti,	<i>viděťi,</i>	to see; —	vid-ění,	<i>viděnee,</i>	the seeing; the vision;
slyš-eti,	<i>slishěťi,</i>	to hear; —	slyš-ení,	<i>slishěnee,</i>	the hearing;
mluv-iti,	<i>mlůviti,</i>	to speak; —	mluv-ení,	<i>mlůvěnee,</i>	the speaking;
volati,	<i>voláťi,</i>	to call; —	vol-ání,	<i>volánee,</i>	the calling or call;
milov-ati,	<i>milováťi,</i>	to love; —	milov-ání,	<i>milovánee,</i>	the loving.

The simple rules of derivation are apparent from the above list.

1. Verbs terminating in **íti** (forming a subdivision of the first conjugation; Note 3, p. 138;) are changed into nouns by a simple transfer of the long **í** : **píti**, to drink, — **pítí**, the drinking.

2. Verbs ending in **outi** (which belong to the second conjugation) become nouns by a change of its termination into **utí** : **bodnouti**, to stab, (**bodnu**, I shall stab), — **bodnutí**, the stabbing, or “a stab”.

3. Verbs ending in **ěti**, **eti**, **iti** (which form the third and fourth conjugations) become nouns by changing their termination into **ění** or **ení** : **viděti**, to see, — **vidění**, the seeing, or “the vision”; **mluviti**, to speak, — **mluvení**, the speaking.

4. Verbs ending in **ati** (which form the fifth and sixth conjugations) become nouns by changing that termination into **ání** : **volati**, to call, — **volání**, the calling, or “the call”.

When the long vowel **á** occurs in the root of a simple verb, it is shortened in the process of deriving a noun :

pásti, *pásst'i*, to herd (or “to pasture”); **pas-ení**, *pässenee*, the herding;
psá-ti, *psát'i*, to write; **psa-ní**, *psānee*, the writing.

In some cases the derivation of nouns from verbs of the first conjugation is somewhat irregular, the same as the formation of the tenses for instance :

čísti, *cheest'i*, to read; (**čtu**, **čteš**, **čte**, *chtŭ*, *chtěsh*, *chtě*, I read, thou readest, he reads); — **čte-ní**, *chtěňee*, the reading;

plesti, *plest'i*, to twist; (**pletu**, **pleteš**, **plete**, I twist, thou twistest, he twists); — **plete-ní**, *plěťňee*, the twisting;

klásti, *klást'i*, to lay; (**kladu**, **kladeš**, **klade**, I lay, thou layest, he lays); — **klade-ní**, *kláděňee*, the laying;

másti, *mást'i*, to confuse (to mix up); **mate**, he confuses; — **matení**, *mătěňee*, the confusion or mixing up;

městi, *mest'i*, to sweep; — **mete**, he sweeps; — **metení**, *mětěňee*, the sweeping;

vesti, *vest'i*, to lead; **vede**, he leads; — **vedení**, *věďěňee*, the leading.

LESSON XXXIX.

VERBS CLASSIFIED.

1. — As before observed (in Lesson XXXI) **nesti**, “to carry” or “to be carrying”, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

2. — By means of prefixes other verbs are derived therefrom, which denote a limited or FINISHED action and are called FINITE verbs; for example:

donesti, *dŏness'ti*, to carry somewhere or to somebody;

přinesti, *prshiness'ti*, to bring, to fetch.

3. — Many continous verbs have a corresponding form denoting a REPEATED or reiterated action; for instance:

nesti , <i>ness'ti</i> , to carry;	nositi , <i>noss'it'i</i> , to carry repeatedly;
vezti , <i>vez'ti</i> , to carry (in a vehicle);	voziti , <i>vozi'ti</i> , “ “
vesti , <i>vest'ti</i> , to lead;	voditi , <i>vod'it'i</i> , to lead repeatedly;
čísti , <i>cheest'i</i> , to read;	čítati , <i>cheetăt'i</i> , to read repeatedly;
pásti , <i>pásst'i</i> , to herd;	pásati , <i>pássăt'i</i> , to herd repeatedly;
letěti , <i>letět'i</i> , to fly;	lítati , <i>leetăt'i</i> , to fly repeatedly;
jeti , <i>yet'i</i> , to ride;	jezditi , <i>yezd'it'i</i> , to ride repeatedly.

There are, besides, reiterative verbs derived in the manner explained in Note 5, page 61, and denoting so to say a CUSTOMARY action; for instance:

nositi,	to carry repeatedly,	nosí-va-ti,	<i>nosseerăt'i</i> , to use to carry,
voziti,	to carry repeatedly (in a (vehicle),	vozí-va-ti,	<i>vozeevăt'i</i> , to use to carry,
voditi,	to lead repeatedly,	vodí-va-ti,	<i>vod'eevăt'i</i> , to use to lead,
čítati,	to read repeatedly,	čitá-va-ti,	<i>cheeeávăt'i</i> , to use to read.
pásati,	to herd repeatedly,	pásá-va-ti,	<i>pássávăt'i</i> , to use to herd,
lítati,	to fly repeatedly,	lítá-va-ti,	<i>leetávăt'i</i> , to use to fly.
jezditi,	to ride repeatedly;	jezdí-va-ti,	<i>yezďeevăt'i</i> , to use to ride.

4. — Certain verbs denote an action which is simply **MOMENTARY**. As a rule they terminate in **iti**, belonging to the fourth conjugation. For instance : **skočiti**, *sköchit'i*, to jump, to leap, — that is, to make a jump or leap.

From these are derived **FINITE** verbs in the same manner as from continuous verbs (1.), namely by prefixes. For instance :

kročiti,	to make a step,	zakročiti,	<i>žakröchit'i</i> , to step between, to interfere;
skočiti,	to jump,	vyskočiti,	<i>visköchit'i</i> , to jump out or up;
střeliti,	to shoot (once),	zastřeliti,	<i>žastrshelit'i</i> , to shoot dead;
strčiti,	to push,	vystřčiti,	<i>vist'echit'i</i> , to push out;
pustiti,	to let go,	vypustiti,	<i>vipűst'it'i</i> , to let out,
chytiti,	to catch,	zachytiti,	<i>žăkhit'it'i</i> , to catch up, to snatch;
chybiti,	to err,	pochybiti,	<i>pökhibit'i</i> , to commit an error.

Note 1. Such is the general classification of Bohemian verbs in regard to the duration of the action or process they denote. But for practical purposes it is sufficient to distinguish two great classes of verbs, namely:

1. **CONTINUOUS VERBS**, denoting a continued or repeated action. This class comprises the simple verbs of all conjugations except some ending in **outi** and **iti**. For instance: **nesti**, to carry; **plouti**, to float; **viděti**, to see; **činiti**, to do; **volati**, to call; **milovati**, to love.

2. **FINITE VERBS**, denoting a finished or momentary action or process. This class comprises many verbs of the second and fourth conjugation.

tions, ending in **outi** and **iti**; for instance: **minouti**, to pass; **bodnouti**, to stab; **skočiti**, to leap; **střeliti**, to shoot (to discharge a shot).

Most of the verbs derived from others by prefixes also belong to this class; for example: **vyskočiti**, to jump up; **donesti**, to carry somewhere; **pominouti**, to pass over; **uviděti**, to catch a sight; **učiniti**, to do a certain act; **zavolati**, to call out or up; **pomilovati**, to fondle a little.

The finite verbs have in fact only a past and a future tense, and no present, because their present *form* denotes a *future action*:

donešu , I shall carry somewhere;	uvidím , I shall see;
minu , I shall pass;	učiním , I shall do;
udělám , I shall make;	skočím , I shall jump;
zavolám , I shall call;	vyskočím , I shall jump up;
pomiluju (or pomiluji) I shall fondle;	střelím , I shall shoot.

LESSON XI.

Every language has peculiar ways or modes of expression, which cannot be taken literally; or translated closely into another language. They are called idiomatic expressions or **IDIOMS**. Many of them are of frequent occurrence in ordinary intercourse.

The student will naturally desire to know the Bohemian equivalents of such English expressions as are in constant use in common conversation. He will find most of them in the following list, the English expression always preceding in Bohemian, in order to facilitate their study. The beginner should often peruse these phrases until he has a perfect command of them, or — to use an English idiom — until “he has them at his fingers’ ends.”

All along,	venkencem , veskrze ,	<i>venkōntsēm</i> , <i>vesk^erzě</i> ;
all over,	všude ,	<i>vshŭdě</i> ;
all is over,	je po všem ,	<i>yě pofshēm</i> ;
all in all,	vůbec ,	<i>voobets</i> ;
all one,	vše jedno ,	<i>fshě yednŏ</i> ;
all the same,	“ “	“ “

all the time,
all the better,
all hollow,
all of a sudden,
along-side,
as far as I can,
as far as possible,
as far as I am concerned
as far as that is con-
cerned.

at any rate,
at all events,
at last,
at length,
at once,
all at once,
at large,

Be it as it may,

be perfectly easy,
by and by,
by the bye,
by the way,
by day,
by night,
by the day,
by the week,
by the piece,
by all means,

Call for me,
can it be possible?
can't do it !

stále, pořád,
tím líp,
na dobro,
najednou, z nenadání,
vedle,
pokud mohu,
pokud možná,
co se mě týče,
co se toho týče,

{ buď jak buď,

{ konečně,

{ hned, najednou,
vůbec, celkem,

buď jak buď, ať je
jakkoli;

buďte bez starosti,
hnedle, znenáhla,

{ mimo to,
{ apropos,

za dne,
v noci,
na den,
na týden,
od kusu,
na všechnen způsob,

stavte se pro mě,
je-li možná?
nejde to !

stále, pörshád;
teem leep;
nä döbrö;
näyednoŭ, zněnádáni;
vědlě;
pökŭd mōhŭ;
pökŭd možná;
tsō sě myě teečě;
tsō sě tōhō teečě;

bŭď yāk bŭď;

kōnechně;

hněd, näyednoŭ;

voobets, tselkem.

bŭď yāk bŭď; äť yě
yākkoli;

bŭďtě bestārōstŭi;
hnedlě, zněnáhlä;

mimō tō,

äpropo,

zä dně;

vnotsi;

nä den;

nä teeden;

ōd kŭsŭ;

nä fshěkhen spoosob.

stäftě sě pro myě;

yelli možná?

něydě tō!

come on,
come along,
come and see us,

} **pojď ! pojďte !**
přijďte nás navštívit,

pojď, pojďte);*
prshid'tě nás năfsh'tee-
vit.

Don't you hear?
don't you see?
don't you know it?
don't mention it!
dear me !
day and night,
day by day,
do as you please,
drop me a line.

což neslyšíte?
což nevidíte?
což to nevíte?
to nestojí za řeč,
o jemine !
ve dne v noci,
den co den,
dělejte jak myslíte,
píšte mi pár řádek,

tsōsh nēslishēetě?
tsōsh nēvi'dēetě?
tsōsh tō nēveetě?
tō nestoyee ză rshēch;
o yēmīnē;
vě dně vnotsi;
den tsō den;
ďēleytě yăk misleetě;
pishtë me pár rsháděk.

Excuse me !
every now and then,
Farewell !
Good-bye !
get up !
get out !
get ready !
give me a rest !
go ahead !
go on !

odpusťte !
každou chvíli,
} s bohem—na zdar !
zhůru !—vstaňte !
ven !—pojďte ven !
připravte se !
dejte mi pokoj !
} jen dál !

odpŭstě!
kăždou khweeli;
sbōhem ! — nă zdăr !
zhoorŭ !—fstăñtě!
ven !—pōďtě ven !
prshiprăftě sě !
deytě me pōkoy !
yen dál !

Help yourself !

here and there,
hurry up !
he is good at it !

poslužte si ! vemte si !
račte !
sem tam,
honem !
on to umí ! on to zná !

poslŭshťe si ! vemťe si !
răchtě !
sem tām,
hōnem !
ōn tō ŭmee ! ōn tō zná!

*) Colloquially *pojď, pōďtě*, (thou, you) come on. — **I pojďte už!**
i pōďtě ŭsh! come on, now! do come along!

he is good for nothing; he is on the lookout; he is well off; he means no harm; he took a hint; he keeps out of sight; he has a head of his own; how do you do ? how are you ?	není k ničemu; on číhá; on se má dobře; on to zle nemyslí, dovtípil se; on se straní; on má vlastní hlavu; } jak se máte ?	neyñi kñichěmǔ; ǝn cheehá; ǝn sě má dǝbrshě; ǝn tǝ zlē nēmislee; dǝfʹeepil sě; ǝn sě strǎñee; ǝn má vlǎstñee hlǎvǔ; yǎk sě máte?
I am glad of it ! I bet, — I guess, I don't care; I have a mind, I made up my mind, I can't afford it; I can't stand it (<i>mean- ing</i> : I hate it); I can do without it; I have taken a fancy to it; I have no hand in it; I had some words with him; I had rather I would sooner I am no match for him; I am very anxious; I am sorry for it; I will make him do it;	to mě těší ! vsadím se, — myslím, nedbám; to je mi jedno; hodlám, odhodlal jsem se, nejsem s to; nemohu to vystát (vy- státí); mohu být bez toho; zalíbilo se mi to; nemám s tím co dělat; měl jsem s ním hádku; } raději bych já s něho nejsem; mám starost;*) — tuze rád bych**) lituju toho; já ho donutím;	tǝ myě ʹēshee! fǝdʹeem sě, — misleem, nědbám; tǝ yě mi yednǝ hodlám, ǝdhodlal sem sě, neysem tǝǝ; němǝhǔ tǝ vistát; mǝhǔ beet bes tǝhǝ; zǎleebilǝ sě mi tǝ; němám sʹeem tsǝ dʹelǎt; myěll sem sñim hádkǔ; rǎdʹey bikh yǎ sñěho neysem; mám stǎrošt; — toozě rád bikh; litǔyǔ tǝhǝ; yǎ hǝ dǝnǔʹeem;

*) When it means an anxiety, care or suspense about something.

**) When it means an impatience to do or to know something.

I will see you paid;
I am in no hurry;
I must be off;
I think much of him;
if you please;
indeed;
it is all over;
it is of no use;

it is none of your business;
it is your turn;
it is a bargain;
it is a pity;
it grew into a habit;
it wears well (of a dress
or stuff);

Keep still!
keep in line!
Let it go: — let go!
let me alone;
let me in;
let me know;
look here;
look out!
Mind you;
No doubt; — no matter;
no matter how it is;
no matter who it is;
never mind;

postarám se o váš plat;
nemám na spěch;
musím pryč;
já si ho moc vážím;
prosím; — račte;
opravdu; — skutečně;
je po všem;
není to nic platné
(meaning: it will do
no good); — není to
k ničemu (meaning:
it is of no service);
vám po tom nic není;

teď je na vás;
zůstane při tom;
to je škoda;
stalo se zvykem;
dobře se nese;

Ticho! — Buďte zticha!
do řady!
nechte to být; — pusťte;
nechte mě;
pusťte mě tam;
dejte mi vědět;
hleďte;
pozor!
pamatujte;
zajisté; — nic nedělá;
ať je to jakkoli;
ať je to kdokoli;
nic nedělá; — co na
tom;

postarám se o vášh plăt;
němám nă spyěkh;
mŭseem prich;
yá si hŭ mots v.ížeem;
proseem; — ráchtě;
oprăvdŭ; skŭtechňě;
yě pofshem;
neyňi tŭ ňits plătne; —
neyňi tŭ kňichěmŭ;

vám pŭ tŭm ňits neyňi;
teď yě nă váss;
zoostăně prshutŭm;
tŭ yě shkŭďŭ;
stălo sě zwikem;
dobrshě sě nessě;

t'ikhŭ! — būďtě st'ikhă!
dŭ rshădy!
nekhtě tŭ beet! — pŭstě!
nekhtě myě;
pŭstě myě tŭm;
deytě mi vyěďet;
hleďtě;
pŭzor!
pămătŭytě;
zăyistě; ňits nĕďělă;
ăť yě tŭ yăckŭli;
ăť yě tŭ gdŭkoli;
ňits nĕďělă; — tsŭ nă
tŭm;

not yet; — not at all;	ještě ne, — dokonce ne;	<i>yeshťě ně; — dōkontsě ně;</i>
now and then;	časem, — chvílemi;	<i>chāssem; — khwееlemi</i>
now we are even;	ted' jsme kvit;	<i>ted' smě kvit;</i>
Of course;	ovšem; — to se rozumí;	<i>ofshēm; — tō sě rozumee;</i>
on a sudden;	náhle; — z nenadání;	<i>náhlě; zněnadání;</i>
on purpose;	schválně; — naschvál.	<i>skhwálňě; nāskhwál;</i>
on the contrary;	naopak;	<i>nāopak;</i>
on the wing;	v letu;	<i>vletů;</i>
once for all;	jednou na vždy;	<i>yednoů nā vždý;</i>
one by one;	po jednom; — jeden za druhým;	<i>pō yědnom; — yěden zā drůheem;</i>
Piece by piece;	po kusu;	<i>pō kūsů;</i>
plenty time!	dost času!	<i>dost chāsů!</i>
Send me word;	zkažte mi;	<i>skāshtě me;</i>
served him right!	dobře tak!	<i>dobrshě tāk!</i>
Take care!	pozor! — dejte pozor!	<i>pōzor! — deytě pōzor!</i>
the more the better;	čím víc tím líp;	<i>cheem veets vееm leep;</i>
the other day;	onehdy;	<i>ōněhdy;</i>
the time is up;	čas prošel;	<i>chāss proshell;</i>
that's it! — that will do;	to je to! — to je dost;	<i>tō yě tō; — tō yě dost;</i>
that's right!	to dostačí;	<i>tō dōstāchee;</i>
that is out of my way;	to je dobře!	<i>tō yě dobrshě!</i>
they like to show off;	to je mi z ruky;	<i>tō yě me z rŭky;</i>
to be short about it;	rádi se ukazují;	<i>rād'i sě ŭkāzŭyee;</i>
to be sure!	krátce řečeno;	<i>krātsě rshěchěňō;</i>
to call and see, (to pay a visit);	zajisté!	<i>zāyisté!</i>
to find fault;	navštívit;	<i>nāfshvēevit;</i>
to get rid (of something);	vytýkat;	<i>vyteekāt;</i>
to give a blowing;	zbavit se (čeho);	<i>zbāvit sě;</i>
to come about;	vymluvit;	<i>vymlŭvit;</i>
to no purpose;	státí se;	<i>stát'ī sě;</i>
	zbytečně,	<i>zbytěchňě;</i>

Well?— Very well.
well to do, well off;
what of that? — what
does it matter?
what is the matter?

what is the question?

what is the matter with
you?

what next?

what will become of
us?

we had better go;

we had better go and
see;

**nuže?— dobře;
zámožný,
co na tom? co z toho?**

**co se děje? (i. e. what
is happening)?**

oč se jedná? oč běží?

co je vám?

co dále?

**co z nás bude? co se s
námi stane?**

abysme raději šli;

**abysme se raději podí-
vali (i. e. šli podívat);**

*nůžě?— důbrshě;
zámožnee;
tsō nā tom? tsō stōhō?*

tsō sě d'ěyě?

*ōch sě yedná?—ōch byě-
žee?*

tsō yě vām?

tsō dálě?

*tsō znáss būdě? tsō sě
snámi stāně?*

ābysmě rād'ěy shli;

*ābysmě sě rād'ěy po-
d'eevāli;*

You are right;
you are wrong,
you are mistaken;
you are late;
you are safe;
you are gone up!
you are welcome to it;

year by year;

you must not find fault;

you ought to be glad;

— you ought to be
gone;

máte pravdu;

{ mejlíte se;

jdete pozdě;

jste v tom dobře;

s vámi je konec!

**venzte si to; — přeju
vám to;**

rok co rok;

nesmíte dělat výčitky;

měl byste být (or býti)

**rád;— měl byste být
pryč;**

mátě prāvdu;

meyletě sě;

dětě pozd'ě;

stě flom důbrshě;

svāmi yě kōnets!

*ventě si tō; — prshěyū
vām tō;*

rōk tsō rōk;

nesmeetě d'ělāt veechitky

m'yell bystě beet rád; —

m'yell bystě beet prich.

PART III.

Bohemian conversation.

Note 1. In the following conversations we shall invariably observe the common rule of politeness, which requires the use of the personal pronoun **vy** (you) in addressing another person. Hence all verbs employed in the same will appear in the second person plural (for instance: **jste, máte**, (you are, you have), and not in the second person singular **jsi***), **máš**, (thou art, thou hast), which is properly confined to familiar or very intimate intercourse, as fully set forth in Section 9, Part I; otherwise the use of the second person singular (**ty**, thou) is out of place and in fact vulgar, although freely indulged in by some ill-informed or ill-bred persons among the Bohemians in America.

Throughout these conversations we give the Bohemian pronunciation in full**). It is true that the student, having advanced so far, may be supposed to be able to pronounce every word and to read Bohemian without difficulty; but the pronouncing column will nevertheless continue to be an aid, especially welcome in such cases as may appear to be somewhat obscure and doubtful.

*) In common discourse we frequently hear **ty jseš**, *ty sěsh*, in place of **ty jsi**. — **Ty jseš velký**, *ty sěsh velkee*, thou art tall. — **Jseš rád** (instead of **jsi rád**)? *sěsh rád?* art thou glad? — **Jseš zdrav**, *sesh zdráf?* (f. **jseš zdráva**? *sesh zdrávě?* art thou well? — **Jseš hotov**? *sěsh hōtof?* (f. **jseš hotova**? *sěsh hōtvě?*) art thou ready?

**) The rules given in Sections 2 and 4, Part I, are supposed to have been thoroughly digested and practiced by the student, as well as the forty introductory lessons contained in Part II. Unless that is done, it will be useless and disappointing to proceed with this eminently practical part of our Bohemian Course.

In regard to the pronunciation of Bohemian infinitives (for instance: *míti*, to have; *činiti*, to do; *dělati*, to make) we again remind the student of the explanation given in Note 1, Lesson XI. In the pronouncing column of these conversations we shall as a rule follow the colloquial custom of dropping the final *i*, to simplify matters and to present the sentences as they are generally heard in actual intercourse.

The student will always bear in mind that Bohemian orthography and pronunciation are on the whole governed by the rule which appears to be the ideal of many would-be reformers of English orthography, namely:

A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters. —

In regard to capital letters the rules in Bohemian are the same as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from names of nations or countries are not written with a capital letter; for example: English, Bohemian, European. *anglický, český, evropský* (*ānglitskee, cheskee, ēvropskee*).

Bohemian and English.

ČEŠTINA a ANGLIČINA.

The Bohemian language;—the Bohemian tongue.	Česká řeč; — český jazyk.	<i>chesská rshěch;—chess-kee yāzyk.</i>
Do you know Bohemian? — do you speak Bohemian?	Umíte česky? — mluvíte česky?	<i>ūmeetě chesske? — mlūveetě chesske?</i>
Yes, I speak Bohemian well.	Ano, mluvím česky dobře.	<i>āň, mlūveem chesske dōbrshě.</i>
Do you speak English?	Mluvíte anglicky?	<i>mlūveetě ānglitske?</i>
Perfectly; — a little; — not much.	Dokonale; — trochu; — ne mnoho.	<i>dōkōňālě; — trokhū; — ně mnōhō.</i>
Do you understand English? — I do.	Rozumíte anglicky? — Rozumím.	<i>rozūmeetě ānglitske? — rozūmeem.</i>

In America everybody has to know English.	V Americe každý má uměti*) anglicky.	<i>vāmeritsě každee má ůmyet ānglitske.</i>
I am learning English.	Učím se anglicky.	<i>ŭcheem sě ānglitske.</i>
Do you learn Bohemian?	Učíte se česky?	<i>ŭcheetě sě chesske?</i>
I want to learn Bohemian.	Chci se učiti česky.	<i>khtsi sě ŭchit chesske.</i>
I want to know (i. e. to acquire) Bohemian.	Chci uměti česky.	<i>khtsi ůmyet chesske.</i>
I would like to learn Bohemian.	Rád bych učil se česky.	<i>rád bikh ŭchil sě chesske.</i>
I would like to know Bohemian.	Rád bych uměl česky.	<i>rád bikh ůmyell chesske.</i>
I must learn (i. e. acquire) Bohemian.	Musím se naučiti česky.	<i>mŭseem sě nāŭchit chesske.</i>
Yes, do learn Bohemian	Ano, naučte se česky.	<i>āno, nāŭchte sě chesske</i>
I am learning Bohemian.	Učím se česky.	<i>ŭcheem sě chesske.</i>
How long have you been learning**) Bohemian?	Jak dlouho učíte se česky?	<i>yāk dloŭhō ŭcheetě sě chesske?</i>
I have been learning Bohemian since last year.	Učím se česky od lon-ska.	<i>ŭcheem sě chesske od lonskā.</i>
How long did you learn English?	Jak dlouho učil jste se anglicky?	<i>yāk dloŭhō ŭchil stě sě ānglitske?</i>
I learned (or: I was learning) English one year.	Učil jsem se anglicky rok.	<i>ŭchil sem sě ānglitske rōk.</i>

*) **Míti** (to have) often in connection with another verb signifies obligation or necessity, the same as in English: **Mám uměti**, I have to know, I am obliged or expected to know: **mám jíti**, I have to go; — **má uměti**, he has to know; **každý má uměti**, everybody has to know.

) The present tense in Bohemian is also used for the English perfect tense: **(jak dlouho) učíte se, — (how long) have you been learning. See second foot-note on page 98.

I learned (i. e. acquired) English in one year.

To learn English is not difficult.

Neither is Bohemian.

How soon shall I learn Bohemian?

If you will be (or if you are) diligent, you will learn it soon.

About how soon?

In a few months.

I have been learning Bohemian only two months, and already I know a good deal.

I am getting along well.

Already I understand nearly all.

It is not difficult; — it is easy.

Only plenty of exercise! then you make good progress.

Do you understand Bohemian?

I understand a little.

I understand already a good deal.

I understand already nearly all.

Do you understand German?

Naučil jsem se anglicky za rok.

Ěnaučiti se anglicky není těžké.

Česky také ne.

Jak brzo naučím se česky?

Budete-li pilný, naučíte se brzo.

Jak brzo asi?

Za pár měsíců.

Učím se česky teprve dva měsíce, a už umím hezky.

Jde to dobře. *)

Už rozumím skoro všechno.

Není to těžké; — je to lehké.

Jen hodně cviku! pak to jde*)!

Rozumíte česky?

Rozumím trochu.

Rozumím už hodně.

Rozumím už hnedle všechno.

Rozumíte německy?

nāučil sem se ānglitske zā rōk.

nāūchit se ānglitske neyñi tēshké.

chesske také ně.

yāk b^erzo nāūcheem se chesske?

būdětě li pilnee, nāūcheetě se b^erzō.

yāk b^erzō āsi?

zā pár myēseetsoo.

*ūcheem se chesske tep^erf
dwā myēseetsē, ā ūsh
ūmeem hesske.*

dě tō dobrshē.

*ūsh rozūmeem skōrō
fshētskō.*

*neyñi tō tēshké; — yē
tō lehké.*

*yen hodñē tswikū! pāk
tō dě!*

rozūmeetě chesske?

rozūmeem trokhū.

rozūmeem ūsh hodñē.

*rozūmeem ūsh hnedlē
fshētsko.*

rozūmeetě ñēmetske?

*) **Jde to dobře;** *literally:* it goes well. **Pak to jde;** then it goes.

I do not.—I understand a little bit.

Do you know (how) to write Bohemian?

Not yet; but I shall learn it.

I shall know (it) soon.

I must know both to read and to write Bohemian.

You will learn that easily.

I expect to learn it in half a year.

Why does not John learn English?

He is going to learn;—he must learn it well.

When will he commence to learn?

Shortly.

My neighbor's boy speaks English perfectly and understands also Latin.

Annie is learning to read and write Bohemian.

Have you a Bohemian newspaper? — lend me it.

Lend me a Bohemian book.

What book? — Any book.

Nerozumím. — Rozumím něco málo.

Umíte psát po česku?

Ještě ne; ale budu se učit.

Budu uměti brzo.

Musím uměti čísti a psát po česku.

To se naučíte snadno.

Hodlám se to naučiti za půl leta.

Proč se Jan neučí anglicky?

On se bude učit;—musí se naučiti dobře.

Kdy se začne učit?

Co nevidět.

Sousedův hoch mluví anglicky dokonale a rozumí také latinsky.

Anna učí se česky čísti a psát.

Máte české noviny? — půjčte mi je.

Půjčte mi českou knihu.

Jakou? — Jakoukoli.

něrozůmeem — rozůmeem nětsō málō.

ůmeete psát pō chesskū?

yeshťě ně; ālē būdū se ůchit.

būdū ůmyět b^e rzō.

můseem ůmyet cheest i psát pō chesskū.

tō sě năŭcheetě snădnō.

hodlám sě tō năŭchit ză pool letă.

prōch sě yăn něŭchee ānglitske?

ōn se būdē ůchit;—můsee sě năŭchit dobrshě.

gdy sě zăchně ůchit?

tsō nēvidět.

soŭsedoof hōkh mlŭvee ānglitske dōkonălě a rozůmee tākē lăťinske.

ănă ůchee sě chesske cheest a psát.

mătě chesské nōviny?—pŭchtě me yě.

pŭchtě me chesskoŭ kňihŭ.

yăkoŭ? — yăkoŭkoli.

This is Bohemian, is it not?	Tohle je česky, není?	<i>töhlě yě chesske, neyñi?</i>
What is it in English? — Tell me it in English.	Co je to po anglicku? — Povězte mi to po anglicku.	<i>tsö yě tō pō ānglitsku? — Pövyěžtē me tē pō ānglitskū.</i>
How is it in English? I don't know how to pronounce it.	Jak je to po anglicku? Nevím jak to vysloviti.	<i>yāk yě tō pō ānglitskū? něveem yāk tō vislōvit.</i>
How is it in Bohemian? How do you call it in Bohemian? — how in English?	Jak je to po česku? Jak se to jmenuje česky? — jak anglicky?	<i>yāk yě tō pō chesskū? yāk sě tō menūyě chesske? — yāk ānglitske?</i>
Speak Bohemian; — speak Bohemian with me; — speak only Bohemian.	Mluvte česky: — mluvte se mnou česky; — mluvte jenom česky.	<i>mlūftě chesske; — mlūftě sě mnoū chesske; — mlūftě yěnom chesske.</i>
* Speak as you wish. Do you like to speak Bohemian? — Why do you not speak English?	Mluvte jak chcete. Mluvíte rád česky? — Proč nemluvíte anglicky?	<i>mlūftě yāk khtsētě. mlūveetě rád chesske? — proč němlūveetě ānglitske?</i>
Because I cannot; — because I know it only a little. — Do speak; you will get along.	Protože neumím; — protože umím jen málo. — Jen mluvte, půjde to.	<i>protōžě něūmeem; — protōžě ūmeem yen mālō, — yen mlūftě, půjdē tō.</i>
Speak English or Bohemian, as you please; — I understand both;	Mluvte anglicky nebo česky, jak chcete; — rozumím obojí.	<i>mlūftě ānglitske něbō chesske, yāk khtsētě; — rozūmeem ōbōyee.</i>
* You speak Bohemian very well.	Vy mluvíte česky tuze dobře.	<i>ve mlūveetě chesske toožē dobrshě.</i>
* Speak slowly, that I may understand you;*)	Mluvte pomalu, abych vám rozuměl.	<i>mlūftě pomālū, ābikh vām rozūmyell.</i>

*) **Abych, abys, aby**, that I should, that thou shouldst, that he should (see Lesson XXXVI), also signifies: "that I may, that thou mayest, that he (she, it) may". Hence we translate: **abych rozuměl**, that I may understand; — **abych rozuměl vám**, or **abych vám rozuměl**, "that I may understand you".

Concerning the freedom of transposition of words in Bohemian sentences see Note 2, Lesson VI.

Did you understand me? — I did not; repeat it slowly.

Do not speak so fast; I should not understand you.

Do you know what I said? could you understand?

I could understand a little;—now I understood well.

When you don't understand, tell me; — I want to teach you.

I am glad of that; — if you will teach me, I shall soon know.

In a quarter of a year I shall understand all.

Do I pronounce it right? — did I pronounce it right?

You have a good pronunciation; — you pronounce everything right.

That was not right; see here; — I will pronounce it slowly.

Is that right?

Once again!

That's it;— now it was right; first-rate.

Very well! you make quick progress.

Rozuměl jste mi? — Nerozuměl; opakujte to pomalu.

Nemluvte tak rychle; já bych vám nerozuměl.

Víte co jsem povídal? — porozuměl jste?

Porozuměl jsem trošku; — teď jsem rozuměl dobře.

Když nerozumíte, řekněte mi; — já chci vás učit.

To jsem rád; — budete-li mě učit, budu brzo umět.

Za čtvrt leta budu všemu rozumět.

Vyslovuju to dobře? — vyslovil jsem to dobře?

Máte dobrou výslovnost; — vyslovujete všechno dobře.

To nebylo dobře; dejte pozor; — já to vyslovím pomalu.

Je to dobře?

Ještě jednou!

Tak; — teď to bylo dobře; tuze dobře.

Výborně! — děláte rychlý pokrok.

rozumýell stě me? — něrozumýell; -- ōpākūytě tō pomālū.

němlūftě tāk rikhlē: yá bikh vām něrozumýell.

veetě tsō sem poveedāl? — pōrozumýell stě?

pōrozumýell sem troshku; — tēď sem rozumýell dōbrshē.

gdīž něrozūmeetě, rshēk-ñetě me; — yá khtsi vās ūchit.

tō sem rád; — būdětě-li myě ūchit, būdū b^e rzō ūmyēt.

zā shtw^ert letā būdū fshēmū rozumyet

vislovūyū tō dōbrshē? — vislovil sem tō dōbrshē?

máte dōbroū veeslōvnost; — vislovūyetě fshētskō dōbrshē.

tō něbillō dōbrshē; dey-tě pōzor; — yá tō visloveem pomālū.

yě tō dōbrshē?

yeshťě yednoū!

tāk; — tēď tō billō dōbrshē; toozě dōbrshē.

veeborñě! — d'ělátě rikhlee pōkrok.

I wish I had more opportunity to speak Bohemian.	Rád bych měl více příležitosti mluvit česky.	<i>rád bikh m'yell veetsě prsheelěžitost'i mluvit chesske.</i>
--	---	--

VOCABULARY.

Slovo , n. <i>slovŏ</i> , the word	učiti se , <i>ŭchit sě</i> , to learn, to be learning;
slovník , m. <i>slovňeek</i> , the dictionary	neučiti se , <i>něŭchit sě</i> , not to learn.
slovníček , m. *) <i>slovňeehek</i> , the vocabulary	naučiti se , <i>năŭchit sě</i> , to learn or acquire (something);
vysloviti , <i>vislovit</i> , to pronounce	rozuměti , <i>rozŭmyet</i> , to understand;
vyslovím , <i>vislovím</i> , I shall pronounce	rozumím , <i>rozŭmeem</i> , I understand
vyslovovati , <i>vislovŏvăt</i> , to be pronouncing;	porozuměti , <i>pŏrozŭmyet</i> , to understand; or "to catch the meaning":
vyslovuju (or vyslovuji), <i>vislovŭyŭ</i> I am pronouncing;	začnouti , <i>zăchnout</i> , } to begin, to
výslovnost , f. <i>veeslovnost</i> , the pronunciation;	začítí , <i>zăcheet</i> , } commence;
čeština , f. <i>chesht'ínă</i> , the Bohemian language;	začne , <i>zăchně</i> , will commence;
angličina , f. <i>ănglichină</i> , the English language;	půjčiti , <i>pŭychit'i</i> , (colloquially: <i>pŭchit</i>), to lend;
pokrok , m. <i>pŏkrok</i> , progress;	půjčte mi , <i>pŭchtě me</i> , lend me;
příležitost , f. <i>prsheelěžitost</i> , opportunity;	povězte mi , <i>po-vyěztě me</i> , tell me.
rád bych měl , <i>rád bikh m'yell</i> , I wish I had (or: I would like to have);	jak se jmenuje , <i>yăk sě menŭyě</i> , how is — he, she, it — called.
hezky , <i>hesske</i> , } a good deal;	těžký , <i>ă, é, těshkee</i> , difficult, hard;
hodně , <i>hodně</i> , }	rychlý , <i>ă, é, rikhlee</i> } fast;
něco málo , <i>ňetso málŏ</i> , a little bit;	rychle , adv. <i>rikhlě</i> }
	pomalů , <i>pomălŭ</i> , slowly;
	hnedle , <i>hnedlě</i> , nearly, (also "soon", "quick");
	co nevidět , <i>tsŏ něvid'et</i> , in no time, shortly;

*) **Slovníček** is simply a diminutive of **slovník**, meaning "a little or short dictionary". See Note 1, Lesson XVIII.

trošku, (same as trochu), <i>trøshkũ</i> , a little;	dokonalý, á, é, <i>døkonãlee</i> , perfect. dokonale*), <i>døkonãlě</i> , perfectly;
snadný, á, é, <i>snãdnee</i> , easy.	výborný, á, é, <i>veebornee</i> }
snadno, <i>snãdnø</i> , easily;	výborně, adv. <i>veeborně</i> } first-rate.

Greetings and compliments.

POZDRAVY A POKLONY.

Good morning, Sir! (gentlemen, — Mad- am,—Miss — ladies).	Dobré jitro**), pane! (pánové, — paničko, — slečno, — dámy).	<i>døbré ye-trø, pãně!</i> (<i>pá- nøvé, — pãñichkø, — slěchnø, — dámy, — slěchny</i>).
Good afternoon, Mr. Brown !	Dobré odpoledne, pane Braune!***)	<i>døbré odpolědně, pãně Browně!</i>
Good evening, Mrs. Brown !	Dobry večer, paní Braunová!	<i>døbree vëcher, pãñi Brownøvá!</i>
My compliments!	Má úcta !	<i>má ootstã!</i>
Good night, doctor!	Dobrou noc, pane dok- tore ⁴)!	<i>døbroũ nots, pãně dok- torě!</i>
Good bye! — Farewell! Farewell!	S bohem !—Na zdar ! Mějte se dobře !	<i>sbøhem!—nã zdãr! myěy-tě sě døbrshě!</i>

*) See Note 2, Lesson XXX, about the derivation of adverbs from adjectives. In this case, as well as in some others, the final *y* changes into a simple *e*: dokonalý, — dokonale.

Mostly it changes into an *ě*: výborný, — výborně; and sometimes into an *o*: snadný, — snadno. This, however, is rather optional, as we may equally say: snadně, *snãdñě*, (easily).

**) In common conversation very often abbreviated: dobrytro ! *døbritro!*

***) It is proper to use the vocative case in addressing a person; but in ordinary discourse the proper name is generally left in the nominative: dobré jitro, pane Brauu !

4) We cannot say in English “Mr. doctor”, two titles in this case being incompatible; but it is customary in Bohemian to say: pane dokto-re, pane professore, or (in common parlance) pane doktor, pane professor, leaving the title in the nominative case. “Mr. editor”, — pane redaktore, *pãně redãktorě*, — is an analogous expression in English.

Good luck to you!

I wish you good luck!

I wish you Godspeed!

A happy journey!

A happy return!

To drink one's health.

Your health!

How do you do? How are you?

How are you getting along?

Very well, thank you.

How is everything with you?

Tolerably well.

How is your health?

Are you well? Are you in good health?

I am pretty well, thank you.

I am all right.

I feel very well.

I am perfectly well.

And how are you?

I am also well, thank you.

You are looking well.

I am very well; I cannot complain.

How is your wife (your lady)?

She is well, thank you.

How is your family?

They are all well.

Na zdar vám !

{ Přeju vám štěstí!

Šťastnou cestu !

Šťastný návrat !

Píti na zdraví.

Na vaše zdraví !

Jak se máte?

Jak se vám vede?

Tuze dobře. děkuju.

Jak se vede?

Projde to. — Ujde to.

Jak vám zdraví slouží?

Jste zdravý?

Je mi dost dobře, děkuju.

Mám se hezky.

Je mi tuze dobře.

Jsem docela zdravý.

A jak vy se máte?

Taky dobře, děkuju.

Vypadáte dobře.

Mám se výborně; nemohu stěžovat.

Jak se má vaše žena (vaše paní)?

Dobře, děkuju.

Jak se má vaše rodina?

Jsou všichni zdraví.

nā zdār vām!

prshěyū vām shťěstí!

shťästnoū tsěstū!

shťästnee návrat!

peeṭi nā zdrāvee.

nā vāshě zdrāvee!

yāk sě mātě?

yāk sě vām vědě?

toozě dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.

yāk sě vědě?

proyde tō, — ūyde tō.

yāk vām zdrāveesloūžee?

stě zdráf?

*yě me dost dōbrshě, d'ě-
kūyū.*

mám sě hesske.

ye me toozě dōbrshě.

sem dotsělā zdráf.

ā yāk ve sě mātě?

tāke dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.

vīpādātē dōbrshě.

*mám sě veeborñe; nemō-
hū stěžōvāt.*

*yāk sě má vāshě ženā
(pāñi)?*

dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.

yāk sě má vāshērod'ina?

soū fshikhñi zdrāvi.

I am glad of it.	To mě těší.	<i>tõ myě tēshee.</i>
I am glad to hear it.	To rád slyším.	<i>tõ rád slisheem.</i>
That is right.	To je dobře.	<i>tõ yě dõbrshě.</i>
I am very glad to see you (or: to meet you).	Jsem tuze rád že vás vidím.	<i>sem toozě rád že váss vid'eem.</i>
I have not seen you for a long time.	Neviděl jsem vás už dávno.	<i>nevid'el sem váss ůsh dāvno.</i>
I would like to see you often.	Rád bych viděl vás často.	<i>rád bikh vid'el váss chāsstõ.</i>

My regards!	Že pozdravuju!	<i>žě pozdrāvũyũ!</i>
Greet him (her, them)! — Give him my regards.	Pozdravujte ho (ji, je)!	<i>pozdrāvũyte hõ (ye, yě)!</i>
Give (him, etc.) my best regards!	Vyřid'te mé pozdravení.	<i>virshiđ'tě mé pozdrāvě-ñĩ*)</i>
My best regards!	Pěkné pozdravení!	<i>pyěkně pozdrāvěñĩ!</i>
Give my regards to all.	Pozdravujte ode mne všechny!	<i>pozdrāvũytě õdě myě fshětske!</i>
Remember me to your wife. — My best respects to your wife.	Mou úctu vaší choti!	<i>moũ ootstũ vāshee khõ-t'i!</i>
My best regards to your wife!	Pěkné pozdravení manželce!	<i>pyěkně pozdrāvěñĩ mǎnželtsě!</i>
My compliments to your sister!	Mou poklonu vaší sestře!	<i>moũ poklõnũ vāshee sě-strshě!</i>
Good bye!	Poroučím se!	<i>poroũcheem sě!</i>
My best respects!	Pěkné poručení!	<i>pyěkně porũcheñĩ!</i>

*) Nouns ending in **ní** are neutre (see **znamení**, Note 2, Lesson XIV). The final **í** has the long sound of *ee*. But in common discourse the length of the sound is immaterial and it is usually shortened; hence we represent it in these conversations by a simple **ñĩ**, instead of **ñee**.

VOCABULARY.

Pánbůh (i. e. Pán Bůh) <i>pánbooh</i> , the Lord God;	poklona , f. <i>pöklonä</i> , compliment, bow;
jítro , n. same as ráno), <i>yítrö</i> , the morning;	úcta , f. <i>ootsta</i> , respect;
pozdrav , m. <i>pozdräf</i> }	navrat , m. <i>návrät</i> , return;
pozdravení , n. <i>pözdrävěni</i> }	zdraví , n. <i>zdrävee</i> , health;
pozdraviti , <i>pozdrävit</i> , to greet (once);	choť , m. & f. <i>khòť</i> , the spouse, hus- band or wife;
pozdravovati , <i>pozdrävövat</i> , to greet; to send greetings;	stěžovati , <i>stežovät</i> , to complain; vypadati , <i>vipädät</i> , to look.

A call.

NÁVŠTĚVA.

Give me a call. — Call and see me.	Navštivte mě. — Přijď- te ke mě.	<i>näfsht'iftě myě. —</i> <i>Prshid'te*) kě myě.</i>
Call at my house.	Přijďte ke mě domu.	<i>prshid'tě kě myě dōmū.</i>
Call at my store.	Přijďte ke mě do krá- mu.	<i>prshid'tě kě myě dō krá-</i> <i>mū.</i>
Call at my office	Přijďte do mé písárny.	<i>prshid'tě dō mé peesár-</i> <i>ny.</i>
Did you call at my place?	Byl jste u mě?	<i>bill stě ů myě?</i>
I called at your house, but nobody was at home.	Byl jsem u vás, ale žádný nebyl doma.	<i>bill sem ů váss, äľě žäd-</i> <i>nee něbill dōmā.</i>
Call again.	Přijďte zas.	<i>prshid'tě zäss</i>
And when? — Any time.	A kdy? — kdykoli.	<i>ä gdy? — gdykoli.</i>
When will you be at home.	Kdy budete doma?	<i>gdy būdětě ädōmā?</i>
To-morrow surely.	Zejtra** jistě.	<i>zeyträ yi-tě.</i>
When will you call and see me?	Kdy mě navštívíte?	<i>gdy myě näfsht'iveetě?</i>

*) Colloquially this is still more condensed and sounds like *prshi-tě*.**) **Zejtra** or **zítra** (to-morrow), derived from **zjitra**, **zajitra**, next morning.

I shall give you a call
to-morrow or day af-
ter to-morrow.

Yes, do call; I shall be
expecting you.

Somebody is knocking.
— Some one rings.

Go and see who that
is.

Go and open the door.
It is some gentleman,
— some stranger.

It is Mr. Arbes.

Let him come in.

Come in!—Walk in!

Come in, if you please.
Sit down.

Take a seat, if you
please.

Please take a seat.

Here is a seat.

Stay with us to dinner.

Excuse me, I cannot;
I have no time.

Are you in a hurry?

Yes, I am in a hurry.
Where do you hurry?

I have an appointment
with Mr. Coleman.

Don't be in such a hur-
ry; wait a little.

Indeed I cannot; I shall
soon come again

Do so, if you please!

Please, come again.

Navštívím vás zejtra
nebo pozejtrí.

Ano, navštívte; budu
vás očekávat.

Někdo klepá. — Někdo
zvoní.

Jděte se podívat kdo to
je.

Jděte otevřít.

Je to nějaký pán, — ně-
jaký cizinec.

Je to pan Arbes.

Ať vejde!

Dále!

Vejděte, prosím!

Sedněte si.

Posad'te se, prosím.

Račte se posaditi.

Tady je židle.

Zůstaňte u nás na oběd.

Odpus'te, nemohu;
nemám čas.

Máte na spěch?

Ano, mám na spěch.

Kam spěcháte?

Mám schůzi s panem
Kolmanem.

Nespěchejte tak; poč-
kejte trošku.

Opravdu nemohu; při-
jdu brzo zas.

Prosím, přijďte!

Račte přijít zas.

*nāfshtīveem vāss zey-
trā něbō pozeytrshee.*

*ānō, nāfshtīvtě; būdū
vāss ōchěkāvāt*

*ñegdō klěpá. — ñegdō
zvoněe.*

*d'tetě sě pod'eevāt gdō tō
yě.*

d'tetě ōtēvrsheet.

*yě tō ñeyākee pán, — ñe-
yākee tsizinets.*

yě tō pán Arbes.

āť veydě!

dálě!

veyd'tetě, proseem?

sedñetě si.

posād'tě sě, proseem.

rāchtě sě posād'tit.

tādy yě židlě.

zoo tañte ůnāssnāobyēd

*odpūstě, nemōhū; ne-
mām chāss.*

mátě na spyěkh?

ānō, mām nā spyěkh.

kām spyěkhátě?

mām skhoozi spānem

Kolmānem.

*nespyěkheyťě tāk; poch-
keyťě troshkū.*

oprāvdu němōhū;

prshiydū b^erzō zāss

proseem, prshid'tě!

rāchtě prshiyēet zāss.

Drop in, when you have time.	Zaskočte sem, když máte čas.	<i>zaskochťe sem, gdyż máte čas.</i>
I will come here as soon as I have time.	Přijdu sem, jakmile budu mít čas.	<i>prshiydŭ sem, yăkmilě būdŭ meet chäss.</i>
Good day!	Poroučím se!	<i>poroŭcheem sě!</i>

VOCABULARY.

Návštěva , f. <i>náfshťevă</i> , a call, a visit;	cizinec , m. <i>tsizinet</i> s, a stranger; -
navštívití , <i>náfshťevit</i> , to visit;	spěch , n. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;
očekávati , <i>ochěkávăt</i> , to await;	schůze , f. <i>skhoozě</i> , meeting, appointment;
zaskočiti , <i>zăskochit</i> , to drop in;	židle , f. <i>židlě</i> , the chair;
poroučeti , <i>poroŭchet</i> , to command;	klepati , <i>klepăt</i> , to knock;
poroučeti se , <i>poroŭcheti sě</i> , to take leave;	zvoniti , <i>zivoňit</i> , to ring;
poroučím se , <i>poroŭcheem sě</i> , good day!	otevřítí , <i>otěvrsheet</i> , to open;
sednouti si , <i>sednoŭt si</i> } to sit down.	odpustiti , <i>odpŭstīt</i> , to excuse, to forgive.
posaditi se , <i>posăďit sě</i> } to take a place;	

Time.

ČAS.

Day and night.	Den a noc.	<i>den ŏ nots.</i>
I worked all day.	Pracoval jsem celý den.	<i>prătsovăl sem tsělee den.</i>
I did not sleep all night.	Ěspal jsem celou noc.	<i>nespăl sem tsěloŭ nots.</i>
I work day and night.	Dělám ve dne v noci.	<i>dělám vě dně vnotsi.</i>
We sat up late at night.	Seděli jsme dlouho do noci.	<i>sěďeli smě dlouhŏ dŏ notsi.</i>
He came late at night. and wanted a night's lodging.	Přišel pozdě na noc a chtěl nocleh.	<i>prshishell pozďe nă nots a khťel notslěh.</i>
The day was clear, the night was dark.	Den byl jasný; noc byla tmavá.	<i>den bill yăsnee; nots bil-lă tmăvă.</i>
Today, — yesterday.	Dnes, — včera.	<i>dness, — fcheră.</i>
This morning, — this noon, — this evening, — this midnight.	Dnes ráno, — dnes v poledne, — dnes večer, — dnes o půlnoci.	<i>dness ráno, — dness fpoledně, — dness vècher dness o poolnotsi.</i>

This forenoon it rained
— this afternoon it
was fine.

Until evening; — until
morning.

In broad day-light.

To-night he will come
home. — To-night he
came home.

He came last night, —
last evening, —early
in the morning, —late
in the evening, —
about midnight.

Evening before last; —
night before last.

When was it? — Last
night.

When did it happen? —
Night before last.

When shall I take that
medicine?

In the morning, at noon
and at bed-time.

Yesterday was a holi-
day. — Day before
yesterday there was
a fire.

To-morrow I shall
leave; — day after to-
morrow I shall be in
St. Louis.

Dnes dopoledne přelo;
— dnes odpoledne by-
lo hezky.

Až do večera; — až do
rána.

Za bílého dne.

Dnes v noci přijde do-
mu. — Dnes v noci
přišel domu.

Přišel minulou noc, —
včera večer, čas-
ně ráno, — pozdě ve-
čer, — kolem půl-
noci.

Předminulý večer; —
předminulou noc.

Kdy to bylo? — Dnes
v noci.

Kdy se to stalo? — Vče-
ra v noci.

Kdy mám užívat?

Ráno, v poledne a na
noc.

Včera byl svátek. —
Předevčírem hoře-
lo.

Zejtra odjedu; — po-
zejtří budu v St.
Louis.

*dness dōpolednĕp^e rshel-
lō; — dness ōdpoled-
nĕ billō hessky.*

*āsh do věcherā; — āsh
dō rānā.*

zā beclĕhō dnĕ.

*dness vnotsi prshidĕ dō-
mā. — dness vnotsi
prshi-shell dōmā.*

*prshi-shell minūloū nots
— fcherā věcher, —
chassĕne rānō, — pozdĕ
věcher, — kolem pool-
notsi.*

*prshĕd-minūlee věcher; —
prshĕd-minūloū nots,
gdy tō billō? — dness
vnotsi.*

*gdy sĕ tō stālō? — fchĕ-
rā vnotsi.*

gdy mám ůžĕevāt?

*rānō, fpolednĕ ā nā
nots.*

*fcherā bill swátek. —
prshĕdĕ-fcheerem ho-
rshĕlō.*

*zeytrā odyĕdĕ; — po-
zeytrshee būdū v St.
Louis.*

VOCABULARY.

Nocleh, *notslĕh*, a night's lodging;

svátek, *swátek*, a holiday;

státí se, *stát sĕ*, to happen, to occur;

stalo se, *stālō sĕ*, it happened;

stane se, *stānĕ sĕ*, it will happen;

stane-li se, *stānĕ-li sĕ*, if it happens.

jasný, á, é, yássnee , bright, clear;	odjeti, ōdyet , to leave (by some conveyance);
tmavé, á, é, tmávee , dark;	užívati, ůžeevát , to take medicine;
minulý, á, é, minūlee , past, last;	(also "to enjoy").
předminulý, prshéd-minūlee , before last;	

This week I am in good health; — last week I was sick.	Tento týden jsem zdrav;—minulý týden byl jsem nemocen.	<i>tento teeděn sem zdráf; — minūlee teeděn bill sem němotsěn.</i>
The last two weeks I was on the road (i. e. traveling).	Poslední dvě neděle byl jsem na cestách.	<i>posledñee dwyě nēd'elē bill sem nā tsestákh.</i>
Next week I shall again leave.	S neděle zase odjedu.	<i>snēd'elē zāssē odyēdū.</i>
Next week I expect my brother.	Budoucí týden čekám bratra.	<i>būdōūtseeteeděn chekám brātrā.</i>
In two weeks I shall get money; — in five weeks I shall be in Europe.	Za dvě neděle dostanu peníze; — za pět neděl budu v Evropě.	<i>zā dwyě nēd'elē dōstānū peñeezē; — zā pyēt nēd'el būdū vēvropyē.</i>
In how many weeks will you return? — I shall return in about a month.	Za kolik neděl se vrátíte? — Vrátím se asi za měsíc.	<i>zā kolik nēd'el sē vrátēetē? — vrátēem se āsi zā myēseets.</i>
In how many months shall I see you? — In two months;—in five months.	Za kolik měsíců vás uvidím? — za dva měsíce; za pět měsíců.	<i>zā kolik myēseetsoo vāss ůvidēem? — zā dva myēseetsē; — zā pyēt myēseetsoo.</i>
When shall we meet again? — In a quarter	Kdy se sejdeme zas? —Za čtvrt leta,*) za	<i>gdý sē seydemē zāss? — za shtw^ert letā, — zā</i>

*) Ordinarily **leto**, n. means "summer"; but the noun **rok**, m. (the year) has in the plural **leta, let: dvě leta**, two years or "two summers"; **pět let**, five years or "five summers"; etc. See Lesson XIX, and foot-note on page 83.

The same is true of fractions: **čtvrt leta**, *shtw^ert letā*, a quarter of a year; **půl leta**, *pool letā*, half a year; **tři čtvrti leta**, *trshi shtw^ert'i letā*, three quarters of a year.

However, we may also say: **dva roky**, two years; **pět roků**, five years etc. Likewise: **čtvrt roku**, **půl roku**, **tři čtvrti roku**.

of a year,— in half a year, — in a year.
 I shall be here within a year.
 My son has been gone five years;—he writes to me once a year (once in a year, — once yearly).
 In how many years do you expect him?
 In three years,— in six years.
 I think he will arrive shortly, — speedily, — before long.
 In a short time we shall see him.—In a short while we shall be together.
 It is a week since I was in New York.
 It is scarcely two weeks since father was here.
 It will soon be a year since I was in the old country.
 It is very near two years since I sold the farm.
 This day a year (or: a year ago to-day) Otto was here;—four years ago to-day we were together at San Francisco.

půl leta, — za rok.
 Budu zde do dne do roka.
 Syn je pryč pět let; — píše mi jednou do roka (or: jednou za rok, — jednou ročně).
 Za kolik let ho čekáte?
 Za tři leta, — za šest let.
 Myslím že přijede za krátko, — v krátkosti, — za nedlouho.
 Za krátký čas ho uvidíme. — Za krátkou dobu budeme pohromadě.
 Je tomu týden co jsem byl v New Yorku.
 Je tomu sotva dvě neděle, co zde byl otec.
 Bude tomu brzo rok, co jsem byl ve staré vlasti.
 Budou tomu hnedle dvě leta, co jsem prodal farmu.
 Dnes rok byl zde Otto; — dnes čtyry leta byli jsme spolu v San Franciscu.

pool letā, — zā rok.
 būdū zdě dō dně dō rokā.
 syn yě prich pyět let;— peeshě me yednoū do rokā (or: yednoū zā rok, — yednoū rochně).
 zā kolik let hō chekátě?
 zā trshi letā, — zā shěst let.
 misleem že prshiyědě zā krátkō, — fkrátkostī, — zā nedlouhō.
 zā krátkee chāss hō ůviděemě, — zā krátkoū dōbū būdemě pōhromādě.
 yě tōmū teedēn tsō sem bill v New Yorkū.
 yě tōmū sotwā dwyě nēdělě tsō zdě bill otets būdē tōmū b^erzō rōk, tsō sem bill v ē stārē vlāstī.
 būdoū tōmū hnedlě dwyě letā, tsō sem prodāl farmā.
 dness rok bill zde Otto; — dness shtiry lētā billi smē spolu v san-frānciscū.

To-morrow it will be a year since Mary left; two years ago yesterday mother died.

The other week our folks were here.

It is scarcely a week since they left;—it is just a month since they arrived.

It will shortly be a month since it happened.

It is not long since; — it was a short time since; — it was the other day.

How long is it since you have been here?

Day before yesterday it was a year. — It was half a year (last) Sunday. — It will be four months on Monday.—It will be eight months on Tuesday.

When was it?—Wednesday a week; — two weeks ago on Thursday; — a week ago last Friday; — three weeks ago last Saturday.

Zejtra bude rok co Mary odjela; — večera dvě leta matka zemřela.

Onen týden byli tu naši.

Je tomu sotva týden co odjeli;—je tomu zrovna měsíc, co přijeli.

Hnedle bude měsíc co se to stalo.

Je to nedávno; — bylo to nedávno; — bylo to onchdy.

Jak dávno tomu co jste tu?

Přede věirem minul rok. — Minulo půl leta v neděli. — Budou čtyry měsíce v pondělí. Bude osm měsíců v úterý.

Kdy to bylo?—Ve středu týden;—ve čtvrték dvě neděle; — v pátek minul týden; — v sobotu minuly tři neděle.

zeyträ būdě rok tsō Mary od-yellā; — fchě-rā dvoýě letā mātškā zemrshellā.

onen teedēn billi tū nā-shi.

yě tōmū sotwā teedēn tsō od-yelli;—yě tōmū zrovnā myěseets tsō prshi-yelli.

hnedlē būdě myěseets tsō sě tō stālō.

yě tō nedávnō;—billō tō nedávnō; — billō tō ōnehdy.

yāk dávnō tōmū tsō stě tū?

prshēdě fcheerem minūl rok.—minūlō pool lē-tā vněd'eli. — būdoŭ shtiry myěseetsěfpon-d'lee. — būdē osūm myěseetsoo vooteree.

gdy tō billō?—vě strshě dūteedēn;—vě shtw^er tek dvoýě ned'elē; — fpátek minūl teedēn; fsobōtū minūly trshi ned'elē.

Before a year passes we shall be one another's (i. e. man and wife).	Než mine rok budeme svoji.	<i>nesh mině rok, budemě swoyi.</i>
Before two years pass away, all will be over.	Než minou dvě leta, bude po všem.	<i>nesh minou dvě letě, būdě po fshēm.</i>
Will it be long? — It won't be long.	Bude to dlouho? — Ne- bude to dlouho.	<i>būdě tō dloūhō? — nebū- dē tō dloūhō.</i>
Will it last long? — It won't last long.	Bude to dlouho trvati? — Nebude to dlouho trvati.	<i>būdě tō dloūhō t^ervāt? — nebūdē tō dloūhō t^ervāt.</i>
It takes long.—It took long.—It didn't take long.—O yes, it did !	To trvá dlouho. — Tr- valo to dlouho. Ne- trvalo to dlouho. — Ba trvalo ?	<i>tō t^ervá dloūhō — t^ervā lō tō dloūhō. — nēt^er vālō tō dloūhō. — bā t^ervālō!</i>
How soon will it be?— It will be right away. — It is done already.	Jak brzo to bude? — Bude to hned. — Už je to.	<i>yāk b^erzō tō būdē? — bū- dē tō hned. — ůsh yě tō.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Neděle, <i>něd'elě</i> , Sunday	za krátko, <i>zā krátkō</i>	} shortly.
pondělí, <i>pond'ele</i> , Monday	v krátkosti, <i>fkrátkōst'i</i>	
úterý, <i>ootěree</i> , Tuesday	za nedlouho, <i>zā nēdloū- hō</i>	
středa, <i>strshědā</i> , Wednesday	za krátký čas, <i>zā krát- kee chāss</i>	} in a short
čtvrtek, <i>shtw^ertek</i> , Thursday	za krátkou dobu, <i>zā krátkoū dōbū</i>	} time;
pátek, <i>pátek</i> , Friday	denně, <i>děně</i> , daily	
sobota, <i>sōbotā</i> , Saturday	týdně, <i>teedně</i> , weekly	
nedávno, <i>nēdāvnō</i> , not long since	měsíčně, <i>myěseechně</i> , monthly	
jak dávno, <i>yāk dāvnō</i> , how long since	ročně, <i>rochně</i> , yearly.	
co, <i>tsō</i> since	na cestách, <i>nā tsestākh</i> , (literally : "on the roads"), traveling;	
sotva, <i>sotvā</i> , scarcely, hardly	stará vlast, <i>stārā vlāst</i> , the old country.	
budoucí, <i>būdoūtsee</i>		
příští, <i>prsheesh-tēe</i>		
dostati, <i>dostāt</i> , to get, to receive;		

The hour.

HODINA.

Have you a watch? -- -- I have.	Máte hodinky? -- Mám.	mátě hoďinky?—mám.
Does it go right?—It is too slow (i. e. it goes late);—it loses;—it is (it goes) too fast.	Jdou*) dobře? — Jdou pozdě; — pozdí se; -- jdou napřed.	doŭ dobrshě? — doŭ pozďe; — pozďee sě; — doŭ năprshed,
It is a few minutes too late. — It is five min- utes too fast.	Jsou o pár minut po- zadu. — Jsou o pět minut napřed.	Soŭ o pár minŭt poză- dŭ. — Soŭ o pyět minŭt năprshed.
It stopped (literally: it stands).	Stojí. — Zůstaly stá- ti.	stoyee. — zoostăly stát.
It is not wound up. — It was not wound up.	Nejsou nataženy. — Nebyly nataženy.	neysoŭ nătăženy. -- ně- billy nătăženy.
Wind up the watch, — the clock.	Natáhněte hodinky, — hodiny.	nătáhňetě hoďinky. -- hoďiny.
Is that clock right (lit. “does it go right”)?-- I think it is.	Jdou ty hodiny dobře? Myslím že jdou.	doŭ ty hoďiny dŭbrshě? -- mysleem žě doŭ.
What o'clock is it (or: what time is it? — How late is it?	Kolik je hodin? — Jak je pozdě?	kolik yě hoďin? — yăk yě pozďe?
Don't you know what o'clock it is?--I don't know.	Nevíte kolik je hodin? Nevím.	něveetě kolik yě hoďin? — něveem.
See what o'clock it is. — I will see (or look).	Podívejte se kolik je hodin. — Podívám se.	poděeveytě sě kolik yě h.ďin.—poděevám sě
It is one o'clock. — It is a quarter past one.	Je jedna hodina. — Je čtvrt na dvě (or na druhou).	yě yednă hoďină. — yě shtw ^e rt nă dwoyě (nă drŭhoŭ).

*) **Hodinky** (the watch) and **hodiny** (the clock) are plural nouns; consequently the succeeding verb must appear in the plural form: **jdou**, **jsou** (they go, they are). This has already been pointed out in a foot-note on page 137. -- **Hodina**, **hodinka**, in the singular, means: “the hour”, “the small hour”.

It is half past one.—It is a quarter to two,

It is two o'clock — Is it so late already? — Yes, it is two (o'clock) already.

It is past two o'clock— It is five minutes to three. — It is very near three o'clock.

It is past three. — It wants ten minutes to four.

At what o'clock shall we go?—We shall go at a quarter past four.

That is too soon; we shall wait till half past four. Very well, then.

We shall go at five o'clock. — All right.

We started at five o'clock in the afternoon.

Did you come in time? — Didn't you come late?

It was time enough; there was no hurry.

We came there a few minutes after six.

We arrived there before seven, — after seven, — early in the

Je půl druhé. — Jsou tři čtvrtě na dvě (or na druhou).

Jsou dvě hodiny. — Už je tak pozdě? — Ano, už jsou dvě.

Jsou dvě hodiny pryč. — Je pět minut do třech. — Jsou hnedle tři hodiny.

Jsou tři pryč. — Chybí deset minut do čtyrech.

V kolik hodin půjdeme? — Půjdeme ve čtvrt na pět.

To je tuze brzo; počkáme do půl páté. — Tak teda.

Půjdeme v pět hodin. — Třeba.

Vyšli jsme o páté hodině odpoledne.

**Přišli jste v čas? — Ne—
přišli jste pozdě?**

Bylo dost času; nebyl žádný spěch.

Přišli jsme tam pár minut po šesté.

Došli jsme tam před sedmou, — po sedmé, — s večera, — pozdě

yě pool druhé.—soũ trshi shtw^ertě na dwyě(ně druhé).

soũ dwyě hodiny.—ũsh yě tãk pozďe? —ãnď, ũsh soũ dwyě.

soũ dwyě hodiny prich. — yě pyět minũt ď trshěkh. — soũ hnědlě trshi hodiny.

soũ trshi prich.—khĩbee ďeset minũt ď shtyrekh.

fkolik hodin pũydemě? —pũydeměv shtw^ert nã pyět.

tď yě toozě b^erzď; pochkámě ďď pool páté. — tãk tẽďã.

pũydemě fpyět hodin. — trshěbã.

vishli smě ō pátě hodĩne ōďpoledně.

prshishli stě fchãss? — nẽprshishli stě pozďe?

billď dost chãssũ; nebill ěãďnee spyěkh.

prshi-shli smě tãm pár minũt pď shěsté.

ďoshli smě tãm prshěď sedmoũ, — pď sedmé, — svěcherã, — pozďe

evening,—late in the evening — at midnight.

We got there in an hour, — in an hour and a half, — in two hours,—in five hours.

We were here just at twelve o'clock.

We were here exactly at noon.

I must be there between one and two; — between two and three; — between four and five.

We must be there before evening, — early in the evening, — towards evening.

The clock strikes.
Hear how many (what o'clock) it strikes.

It strikes twelve.
Did you hear the clock strike?

How many (i. e. what o'clock) did it strike?

It struck one;—it struck two;—it struck three; — it struck five;— it struck six.

večer, — o půlnoci.

Došli jsme tam za hodinu, — za půldruhé hodiny, — za dvě hodiny, — za pět hodin.

Byli jsme tu zrovna ve dvanáct hodin.

Byli jsme tu navlas v poledne.

Musím tam býti mezi jednou a druhou; — mezi druhou a třetí; — mezi čtvrtou a pátou.

Musíme tam býti před večerem, — brzo s večera, — na večer.

Hodiny bijou*)
Slyšte kolik bijou!

Bijou dvanáct.
Slyšel jste hodiny bítí?

Kolik bilo?

Bila jedna;—bily dvě; — bily tři; — bilo pět; — bilo šest.

věcher, — o poolnotsi.

dōshli smě tam zā hoďi-
nū,—zā pooldrūhé ho-
ďiny,—zā dwoyě hoďi-
ny, — zā pyět hoďin.

billi smě tū zróvnā vė
dvoānātsť hoďin.

billi smě tū nāvlas v po-
ledně.

mūseem tām beet mēzi
yednoū ā drūhoū; —
mēzi drūhoū ā trshē-
tee, — mēzi shtw^er-
toū ā pátoū.

mūseemě tām beet prshed
vēcherem, — b^erzo
svēcherā, — nā vēch-
er.

hoďiny biyoū.
slishťē kolik biyoū!

biyoū dvoānātsť.
slishell stě hoďiny beet?

kolik billō?

billā yednā; — billy
dwoyě; — billy trshē;
— billō pyět; — billō
shěst.

*) **Bijou** or **bijí** (they strike). See Note 2, and also foot-note on page 137.

It has just struck half past six.	Právě bilo půl sedmé.	<i>právyě billō pool_sedmé.</i>
It has already struck seven.	Už odbilo sedm.	<i>ūsh odbillō sedūm.</i>
It is soon going to strike eight.	Hnedle bude bítí osm.	<i>hnedlě būdě beet osūm.</i>
I shall wait till half past eight.	Budu čekati do půl deváté.	<i>būdū chekāt dō pool děváté.</i>
I shall wait till nine.	Počkám do devíti.	<i>pochkám dō děveet'i.</i>
Let us wait till ten.	Počkejme do desíti.	<i>pochkeymē dō desseet'i.</i>
Wait till midnight, or until morning.	Počkejte do půlnoci, nebo do rána.	<i>pochkeytē dō poolnotsi, nebō dō ránā.</i>
I shall wait gladly	Rád počkám.	<i>rád pochkám.</i>
I do not like to wait.	Nerád čekám.	<i>nerād chekám.</i>
Waiting is not agreeable.	Čekání není milé.	<i>chekāñi neyñi milé.</i>
I do not like long waiting.	Nemám rád dlouhé čekání.	<i>nemám rád dlouhé čekāñi.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Hodina , f. <i>hod'inā</i> , the hour;	natahnouti , <i>nătāhnoūt</i> , to wind up;
hodinka , f. <i>hod'inkā</i> , the small hour;	nataženy , <i>nătāženy</i> , wound up;
hodiny , pl. <i>hod'iny</i> , the clock;	čekati , <i>chekāt</i> , to wait, to be waiting;
hodinky , pl. <i>hod'inky</i> , the watch;	čekám , <i>chekám</i> , I am waiting;
lék , m. <i>lék</i> , the medicine;	počkati , <i>pochkāt</i> , to wait;
spěch , m. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;	počkám , <i>pochkám</i> , I shall wait;
čekání , n. <i>chekāñi</i> , the waiting;	pozadu , <i>pozādū</i> , behind.
napřed , <i>nāprshēd</i> , ahead, before;	

Age and date.

VĚK a DATUM.

How old are you?	Jak jste stár? Kolik je vám let?	<i>yāk stě stár? kolik yě vām let?</i>
I am twenty years —	Je mi dvacet let. — Je mi přes dvacet.	<i>yě me dwătset let. — yě me prshēs dwătset.</i>
I am over twenty.		

I shall soon be twenty five years.

I am nearly thirty years.

I am already thirty five years.

I was forty years in January.

You are still young.

I shall be fifty years in February. — I am getting old.

That is not a great age.

You look young.

You don't look so old.

You look well for your age.

When were you born?

What year?— In what year?

I was born in the year 1840.—I was born in May in the year 1850.

I was born in the month of June 1862.

The first of August is my birth-day.

Bude mi brzo dvacet pět let.

Je mi málem třicet let.

Už je mi třicet pět let.

Bylo mi čtyřicet let v lednu.

Jste ještě mladý.

Bude mi padesát let v únoru. — Stárnu.

To není velké stáří.

Vypadáte mladý.

Nevypadáte tak starý.

Vypadáte dobře na svůj věk.

Kdy jste*) narozen?— Kdy jste se narodil?

Který rok? — V kterém roce?

Jsem narozen roku 1840.— Jsem rozen v máji leta 1850.

Narodil jsem se v měsíci červnu 1862.

Prvního srpna je můj den narození.

bŭdĕ me b^erzĕ dwĕtset pyĕt let.

yĕ mi málem trshitset let.

ŭsh yĕ me trshitset pyĕt let.

billĕ me shtiritset let vlednŭ.

stĕ yeshĕ mlĕdee.

bŭdĕ me pĕdĕsĕt let voo-norŭ. — stĕrnŭ.

tĕ neyŭi velké stĕrshee.

vypĕdĕtĕ mlĕdee.

nĕvypĕdĕtĕ tĕk stĕree.

vypĕdĕtĕ dĕbrshĕ nĕ swŭy vyĕk.

gdŭ stĕ nĕrĕzhĕn? gdŭ stĕ sĕ nĕrodĭl?

ktĕree rĕk? — fktĕrĕm rotsĕ?

sem nĕrĕzhĕn rĕkŭ tĕi-seets osŭm set shtiritset.—sem rĕzhĕn v mĕ-yi letĕ tĕiseets osŭm set pĕdĕsĕt.

nĕrodĭl sem sĕ vmyĕ-seetsi cheronŭ tĕiseets osŭm set shĕdĕsĕt dwĕ.

p^ervŭneehĕ s^erpna yĕ mŭy den nĕrozĕnĭ.

*) In Bohemian the passive participle **rozen** or **narozen** is used in connection with the present tense : **kdy jste rozen ? kdy jste narozen ?** "when are you born"?

How old is that child?

It is ten days. — It is two weeks (old).

It is a month (old).—It is two months.—It is five months.

It is one year (old). — It is two years (old). —It is five years (old).

It will be a year in September. It will soon be three years.

It is going on two years (it is in its second year). — It is going on five years.

How old is that girl?

She will be four years at Christmas. — She will be five years at Easter. — She will soon be six years.

What day of the month is it?—what date is it?

To-day is the first,—the second,—the fifth.

What day of the month is (i. e. will be) to-morrow?

To-morrow is (“will be”) the third, — the tenth, — the twentieth.

What date was yesterday?

Jak staré je to dítě?

Je mu deset dní. — Jsou mu dvě neděle.

Je mu měsíc. — Jsou mu dva měsíce. — Je mu pět měsíců.

Je mu rok.—Jsou mu dvě leta.—Je mu pět let.

Bude mu rok v září.— Budou mu brzo tři leta.

Jde mu na druhý rok. Jde mu na pátý rok.

Jak stará je ta holka? Budou jí čtyry leta o vánocích. — Bude jí pět let o velkonočních.— Bude jí hnedle šest let.

Kolikátého je? — jaké je datum?

Dnes je prvního, druhého, — pátého.

Kolikátého bude zejtra?

Zejtra bude třetího, — desátého,—dvacátého.

Kolikátého bylo včera?

yāk stārē yě to dēēle?

yě mǔ dēsēt dñee.— soǔ mǔ dwyě nēdēlē.

yě mǔ myěseets. — soǔ mǔ dwā myěseetsě. — yēmǔpyětmyěseetsoo.

yě mǔ rōk. — soǔ mǔ dwyě letā. — yě mǔ pyět let.

būdē mǔ rōk vzārshēe. — būdoǔ mǔ b^erzō trshi letā.

dē mǔ nā drūhee rōk.— dē mǔ nā pātee rōk.

yāk stārā yě tā holkā? būdoǔ yee shtiry letā ō vānotseekh.—būdē yee pyět let ō velkōnotseekh.—būdē yee hnēdlē shēst let.

kolikátého yě? — yāké yě dātum?

dnēs yě p^ervñeehō, — drūhéhō,—pátéhō.

kolikátéhō būdē zeytrā?

zeytrā būdē trshēvēehō, — dessátéhō, — dwātsátéhō.

kolikátéhō billō fcherā?

Yesterday was the twenty-first.

What day of the month will be next Sunday?

—The twenty-second.

On what day of the month was Frank here? — He was here on the fifteenth and he will come again on the twenty-fifth.

This month? — Yes; he will stay here until the last.

On the first I shall receive new goods.

When will Mr. Danesh pay (his) bill? — Before the last. — On the first of next month.

When will the agent arrive? — About the ninth.

When will the time run out? When will it be due? — About the fifteenth.

That is, about the middle of the month. — I shall pay towards the end of the month.

Next month I expect to be gone. — Before two months pass away, I shall be back.

Včera bylo dvacátého prvního.

Kolikátého bude v neděli? — Dvacátého druhého.

Kolikátého byl zde Frank? — Byl zde patnáctého a přijde zas na dvacátého pátého.

Tento měsíc? — Ano, zůstane tu do posledního.

Na prvního dostanu nové zboží.

Kdy pan Daneš zaplatí účet? — Do posledního. — Na prvního budoucí měsíc.

Kdy přijede agent? — Asi devátého.

Kdy vyjde čas? Kdy vypadne lhůta? — Kolem patnáctého.

Teda v polou měsíce. — Zaplatím ke konci měsíce.

Na druhý měsíc hodlám býti pryč. — Než uplynou dva měsíce, budu nazpět.

fcherä billö dwätsátéhö p^ervñeehö.

kolikátéhö būdē vnědēli? — dwätsátéhö drühéhö.

kolikátéhö bill zdē Frank? — bill zdē pät-nátstéhö ā prshidē zäss nā dwätsátéhö pátéhö.

tentö myěseets? — āno; zoostānē tū dō posledñeehö.

nā p^ervñeehö dōstānū novē zbožee.

gdý pān Dānesh zāplāťee ooohet? — dō pōsledñeehö. — nā p^ervñeehö būdōūtsee myěseets.

gdý prshiyēdē ākent? — ā i devátéhö.

gdý veedē chäss? gdý vypādnē lhootā? — kō lem pātñátstéhö.

tēdā fpoloū myěseetsē. — zāplāťeem kē kontsi myěseetsē.

nā drūhee myěseets hodlām beet prich. nesh ūplinōū dwā myěseetsē, būdū nāspyēt.

We shall expect you some time in October; — or in the beginning of November; at latest before the first of December.	Budeme vás čekati někdy v říjnu; — nebo počátkem listopadu; — nejdýl do prvního prosince.	<i>būdēmě váss chekăt ñe-gdy frsheeynŭ; - ñě-bŏ pochátkem listopădŭ;—neydeeldŏ p^ero-ñeeho prosintsě.</i>
The fourth of July is a national holiday, — the day of independence.	Čtvrtý červenec jest národní svátek, — den neodvislosti.	<i>shw^ertee chervěnets yest národñee swátek, — den ñeodvislostŭ.</i>
Thanksgiving day is usually in November.	Den díkůvzdání bývá v listopadu.	<i>den dŕeekŭvzdáñee beevá vlistopădŭ.</i>
On new-year's day; — before New-year's;— after New-year's.	Na nový rok; — do nového roku; — po novém roce.	<i>nă novée rŏk;—dŏ novéhŏ rŏkŭ;— pŏ novém rotsě.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Věk, m. *vyěk* } the age
stáří, n. *stárshee* }
stárnouti, *stárnoŭt*, to grow old;
naroditi se, *nărŏd'it sě*, to be born;
narození, n. *nărozěñi*, the birth;
počátek, m. *pochátek*, the beginning;
lhůta, f. *lhootă*, tho given time, the term;
vánoce, pl. *vánotsě*, Christmas;
velkonoce, pl. *velkŏnotsě*, Easter;
svatodušní svátky, pl. *swătŏdŭshñee swătŭky*, Whitsuntide;

vypadati, *vypădăt* } to look, to ap-
vyhlížeti, *vyhleežet* } pear;
vyjítí, *viyeet*, to go out, to run out;
uplynouti, *ŭplynoŭt*, to pass away;
zaplatiti, *zăplăt'it*, to pay up;
někdy, *ñeedy*, sometimes;
v polou, *fpoloŭ*, in the middle;
nazpět, *năspyět* } back
zpátky, *spătŭky* }
neodvislost, f. *ñeodvislost*, the independence.

Leden, *lěden*, January
únor, *oonor*, February
březen, *brshězěn*, March
duben, *dŭběn* } April
april, *ăpril* }

květen, *kwyětěn* } May
máj, *máy* }
červen, *chervěn*, June
červenec, *chervěnets*, July
srpen, *s^erpěn*, August

září, *zárshée*, Septemberříjen, *rsheeyén*, Octoberlistopad, *listopád*, Novemberprosinec, *prosinets*, December.

The weather.

POČASÍ.

How is the weather?

It is fine; — it is beautiful weather.

It is clearing up; — it is a fine morning; — it will be a nice day.

The heaven is clear. — The sun shines, — warms (i. e. makes it warm), — burns.

In the sun it is hot.

It is warm; — it will be hot; — there will be a great heat to-day.

Yesterday there was a great heat.

How does the thermometer stand? — Eighty five in the shade.

The thermometer is rising, — is falling.

What a heat! — I am perspiring; let us go into the shade; — I feel hot.

What wind is it? — East wind, — West wind, South wind, — North wind.

I think there will be a

Jaké je počasí?

Je pěkně; — je krásné počasí.

Vybírá se; — je krásné ráno; — bude pěkný den.

Nebe je jasné. — Slunce svítí — hřeje — pálí.

Na slunci je horko.

Je teplo; — bude horko; — bude dnes velké parno.

Včera bylo silné vedro.

Jak stojí teploměr? — Osmdesát pět ve stínu.

Teploměr stoupá, — klesá.

To je horko! — Já se potím; pojďme do chládka. — Je mi horko.

Jaký je vítr? — Východní, — západní jižní, — severní.

Myslím že bude změna

*yáké yě pōchāsee?**yě pyěkñe; — yě krássné pochāsee.**vybeerá sě; — yě krássné ránō; — būdě pyěknee den.**něbē yě yāsné. — slūntsē sweetēe. — hrshēyē, — pálee.**nā slūntsi yě horkō.**yě teplō; — būdě horkō; — būdě dneśś velké parnō.**fcherā billō silné vědrō.**yāk stoyee teplōmyēr? — osūmdessát pyēt vē sťeenū.**teplōmyēr stoūpá, — klēsá.**tō yě horkō! — yá sě potēem; poďmēdōkhlādka; — ye me horkō.**yākee yě veet^er? — vee-khodñee, — západñee, — yižñee, — sēverñee.**misleem že būdě zmyē-*

change in the weather;—the wind changes. — Now it blows from the East.	počasí;—vítr se mění. — Teď vane od východu.	<i>nā pochāsee;— veet^er se myēñee.—tā' vānē od veekhodū.</i>
Very likely there will be a change.	Dost možná, že bude změna.	<i>dost možná že būdě zmyēñā.</i>
It is dry; we need rain; —I wish it would rain! —There is a great deal of dust.	Jesucho; potřebujeme dešť. — Kéž by jen pršelo! — Je moc prachu.	<i>yē sūkhō; potřshēbūyē-mē deshť.—kēž be yen p^ershelō! — yē mots prākhū.</i>
Is it going to rain?—It looks like it; it is getting cloudy.	Bude pršet? — Vypadá to tak; mračí se.	<i>būdē p^ershēt?—vypādā tō tāk; mrāchee sē.</i>
It is cloudy; — the sky is clouded;—the sky is overcast: — it is damp.	Je zamračeno;—je pod mrakem;—obloha je zatažena, — je vlhko.	<i>yē zāmračenō;—yē pod mrākem;— oblōhā yē zātāženā;—yē v^elhko.</i>
Do you see those dense, black clouds?—They bring rain,—a heavy rain.	Vidíte ty husté, černé mraky? — Z toho bude dešť, — hodný dešť.	<i>ved^eete ty hūssté, cherné mrāky? — stohō būdě deshť, — hodnee deshť.</i>
I think a rainstorm is coming, — a heavy rainstorm.	Myslím že bude liják, — silný liják.	<i>misleem žē būdě liyák, — silnee liyák.</i>
The weather is bad; — the weather is nasty; — it is wet and muddy.	Je špatné počasí; — je škaredá povětrnost; — je mokro a blativo.	<i>yē shpātné pochāsee; — yē shkāredā povyēt^ernost;—yē mokrō.</i>
It is very nasty out of doors; — it is rainy; — too much rain!	Je tam ošklivě;—je deštivo; — mnoho deště!	<i>yē tām oshklivyē; — yē deshťivō; — mnohō deshťe!</i>
It sprinkles;—it rains a little;— it rains; — it pours;— how muddy it will be!	Krápe; — poprchává; — prší; lije se; — to bude blata!	<i>krápě;—pop^erkhává;— p^ershēe;—liyē sē;—tō būdě blātā!</i>

It rains in torrents.—It has ceased to rain already.

That was a heavy rain-storm,—a cloudburst;—it rained in torrents.—It caused a flood.

It is calm,—no wind,—not a leaf is stirring.—It is sultry; the air is heavy.

The wind rises;—it is windy;—it blows hard;—there is a strong wind.

A storm is brewing;—there will be a hurricane;—a cyclone is coming.

A thunderstorm is coming.—It lightens.—Now there was a flash of lightning.—What flashes of lightning!

Do you hear the thunder?—Yes, it thunders; the thunder rolls from afar;—a thunderstorm is coming.

The thunder roars;—the lightning has struck; it has struck somewhere;—the lightning set fire.

This is a terrible storm,

Prší jen se lije. — Už přestalo pršet.

To byl přívál, — průtrž mračen;—přelo jen se lilo. — Byla z toho povodeň.

Je ticho, — bez větru, — ani se list nehýbe. — Je dusno; vzduch je těžký.

Dělá se vítr;—je větrno; — fouká hodně; — je silný vítr.

Bude z toho bouře; — bude vichřice;— cyklon se blíží.

Tahle bouřka.— Blýská se. Ted' se záblesklo.—To je blýskání!

Slyšíte hřímání?—Ano, hřímá — hrom hučí z daleka; — bouřka se blíží.

Hrom burácí;—hrom uhodil; — někde uhodilo! — blesk zapálil.

To je hrozná bouře,—

p^ershee yen sě tyè. - ůsh prshěstälö p^ershët.

tö bill prsheeväl,—proot^ersh mrächčēn;—p^ershellö yen sě lillö. — būdē stöhhö pövedeñ.

yě tikhö,—běž vyětrü,— äñi sě list něheebě. — yě düssnö; vzdükh yě teshkee.

d'elá sě veet^er;—yě vyět^ernö;—foŭká hodñe; —yě silnee veet^er.

būdē stöhhö bouřshě; — būdē vikh-rshitsé; — tsiklon sě bleežee.

tähnē bouřsh-kä.—bleeskä sě.—teď sě zäblesklö.—tö yě bleeskáñi!

slisheetě hrsheemät? — äñö, hrsheemá;—hrom hŭchee zdälekä;—bouřshkă sě bleežee.

hrom būrätsee;—hrom ůhod'il;—ñegäě ůhod'ilö!—blesk zäpälil.

tö yě hrözná bouřshě,—

— an awful thunderstorm.—The crashing of thunder is incessant. — Flash after flash, one thunder-clap after the other.

That was a thunder-clap — a thunderbolt from a clear sky.

It hails.—This is a big hailstorm.

It will destroy the crops — the hail will destroy everything. — The hail-storm destroyed the crops;—hailstones of an enormous size were falling.

strašné hromobití.—
Hrom bije neustále.
— Blesk za bleskem.
rána za ranou.

To byla hromová rána;— uhodilo z čista jasna.

Padají kroupy. — To je silné krupobití.

Potluče; — kroupy všecko zničí. — Potlouklo; — padaly kroupy ohromné velikosti.

strašné hromobitíee
— *hrom bije něustále.*
— *blesk za bleskem,*
ráně za ránou.

tó billě hromová ráně;
— *úhod'ilo schistě yěsně.*

pěďěyee kroupy.—tě yě silné krupobitíee.

potluchě;—kroupy fshět-sko zničee.— *potlouklě;—* *pěďěly kroupy ohromné veľikost'i.*

It is foggy;—this morning there was a thick fog.

Dew is falling;— there is a heavy dew.

There is a hoary frost, — a gray frost.

It is cold;—it is chilly; — it is frosty.

I feel cold;—I am freezing.— a cold wind is blowing.

I want to warm myself.—Are you cold? Warm yourself. — It is warm here, — almost too warm.

Jest mlhavo;—ráno byla hustá mlha.

Padá rosa; — je silná rosa.

Je jinovatka, — šedý mráz.

Je zima;—je sic hravo; — je mrazivo.

Je mi zima; — mrazí mě; — fouká studený vítr.

Chci se ohřátí. — Je vám zima?—Ohřejte se.—Zde je teplo, — až moc teplo.

yest m^elhāvō;—ráno bil
lě hūsstā m^elhā.

pěďā rossě; — yě silná rossě.

yě yinovátkā, — shědee mráz.

yě zimě;—yě sikhřāvō; yě mrazivō.

yě mi zima; — mrazee myě;— *foukě stūděnee veet^er.*

khtsi sě ohrshát. — yě vām zimě? ohrshěytě sě.—zďě yě teplō,—āsh mots teplō.

It is going to snow; —
it snows;—it is snow-
ing.

What a snow-storm!—
a great snow-storm.
A great deal of snow
fell;—there are snow-
drifts.

How many degrees is
it?— It is twenty be-
low zero; — a severe
cold.

The ice is thick; we
can skate.

It will grow warmer;—
it is growing warmer;
—the wind is shifting;
— it blows from the
South.

The ice breaks; — the
snow thaws and the
ice melts.—there is a
big thaw.

In the spring the weath-
er is mild; — in the
summer it is usually
hot;— in the fall it is
cool;— in the winter
it is cold and it freez-
es.

Wisconsin has a hard
winter; — Louisiana
has a mild winter.—
In Texas the winter
is short and the sum-
mer long.

**Bude padati sníh; —
padá sníh; — sněží.**

**To je vánice! — velká
metelice.**

**Napadlo mnoho sněhu;
—jsou závěje.**

**Kolik je stupňů? — Je
dvacet pod nulou; —
krutá zima.**

**Led je silný; můžeme
se klouzati.**

**Ono se oteplí;—oteplu-
je se;—vítr se obra-
cí;—vane od jihu.**

**Led puká; — sníh taje
a led se rozpouští;—
je hodná obleva.**

**Z jara je mírné poča-
sí; — v letě bývá
horko; — na podzim
je chladno;— v zimě
je zima a mrzne.**

**Wisconsin má tuhou
zimu; — Louisiana
má mírnou zimu. —
V Texasu je krátká
zima a dlouhé leto.**

*budě padát sněeh;—pá-
dá sněeh;—sněžee.*

*tó yě vánítsě! — velká
mētēllitsě.*

*nāpādlo mnohō sněhū;
— soū závyěyě.*

*kolik yě štūpnōo? — yě
dwātset pod nulloū;—
krutá zimā.*

*led yě silnee; moožemē
sē kloūzāt.*

*ōnō sē oteplee;—oteplū-
yě sē; — veet^e sē o-
brātsee; — vānē od
yeehū.*

*led pūkā; — sněeh tāyě
ā led sē rozpōuštee;
yě hōdnā oblěvā.*

*zyārā yě meerné pochā-
see; — vletē beevā
horkō; — nā podzim
yě khlādnō;— vzīmyě
yě zimā ā m^erzne.*

*wisconsin má tūhoū zi-
mā; — louisiana má
meernoū zimā. — fte-
xasū yě krátkā zimā
ā dlouhé leto.*

The summer season is warm, — the winter season is cold.	Letní počasí je teplé, — zimní počasí je studené.	<i>letňee pochásee yě teplé,</i> — <i>zimňee pochásee yě stůděné.</i>
In the winter days are short and nights are long.	V zimě jsou krátké dny a dlouhé noci.	<i>vzimyě soŭ krátké dňi</i> <i>ã dlouhé notsi.</i>
The day shortens; — the day lengthens.	Den se krátí; — dne přibývá.	<i>den · sě krátĕe; — dne prshibeevá.</i>
The night shortens.	Noc se krátí; (noci ubývá).	<i>nots sě krátĕe; (notsi ubeevá).</i>

VOCABULARY.

Počasí , n. <i>pochásee</i>	} the weather	východ , m. <i>veekhōd</i> , the east
povětrnost , f. <i>povyět^e rnost</i>		západ , m. <i>zápād</i> , the west
počasí , n.	} the season;	jih , m. <i>yeeh</i>
doba , f. <i>dōbā</i>		poledne , n. <i>poledne</i>
nebe , n. <i>něbě</i> , the heaven	} the north	sever , <i>sěver</i>
obloha , f. <i>oblōhā</i> , the sky		půlnoc , <i>poolnots</i>
stín , m. <i>sťeen</i> , the shade, the shadow	} the south-east	jiho-východ , m. the south-east
chládek , m. <i>khládek</i> , the shady place		severovýchod , m. the north-east
prach , m. <i>prākh</i> , the dust	} the south-west	jihozápad , m. the south-west
blato , n. <i>blātō</i> , the mud		severozápad , m. the north-west
list , m. <i>list</i> , the leaf	} eastern	východní , <i>veekhōdňee</i>
velikost , f. <i>velikost</i> , the greatness		západní , <i>zápādňee</i> , western
kež by , I would that....; would to heaven that....; I wish it would....;	} southern	jižní , <i>yeežňee</i>
		polední , <i>poledňee</i>
	} northern	severní , <i>severňee</i>
		půlnoční , <i>poolnochňee</i>
Vítr , m. <i>veet^er</i> , the wind	} the storm	bouře , f. <i>boŭrshě</i>
vichřice , f. <i>vikh-rshitsě</i> , the gale, the hurricane;		bouřka , f. <i>boŭrshkă</i> , the thunder-storm,
foukati , <i>foŭkăt</i>	} to blow	hřímati , <i>hrsheemăt</i> , to thunder
vanouti , <i>vănoŭt</i>		hřímání , n. <i>hrsheemănĕe</i> , the thundering

hrom, m. *hrŏm*, the thunder
hromová rána, a peal or crash of thunder;
hromobití, n. *hrŏmobiťee*, peals of thunder;
burá ceti, *bŭrátset*, to roar, to crash
blýskati se, *bleskăt sě*, to lighten

Dešť, m. *desht'*, the rain
liják, m. *liyák* } the rainstorm,
přívál, m. *prsheevál* } the heavy
shower:
průtrž mračen, *proot' rsh mrăchĕn*,
the cloud-burst;
povodeň, f. *pŏvodeň*, the flood
mrak, m. *mrăk* }
mračno, n. *mrăchnŏ* } the cloud
mračiti se, *mrăchit sě*, to grow
cloudy;
krápati, *krápăt* } to sprin-
poprchávati, *pŏp' rkhávăt* } kle;
pršetí, *p' rshet*, to rain
líti se, *leet sě* (colloq. *leyt sě*), to pour
přestati, *prshĕstăt*, to stop.

Kroupy, pl. *kroŭpy*, the hail
krupobití, n. *krŭpobiťee*, the hail-
storm;

Vybíratí se, *vybeerăt sě*, to clear up
mĕnití se, *myĕ-nit sě*, to change
páliti, *pălît*, to burn
přibývati, *prshibeevăt*, to increase,
to lengthen;

blýskání, n. *bleskáníee*, the lightning
blesk, the flash or stroke of light-
ning; the thunderbolt;
zablesklo se, *zăblesklŏ sě*, there was
a flash a lightning;
uhoditi, *ŭhod'it*, to strike
zapáliti, *zăpălît*, to set fire.

potlouci, *potloŭtsi*, to knock down,
to destroy;
zničiti, *zñichit*, to annihilate
mlha, f. *m'lhă*, the fog
mlhavo, *m'lhăvŏ*, foggy
rosa, f. *rossă*, the dew
jinovatka, f. *ye-novătškă*, hoary frost
sníh, m. *sñeeh*, the snow
sněhu, *sñehu*, of the snow;
sněžiti, *sñĕžît*, to snow
metelice, f. *metĕlitsĕ* } the snow-storm,
vánice, f. *vánítsĕ* } the blizzard;
závĕje, pl. f. *závyĕyĕ*, snow-drifts
led, m. *led*, the ice
náledí, n. *náled'ee*, glazed frost
mráz, m. *mráz*, the frost
mrznouti, *m' rznŏŭt*, to freeze
tátí, *tăt'i*, to thaw
tání, n. *táníee* }
obleva, *oblĕvă* } a thaw

ubývati, *ŭbeevăt*, to decrease, to
shorten;
potiti se, *poťit sě*, to sweat.
černý, á, é *chernee*, black
hustý, á, é *hŭsstee*, thick, dense;

škaredý, á, é *shkärēdee*, nasty, ugly;
mírný, á, é *meernee*, mild
ohromný, á, é *ōhromnee*, enormous,
 terrible;

strach, m. *strākh*, fear
strašný, á, é *strāshnee*, fearful
hrůza, f. *hroozā*, horror, terror;
hrozný, á, é *hrōznee*, horrible;
 shocking.

Blativo, (adv.)*, *blät'ivoš*, muddy
deštivo, *desht'ivo*, rainy
mokro, *mokrō*, wet
vlhko, *v^elkhō*, damp
sucho, *sūkhō*, dry
teplo, *teplō*, warm
horko, *horkō*, hot

parno, *parnō*, very hot
dušno, *dūssnō*, close, stifling;
zima, *zimā* } cold
studeno, *stüdēnō* }
chladno, *khlādnoš*, cool
sichravo, *sikhrāvō*, chilly
mrazivo, *mrāzivō*, frosty, freezing
 cold.

—
Teploměr, m. *teplōmyēr*, the ther-
 mometer
stupeň, m. *stūpeň*, a degree
nula, f. *nūlā*, zero
nad nulou, *nād nūloū*, above zero
pod nulou, below zero;
stoupati, *stoūpāt*, to rise;
klesati, *klessāt*, to go down.

Health and sickness.

ZDRAVÍ a NEMOC.

I hope you are well.
 Only middling;— I am
 so so.

Yo do not look so well
 as (you did) lately.

Do you think so? —
 Well, you are right;
 — I do not look well.

Doufám že jste zdrav.
Jen tak prostředně;—
jen tak tak.
Nevypadáte tak dobře
jako nedávno.
Myslíte? — Ba máte
pravdu;—nevypadám
dobře.

doūfám že stě zdráf.
yen tāk prostrshēdñe;—
yen tāk tāk.
nēvypādátě tāk dobrshē
yākō nēdávnoš.
misleetě? — bā máte
prāvdū;—nēvypādám
dōbrshē.

*) The adjectives are : **blativý (á, é)**, **deštivý**, **mokrý**, etc.

Je tam blativo, it is muddy out of doors; — **blativý chodník** (m.), a muddy sidewalk; **blativá cesta** (f.), a muddy road; **blativé pole** (n.), a muddy field.

Je deštivo, it is rainy; — **deštivý den**, a rainy day.

I think I look bad (badly); — I look worse.

O no! you do not look badly.

Don't I? — I guess I do! Listen to me (i. e. let me tell you): you look better than you did the other day.

O, be still! — you flatter me.

Myslím že vypadám špatně; — vypadám hůř.

O ne! nevypadáte zle.

Že ne?—Myslím že ano! Dejte si říci: vypadáte lépe než oněhdy.

I dejte pokoj! — vy mi pochlebujete!

misleem že vypadám shpätñe; — vypadám hoorsh.

O ně! něvypádátě zle.

že ně? — misleem že ůň! deytě si rheetsi: vypādátě lépe nesh ōněhdy.

E deytě pōkoy! — vy me pōkhlēbūyetě.

You look bad (badly); — I do not like your looks.

What is the matter with you? — is anything the matter with you?

Do you not feel well? — what is the matter? — what ails you? —

Nothing ails me; — nothing is the matter with me.

Why do you look so bad (badly)? — That's nothing!

You deny it (i. e. conceal it). — Don't deny it!

I deny nothing; — why should I deny?

If anything is the matter with you, tell me!

**Vyhlížíte špatně; — ne-
líbíte se mi.**

**Co je vám? — chybí
vám něco?**

**Není vám dobře? — co
vám chybí? — co vás
bolí?**

**Nic mi není; — nic mi
nechybí.**

Proč vypadáte tak špatně? — To nic není!

**Vy zapíráte. — Neza-
pírejte!**

**Nic nezapírám; — proč
bych zapíral?**

**Je-li vám něco, řek-
něte!**

*vyhleēēetě shpätñe; —
něleebeetě se me.*

*tsō yě vām? — khibee
vām ñetsō?*

*neyñi vām dōbrshē? —
tsō vām khibee? — tsō
vāss bolee.*

*ñits me neyñi; — ñits
me někhibee.*

*proch vypādátě tāk
shpätñe? — to ñits
neyñi!*

*vy zāpeerátě. — nězāpeer-
reytě.*

*ñits nězāpeerám; — proch
bikh zāpeerāl?*

*yēlli vām ñetsō, rshēk-
ñetě!*

Tell me what is the matter with you?— does anything ail you? — tell me if anything ails you.

If anything were the matter with me, I should say so.

There is something the matter with you!

You don't feel well; — I see it by your looks!

You are right; I am not well.

What is the matter with you?— I do not know what ails me;— I do not feel quite well.

I am not so well as usual.— A little time ago I felt better.

To-day I feel bad (badly):—I was taken sick. I feel badly.

Are you sick?

Yes, I am sick; I do not feel well;—I feel bad (badly).

I hear that Edward is sick.

He has been taken sick; — he has fallen sick; —he is very sick;—he

Povězte co je vám? — bolí vás něco? — povězte chybí-li vám něco.

Kdyby mi něco bylo, řekl bych to.

Vám něco je! — Vám něco chybí!

Vám není dobře; — vidím to na vás!

Máte pravdu; není mi dobře.

Co je vám? — Nevím co mi je; — necítím se docela dobře.

Nejsem tak zdravý jak obyčejně.—Ještě nedávno bylo mi líp.

Dnes je mi špatně; — přišlo mi nanic.

Je mi nanic. — Je mi zle.

Jste nemocen?

Ano, jsem nemocen;— není mi dobře; — je mi zle.

Slyším, že Edward je nemocen.

Roznemohl se;—upadl do nemoci; — je silně nemocen; — je

přovyžtě tsō yě vám? — bolee váss ñetsō?—přovyžtě khibeeli vám ñetsō?

gdyby me ñetsō billō, rsh^ekl bikh tō.

vám ñetsō yě! — vám ñetsō khibeel!

vám neyñi dōbrshě; — vidēem tō nā váss!

mátě prāvdū; neyñi me dōbrshě.

tsō yě vám?—něveem tsō me yě; — nētseeēem sē dotsellā dōbrshě.

neysem tāk zdráf yāk obicheyñe. — Yeshē nedāvnō billō me leep.

dness yě me shpātñe; — prshishlo me nāñits. yě me nāñits. — yě me zlě.

stě nēmotsēn?

ānō, sem nēmotsēn; — neyñi me dōbrshě; — yě me zlě.

slisheem že Edward yě nēmotsēn.

roznēmōh^el sē; — ůpād^el dō nēmotsi; — yě silñe nēmotsēn; — yě

has been sick a long time.

What is the matter with him?—what happened to him?

He caught a cold:— he has a bad cold.

Anthony is also sickly: — but to-day he already feels better.

I was long in poor health;—I was ailing seriously.

What was the matter with you? —Indeed I do not know what ailed me.

I had no appetite, — I had no sleep,— I had a feeling of weariness. — But it all passed away.

Take care of yourself; — be careful of your health!

Health is above everything; it is the greatest treasure.

An unhealthy man is unhappy.

What is the matter with you? are you sick? — you are not sick, are you?

Only a little; it is not

dlouho nemocen.

Co mu je? — co se mu stalo?

Nastudil se; — má silné nastuzení.

Anton je také churavý; — ale dnes už je mu lépe.

Já dlouho churavěl; — povážlivě jsem churavěl.

Co vám bylo? — Ani nevím co mi bylo.

Neměl jsem chuť k jídlu, — neměl jsem spaní, — cítil jsem unavenost. — Ale minulo to.

Dejte na sebe pozor; — buďte opatrný na zdraví!

Zdraví je nade všecko; je to největší poklad.

Člověk nezdravý je nešťastný.

Co je vám? stůněte? snad nestůněte?

Jen tak trochu; není

dloůhō němotsěn.

tsō mŭ yě? — tsō sě mŭ stālō?

nāstŭd'il sě; — má silné nāstŭzēñi.

ānton yě tāke khŭrāvee; — ālē dnēs ŭsh yě mŭ lepě.

yá dloůhō khŭrāvyyell; pŏvázlivyě sem khŭrāvyyell.

tsō vām billō? — āni něveem tsō me billō.

nemyell sem khŭt'ek-yeedlŭ, — nemyell sem spāñi, — tseet'il sem ŭnāvvenost. — ālē minŭlō tō.

deytě nā sěbē pŏzor; — būd'tě ōpāt' rnee nā zdrāvee.

zdrāvee yě nādě fshētskō; yě tō neyvyēt-shee pŏklād.

chlovyěk nēzdrāvee yě nesh'tāssnee.

tsō yě vām? stōoñetě? — snād nēstōoñetě?

yen tāk trŏkhŭ; neyñi

bad. -- I have a pain in the bowels.	to zlé. -- Mám bole- ní.	tě zlé. -- mám bolěni.
That will pass away; -- it will stop of itself. -- I hope so.	To zase přejde; -- to přestane samo. -- Doufám.	tě zase prshěydě; -- tě prshěstānē sāmō. -- doūfām.
Do you have it often? -- Quite often; -- it comes upon me from time to time.	Míváte to často? -- Dost často; -- přichází to na mě ob čas.	meevátě tě chāsstō? -- dost chāsstō; -- prshi- kházee tě nā myě ob chāss.
What do you do against it? -- Nothing; I lie down and remain quiet.	Co děláte proti tomu? -- Nic; lehnu si a jsem tiše.	tsō dēlātě proti tōmū? -- nits; lehnū si ā sem tishē.
That is the best medi- cine. -- I think so. -- That helps.	To je nejlepší lék. -- Já myslím. -- To po- mahá.	tě yě neylepshee lék. -- yá misleem. -- tě po- māhá.
It always helps me; -- nothing else helps me.	To mi vždycky pomůže; nic jiného mi nepo- mahá.	tě mi vžditsky (ditske) pomoože; -- nits yiné- hō me nēpomāhá.
At least it gives relief. Yes, I feel instant relief,	Aspoň to ulehčí. -- A- no, hned se mi u- lehčí.	āsspoň tě ůlěh-chee. -- ānō, hned sē me ůlěh- chee.
It relieves instantly; -- it is good for relief.	Hned se uleví; -- je to dobré pro úlevu, (pro ulehčení).	hned sē ůlěvee; -- yě tě dōbré pro oolěvū (pro ůlěh-cheñi).

VOCABULARY.

Nastuditi se, <i>nāstūd'it sē</i> , to catch a cold;	pomahati, <i>pomāhāt</i> , to help;
nastuzení, n. <i>nāstūzēñi</i> , a cold;	pomahá, <i>pomāhá</i> }
churavěti, <i>khūrāv'yēt</i> , to sicken, to be sickly;	pomůže, <i>pomoožē</i> } it helps
churavý, á, é <i>khūrāvee</i> , sickly, in- disposed;	nepomahá }
churavost, f. <i>khūrāvost</i> , sickliness, indisposition;	nepomůže } it does not help;
	pochlebovati, <i>pokhlēbovāt</i> , to flatter
	zapírati, <i>zāpeerāt</i> , to deny
	cítiti, <i>tseet'it</i> , to feel
	cítím, <i>tseet'eem</i> , I feel

mívati (reit. form of **míti**, to have; see page 168;) **meevāṭi**, to use to have;
přicházeti, *prshikházet*, to use to come;
přestati, *prshěstāt*, to stop;
ulehčiti, *ūleh-chit* } to relieve
uleviti, *ūlēvit* }
ulehčení, n. *ūleh-chenī* } relief
úleva, f. *oolēvā*

necítím, *nětseeṭeem*, I do not feel;
boleti, *bōlet*, to ache, to ail;
bolení, n. *bolēñi*, pain, (especially in the bowels, belly-ache);
je mi nanie, *yě me nāñits*, I feel sick
něco mi chybí, *ñetsō me khībee*, something ails me; there is something the matter with me.

Chuť, f. *khūt'*, the taste, the appetite,*)
chuť k jídlu, *khūt' k yeedlŭ*, appetite for food;
spaní, n. *spāñee*, the sleep;
lék, m. *lěk* } the medicine
medicina, f. *meditsinā* }
poklad, m. *poklād*, the treasure;
pokoj, m. *pōkoy*, peace, rest;
dejte pokoj! *deytě pōkoy!* give me a rest! keep still!
ob čas, *ōb chāss*, from time to time:

zdravý, á, é *zdrāvee*, healthy, well, sound;
nezdravý, á, é *nězdrāvee*, unhealthy, unwell, unsound;
opatrný, á, ě *ōpāt' rnee*, careful
obyčejný, á, é *ōbicheynee*, usual, common;
obyčejně, *ōbicheyñe*, usually, commonly;
povážlivě, *pōvážlivyě*, seriously
prostředně, *prostrshěd-ñě*, middling
ticho, n. *tikhō*, silence, quiet, calm,
tiše, *tishě*, quietly, calmly.

The human being.

LIDSKÝ TVOR.

Tělo, n. *telō*, the body;
tělesný, á, é *ṭelessnee*, bodily;
úd, m. *oōd*, the member, the limb;
kost, f. the bone;

kostra, f. *kostrā*, the skeleton;
kostnatý, á, é *kostnātee*, bony;
morek, m. } the marrow;
špik, m. *shpik*, }

*) **Chuť** means also "a desire or inclination", **mám chuť jíti tam**, I have a mind to go there; — **mám chuť vyhnati ho**, I have a mind to chase him (or: to turn him out); — **mám chuť říci mu to**, I have a mind to tell him so; — **mám chuť do práce**, I have a desire to work, or a taste for work; I feel like working; — **pracuju s chutí**, I work with a will; etc.

kůže, f. *koožě*, } the skin
 plet', f. *plěť*, }
 pokožka, f. *pokožká*, the cuticle
 blána, f. *bláně*, the membrane
 maso, n. *māssō*, the flesh
 masitý, á, é *massítez*, fleshy
 tlustý, á, é *tlústee*, fat
 hubený, á, é *huběnee*, lean, thin;
 sval, m. *svāl*, the muscle
 svalnatý, á, é *sválnátee*, muscular
 šlachy, pl. *shlākhy*, the sinews
 žláza, f. *žlázě*, the gland
 tuk, m. *tūk*, } the fat
 sádlo, m. *sádlō*, }
 nerv, m. *nerf*, } the nerve
 číva, f. *chivě*, }
 nervový, á, é *nervōvee*, } nervous
 čivní, *chivněe*, }
 ceva, f. *tsěvě*, the vessel
 žíla, *žeelě*, the vein

Hlava, f. *hlávě*, the head
 lebka, f. *lebkě*, the skull
 temeno, n. *teměně*, the crown or
 top of the head;
 týlo, n. *teelě*, the back of the head;
 kůže na hlavě, *koožě nă hlăvyě* } the
 skalp, m. *skălp* } scalp
 mozek, m. *mōzek*, the brain
 spánek, m. *spánek*, the temple
 spánky, pl. *spánky* } the temples
 skráně, pl. *skráně* }

Oko, n. *ōko*, the eye
 oči, pl. *ōchě*, the eyes
 oční důlek, *ochněe doolek*, the socket

hlavní žíla, *hlăvněe ž.* } the
 srdeční žíla, *s^erdechněe ž.* } artery
 tepna, f. *těpně*, the pulse
 žilka, f. *žilkě*, a small vein;
 žilnatý, á, é *žilnátee*, sinewy
 krev, f. *krěf*, the blood
 krevnatý, á, é *krěvnátee*, full blooded
 chudokrevný, á, é *khūdokrěvnee*,
 bloodless, anaemic
 krvavý, á, é *k^ervăvee*, bloody
 vlas, *vlăss* } the hair on the head
 vlasy, pl. }
 chlup, *chlŭp* } the hair on the body
 chlupy, pl. }
 vlasatý, á, é *vlăsátee* } hairy
 chlupatý, á, é *chlŭpátee* }
 vnitřnosti, *vňitrsh-nost'i* viscera;
 uvnitř, *ŭvňitrsh* } inside, inwardly;
 vně, *vňe* }
 zevnitř, *zevňitrsh* } outside, outwardly.
 zevně, *zevňe* }
 čelo, n. *chellě*, the forehead
 tvář, f. *tvărsh* } the cheek
 líce, n. *leetsě* }
 tvář, f. *tvărsh* } the face
 obličej, m. *oblichey* }
 lícní kost, *leetsněe kost*, the cheek-
 bone
 čelist, f. *chellist*, the jaw-bone
 brada, f. *brăďě*, the chin
 laloch, m. *lălokh*, double chin
 důlek, m. *doolěk*, the dimple
 vrásky, pl. m. *vrăssky*, the wrinkles.
 oční jablko, *ochněe yăb^e ŭkě*, the eye-
 ball
 koutek, m. *koŭtek*, the corner

rohovka, f. *rohofkă*, the cornea
duhovka, f. *dúhofkă*, the iris
zřítelnice, f. *zrsheetlñitsě*, the pupil
klapka, f. *klăpkă*, the eyelid

Ucho, n. *úkhǒ*, the ear
uši, pl. *úshĭ*, the ears

Nos, n. *nǒss*, the nose
špička nosu, *shpichkă nossŭ*, the tip
of the nose.

Ústa, pl. *oostă*, the mouth

pysk, m. *pisk* } the lip
ret, m. *ret* }

Zub, m. **zuby**, pl. *zŭb*, *zŭby*, the
tooth, the teeth
přední zuby, *prshed-ñee zŭby*, the
fore-teeth
zadní zuby, *zădñee zŭby*, the back-
teeth
špičáky, m. *shpicháky*, the canines

Vousy, pl. *foŭsy*, the beard
licousy, pl. *litsoŭsy*, the whiskers
Hrdlo, n. *h^erdlǒ*, the throat
krk, m. *k^erk*, the neck
hrtán, m. *h^ertán* } the larynx
chřtán, m. *hrshtán* }
hrdelnice, f. *h^erdel-ñitsě*, the jugu-
lar vein:

Trup, m. *trŭp*, the trunk
hrud', f. *hrŭď*, the chest
prsá, pl. *p^ersă*, the breast
žebro, n. *žebrǒ*, the rib

řasy, pl. *rshăssy*, the eyelashes
brvy, pl. *b^ervy* } the eyebrows
obočí, n. *obďchee* }

konec ucha, *kǒnets úkhŭ*, the tip of
the ear;
laloček, m. *lălďchek*, the lobe

chřípě, pl. *krshee-pyě* } the
nosové dírky, pl. *nosso-* } nostrils
vě d'eerky

pysky, pl. } the lips
rtý, pl. }

stolička, f. *stolichkă*, the molar
kořen zubu, *korsheñ zŭbŭ*, the root
of the tooth;
dáseň, f. *dásseñ*, the gum
dásně, pl. *dásseñe*, the gums
patro, n. *pătrǒ*, the roof of the mouth
jazyk, m. *yăzyk*, the tongue.

kníry, pl. *kñeery*, the moustaches
plnovous, m. *p^elnǒfoŭs*, the full beard
průdušnice, f. *proodŭshnitsě*, the
windpipe
mandle, pl. *măndlě*, the tonsils, the
almonds;
ohryzek, m. *ŏhryzěk*, Adam's apple.

klíční kost, f. *kleechněe kost*, the
collar-bone
prsí kost, f. *p^ersněe kost*, the
breast-bone

záda, pl. *zádě*, the back
 zadek, m. *zǎdek*, the back part, the
 backside;
 přede, m. *prshědek*, the fore-part,
 the front;
 hřbet, m. *hršbet* } the backbone,
 páteř, f. *pátěř* } the spine;

Život, m. *život*, the abdomen
 břicho, n. *brshikhō*, the belly
 pupek, m. *pūpek*, the navel
 bok, m. *bōk*, the hip
 slabina, f. *slābině*, the side
 kříž, *krsheež*, the small of the back;
 zadnice; f. *zādñěš*, the seat, the
 bottom;
 půlky, pl. f. *poolky*, } the
 zadní tváře, pl. f. *zādñee* } buttocks
twārshě

Ruka, i. *rūkě*, the hand
 ruce, pl. *růtsě*, the hands; **v rukou**,
vrůkoū, in the hands; **na**
 rukou, *nār.*, on the hands
 rámě, n. *rámyě* } the arm
 paže, n. *pāže* }
 dolní část paže, *dolñee chást pāže*,
 the fore-arm
 horní část paže, *horñee chást p.*, the
 upper arm
 rameno, n. *rāmenō* } the shoulder or
 paždí, n. *pāžd'ee* } top of the arm;
 podpaždí, n. *podpāžd'i*, the armpit
 loket, m. *lōket*, the elbow
 přehyb, m. *prshěhīb*, the wrist
 pěst, f. *pyěst*, the fist

zlatá žíla, f. *zlátá želě*, the spinal
 cord;

plece, sing. & pl. *pletsě*, the shoulder
 lopatka, f. *lopātkě*, the shoulder-blade
 obratel, m. *obrātel*, the vertebra
 obratle, pl. *obrātlě*, the vertebrae.

řiť, f. *rshit'*, the anus
 pohlaví, n. *pohlāvee*, the sex
 pohlavní úd, *pohlāvñee ood*, the
 sexual parts
 mužský úd, m. *mūskee ood*, the penis
 zálupa, f. *zālūpě*, the fore-skin
 varle, (pl. *varlata*), *varlě*, the tes-
 ticle
 rodidla, pl. *rod'idlě*, the genitals.

kloub, m. *kloūb*, the joint
 dlaň, f. *dlāñ*, the palm
 prst, m. *p^erst*, the finger
 palec, m. *pālets*, the thumb
 malík, m. *māleek*, the little finger
 ukazovák, *ūkāzovák*, the forefinger
 prostřední prst, *prostrshedñee p^erst*,
 the middle finger
 článek prstu, *chlānek p^erstū*, the
 phalange
 špička prstu, f. *shpichkě p^erstū*,
 the tip of the finger;
 nehet, m. *něhet*, the nail
 nehty, pl. *něhty*, the nails
 kotník, m. *kotñeeek*, the knuckle
 kloub, m. *kloūb*, the joint.

Noha, f. *nõhã*, the leg, the foot;
nohy, pl. *nõhy*, the legs, the feet;
chodidlo, n. *khoďidlõ*, the foot
tlapa, f. *tlãpã*, the sole of the foot;
stehno, n. *stěhnõ*, the thigh
stehenní kost, f. *stěhẽñee kost*, the
 thigh-bone
hnát, m. *hnát*, the shin
lýtko, n. *leetkõ*, the calf of the leg;
koleno, n. *kolẽnõ*, the knee
přehyb kolena, m. *prshẽhyb kolẽnã*,
 the knee-joint

Srdce, n. *s^erdse*, the heart
osrdí, n. *oss^erd^eee*, the pericardium
komora, f. *kõmorã*, the ventricle
plíce, pl. *pleetsẽ*, the lungs
játra, pl. *yãtra*, the liver
slezina, f. *slezinã*, the spleen
ledvina, f. *ledvinã*, the kidney
měchýř, m. *myěkheersh*, the bladder
žluč, f. *žlũch*, the gall, the bile;

pata, f. *pãtã*, the heel
prsty u nohy, pl. *p^ersty ů nõhy*,
 the toes
palec u nohy, n. *pãlets ů nõhy*, the
 big toe;
malík u nohy, m. *mãleek ů nõhy*,
 the little toe;
plosko-nohý, *ploskõ-nõhee*, flat-foot-
 ed;
kolo-nohý, *kolõ-nõhee*, bow-legged.

žluční měchýř, m. *žlũchẽñee m.*, the
 gall-bladder
žaludek, m. *žãlũdek*, the stomach
střevo, n. *strshẽvõ*, the intestine, the
 gut;
střeva, pl. *strshẽvã*, the bowels
tenká střeva, the lesser intestines
tlustá střeva, *tlũstã s.* the larger in-
 testines;
konečník, m. *konechẽñee k*, the rectum.

Ústrojí, n. *oostroyee*, organi m, con-
 stitution;
dýchatí, *deekhãt*, to breathe
dýchání, n. *deekhãñi*, breathing, res-
 piration;
dýchací ústrojí, *deekhãtsee oostroyee*,
 respiratory organs;
dech, m. *děkh*, the breath;
lehký dech, *lěhkee děkh*, easy breath-
 ing;
těžký dech, *těshkee děkh*, heavy
 breathing;
dechnutí, n. *děkhnũťee*, one breath

vydechnouti, *vyděkhnoũt*, to draw
 breath;
vydechnouti ze sebe, v. *zẽ sěbẽ*, to
 exhale, to force out the
 breath;
vdechnouti do sebe, *vděkhnoũt dõ*
sěbẽ, to inhale;
oddechnouti si, *oděkhnoũt si*, to
 breath easily, to feel re-
 lief;
trávití, *trãvit* } to digest, to con-
ztrávití, *strãvit* } sume:
zažívatí, *zãžeevãt*, to digest

trávení, n. *tráveñi* } digestion
 zažívání, n. *zážeeváñi* }
 zaživací ústrojí, *zážeevătsee oostro-*
yee, digestive apparatus;
 moč, m. *moch*, the urine
 močení, n. *mochěñi*, urination
 močiti, *mochit*, to urinate
 stolice, f. *stolitsě*, stool, evacuation;
 míti stolicí, *meet stolitsi*, to go to
 stool; to have open bowels;
 výkal, *veekál*, the excrement, the
 discharge;
 lejno, n. *leynö* }
 trus, m. *trüss* } the dung
 oběh krve, m. *obyěh k^errvě*, circula-
 tion of the blood;
 krváceti, *k^ervătset*, to bleed
 krvácení, n. *k^ervătseñi*, the bleeding
 měsíčné, n. *myěseechné*, the men-
 struation
 plod, m. *plöđ*, the fruit
 ploditi, *plöđit*, to bear (fruit etc.);
 to beget;

Duch, m. *dűkh*, the spirit; the mind
 or intellect;
 duše, f. *dűshě*, the soul
 duchovní, *dűkhovñee* } spiritual,
 duševní, *dűshěvñee* } intellectual;
 mysl, f. *missl*, the mind
 důmysl, m. *doomissl* }
 schop, m. *skhöp*, } the intellect
 rozum, m. *rozűm*, the reason, the
 understanding;
 zdravý rozum, *zdrávěe rozűm*, com-
 mon sense;
 soudnost, f. *soűdnost*, the judgment

plození, n. *plözeñi*, the bearing, the
 begetting;
 porod, m. childbirth
 poroditi, *poröđit*, to be delivered;
 pracovati ku porodu, *prătsovăt kű*
poröđű, to be in labor;
 šestinedělí, n. *shěst'ined'eele*, lying-in
 šestinedělka, f. *shěst'ined'elkű*, a
 woman in childbed;
 je těhotná, *yě t'ehötnű*, she is with
 child;
 čeká se do kouta, *chekű sě dö köűťű*,
 she expects to be confined;
 je v koutě, *yě f'köűťe* } she is confined,
 slehla, *slěhlű* } (in childbed);
 po koutě, *pö köűťe*, after childbirth,
 after confinement;
 obcování, n. *obtsöväñi*, the inter-
 course
 obcovati, *obtsövăt*, to have inter-
 course;
 pohlavní obcování, *pohlűvñee o.*
 tělesné obcování, *t'eelessné o.*
 sexual intercourse.

mysl, *smissl*, the sense
 zrak, m. *zrűk*, the sight
 sluch, m. *slűkh*, the hearing
 chuť, f. *khűť*, the taste
 čich, cit, m. *chich*, *tsűt*, the smell,
 the feeling;
 hmat, m. *hmăt*, the touch
 pamět, f. *pűmyět*, the memory
 smyslný, á, é *smisslnee*, sensual
 smyslnost, f. *smisslnost*, sensuality
 nesmysl, m. *něsmissl*, nonsense
 nesmyslný, á, é *něsmisslnee*, sense-
 less, nonsensical.

A sound body, — a
sound mind.

A sound mind in a
sound body

I have sound limbs, —
and that is a great
gift.

The bone is hollow and
contains marrow.

That man is lean but
muscular.

That lady has excitable
nerves.

Young blood — hot
blood,

The pulse beats slowly,
beats fast.

The pulse is normal, —
regular, — irregular.

The beating of the
heart and the beating
of the pulse agree.

Every little vein in the
body contains blood.

Fair hair and blue eyes
prevail in the north,
— dark hair and
black eyes in the
south.

Long hair, short wit, —
says an old proverb.

The European race has
a white skin, the Af-

**Zdravé tělo, — zdravý
duch.**

**Zdravý duch ve zdra-
vém těle.**

**Mám zdravé údy, — a
to jest veliký dar.**

**Kost je dutá a obsahu-
je morek.**

**Ten člověk je hubený,
ale svalnatý.**

**Ta dáma má popudlivé
nervy.**

**Mladá krev — horká
krev.**

**Tepna bije pomalu, —
bije prudce.**

**Tepna je normální, —
pravidelná, — nepra-
videlná.**

**Tlukot srdce a bití tep-
ny se shodují (or
shodují).**

**Každá žilka v těle ob-
sahuje krev.**

**Plavý vlas a modré o-
či panují (or panu-
jou) na severu, —
tmavý vlas a černé
oči na jihu.**

**Dlouhé vlasy, krátký
rozum, praví staré
příslloví.**

**Plemeno evropské má
bílou pleť, plemeno**

*zdravé tělo, — zdravěe
důkh.*

*zdravěe důkh v zdra-
vém těle.*

*mám zdravé oody, — a
tō jest velikee dar.*

*kost yě dutá ā obsahūyě
morek.*

*ten chlovyěk yě hūběnee,
ālě svalnātee.*

*tā dāmā má popūdlivě
nervy.*

*mladá kref — horká
kref.*

*tepna biyě pomālū, —
biyě prūdsě.*

*tepna yě normālñee, —
prāvidelnā, — nēprā-
videlnā.*

*tlūkot s^e rdsě ā biťtee tep-
ny sě s-hodūyōū.*

*každā žilkā fťelě obsā-
hūyě kref.*

*plāvee vlāss ā modréōchi
pānūyee nā sēvēřū, —
tmāvee vlāss ā cherné
ōchi nā yeehū.*

*dloūhé vlāsy, krátkee
rozūm, — pravee sū-
ré prsheeslovee.*

*plēmenō evropské má
beeloū pleť, plēmenō*

rican race a black skin.

Youth has a smooth face,—old age makes wrinkles.

A high forehead, a keen eye, long moustaches, — such was the young man.

The eyes are the organ of sight, the ears (are the organ of) hearing;—the nose is the organ of smell.

Young girls usually have coral lips.

Babies have chubby cheeks.

You still have a full set of teeth (literally: "all the teeth").

I have all (my) front teeth, but a few molars are wanting;— I had them pulled.

Why did you have them pulled? — Because they ached me; they were decayed.

A decayed tooth always aches; — it is best to pull it out.

The pulling of teeth is a painful operation,

africké černou.

**Mládí má hladké líce,
— stáří dělá vrásky.**

**Vysoké čelo, bystré oko,
dlouhé kníry, —
takový byl mladík.**

**Oči jsou orgán zraku,
uši sluchu; — nos je
nástroj čichu.**

**Mladé dívky mívají ko-
ralové rty.**

**Děcka mají boubelaté
tváře.**

**Vy ještě máte všechny
zuby.**

**Mám všechny přední
zuby, ale pár stoli-
ček mi chybí; — dal
jsem je vytrhnouti.
Proč jste je dal trhati?
— Proto že mě bo-
lely; byly vyžrané.**

**Vyžraný zub vždycky
bolí; nejlíp ho vytr-
hnouti.**

**Trhání zubů je bolest-
ná operace, — ob-**

áfritské chernoŭ.

*mlád'ee má hladké leetsě,
— stár'shee d'elá vrásky.*

*visoké chellō, bistré okō,
dlouhé knēery, — tdko-
vee bill mlād'eeek.*

*ochi soŭ orgán zrakŭ,
ŭshi slŭkhŭ; — noss
yě nástroy chikhŭ.*

*mládé d'ee'fky meevāyee
korāl'ové rti.*

*d'etskā māyee boŭbellāté
tvārshē.*

*vy yesh't'e mātē fshēkh-
ny zŭby.*

*mám fshēkhny prshēd-
nēe zŭby; ālē pár sto-
lichek me khībee; —
dāl sem yě vyt' r'hnoŭt
proch stē yě dāl t' r'hāt?
— proto že myě bolē-
ly; billi vižrāné.*

*vyžranee zŭb ditski bo-
lee; — neyleep hō vy-
t' r'hnoŭt.*

*t' r'hānēe zŭboo yě bolest-
ná ōperātsē, — obzlāsh't*

-especially when the tooth has a big root. Children lose the milk-teeth;—they fall out of themselves.

With the teeth we bite; hence they are of a very hard substance.

The teeth are set (liter. "sit") in the jaw-bone

The windpipe carries the air into the lungs, where the blood is oxydized.

The ribs inclose the thoracic cavity.—There are true ribs and false ribs.

The spinal column is composed of links, which we call vertebrae.

Burdens are most easily carried (i. e. "we carry") on shoulders.

The hand is an exceedingly important member.—The hand has five fingers.

The negroes usually have strong arms.

Whoever walks a great deal, must have sound legs.

The stubbing of the big toe causes pain.

zvlášť má-li zub velký kořen.

Děti ztrácejí mléčné zuby; — vypadají samy.

Zuby kousáme; proto jsou z velmi tvrdé látky.

Zuby sedí v čelisti.

Průdušnice vede vzduch do plic, kde krev se okysličí.

Žebra zavírají hrudní dutinu. — Jsou pravá žebra a falešná žebra.

Páteř skládá se ze článků, které nazýváme obratle.

Břemena nosíme nejsnáze na plecích.

Ruka jest úd nesmírně důležitý. — Ruka má pět prstů.

Negrové mívají silné paže.

Kdo chodí mnoho pěšky, musí mít zdravé nohy.

Zakopnutí palce u nohy dělá bolest.

má-li zůb velkee korshěn.

děti strátsee mléchné zuby; — vypadāyee sāmy.

zuby koūsāmě; proto soũ zvellmi tvrdélátky.

zuby sědēe fchělísti.

prood ůshñitsěvždě vzdůkh dō plīts, gdě kref sě okyslichee.

žebra zāveerāyee hrūdñee důťvinũ. — soũ prāvā žebra ā fāleshná žebra.

pātersh skládā sě zě chlānkoo, které nāzeevāmě obrātlě.

brshēmēnā noseemē neysnāzě nā pletseekh.

růkă yest ood nēsmeer ñe doolěžitēe. — růkă má pyět pērsto.

nēgrové meevāyee silné pažě.

gdō khodēe mnōhō pyěshky, mŭsee meet zdrāvé nōhy.

zākopnuťee pāltsě ů nōhy dělā bōlest.

The digestive apparatus is a vital organ. Food is digested in the stomach and in the bowels.

Zaživací ústrojí jest životní orgán.

Pokrm ztráví se v žaludku a ve střevách.

*zážeevătsee oostroyee
yest životněe orgán.
pokrm strávee sě v žaludkū a vě strěshě-
vákū.*

VOCABULARY.

Dar, m. *dār*, the gift
tlukot, m. *tlūkot*, the beating
kyslík, m. *kissleek*, oxygen
okysličiti, *okisslichit*, to oxygenate
dušík, m. *dūsseek*, nitrogen
vzduch, m. *vzdūkh*, the air
pokrm, m. *po^erm*, the food
orgán, m. } the organ
nástroj, m. *nástroy* }
článek, m. *chlánek*, the link
neger, m. *neg^er*, the negro
mládí, n. *mlád^eee*, youth
mladík, m. *mlád^eeeek*, the young man
 dívka, f. *d^eefka*, the girl
látka, f. *lătka*, the material, the stuff;
žilka, f. *žilka*, a small vein;
pleť, f. the skin
příslloví, n. *prshéeslovee*, the proverb
plemeno, n. *plěměň* } the race
plémě, n. *plémyě* }
břemeno, n. *brshěmeně*, the burden
dutý, á, é *dūtee*, hollow
prudký, á, é *prūdkee*, fast
prudce, adv. *prūdsě*, fast, rapidly;
popudlivý, á, é *pōpūdlivee*, excitable
normální, *normálⁿěe*, normal
pravidelný, *prāvidelnee*, regular
pravý, á, é *prāvee*, true, right;
falešný, á, é *fālěshnee*, false

plavý, á, é *plāvee*, fair, blonde;
koralový, á, é *korālovee*, coral (adj.)
boubelatý, á, é *boūbēlātee*, chubby
bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
vyžraný, á, é *vyžrānee*, decayed
důležitý, á, é *doolēžitee*, important
takový, á, é *tākovee*, such
nesmírně, *něsmeerⁿě*, exceedingly
pěšky, *pyěshky*, on foot
obsahovati, *obsāhōvāti*, to contain
panovati, *pānovāt*, to reign, to pre-
vail;

shodovati se, *shodōvāt sě*, to agree
chyběti, *khīb^yět*, to be wanting;
trhati, *t^erhāt*, to pull, to tear;
trhání, n. *t^erhāⁿěe*, the pulling
vytrhnout, *vyt^erhnoūt*, to pull out;
padati, *pādāt*, to fall
vypadati, *vypādat* } to fall out;
vypadnouti, *vypādnoūt* }
kousati, *koūsāt*, to bite
nazývati, *nāzeevāt*, to call (by a name)
skládati se (ze), *sklādāt sě*, to be
composed (of);
zavíratí, *zāveerāt*, to inclose (also
"to shut");
zakopnouti, *zākopnoūt*, to stub;
zakopnutí, n. *zākopnūt^eee*, the stub-
bing.

Disease and cure.

NEMOC a LÉČENÍ.

Nemoc, *němots*, sickness, illness, disease;

lehká nemoc, *lěhká n.* light disease;

těžká nemoc, *těžká n.* acute or dangerous disease;

nemocen, *cna, cno němotsen* } sick,
nemocný, *á, é*) němotsnee* } ill, diseased

těžce nemocen, *teshtsě n.* very sick, dangerously sick;

býti nemocen, *beet němotsěn* } to be
stonati, *stonăt* } sick;

roznemoci se, *rōzněmōtsisě* } to fall
rozstonati se, *rōstonăt sě,* } sick; to
be taken
sick;

choreba, *f. khōrobă*, ailment, affection;

chorobný, *á, é khōrobnee*, ailing, affected;

marod, (*coloq.*) *mārod*, ailing, sickly;
marediti, *mārod'it*, to be ailing;

nedůh, *m. nēdūh* } ailment, affec-
neduživost, *f. nēdū-* } tion, infirm-
živost, } ity, disorder;

neduživý, *á, é nēdūživěe*, ailing, infirm;

neduživec, *m. nēdūživets,* } sickly or
maroda, *m. mārodă* } infirm
person;

mrzák, *m. m^erzák*, cripple

zmrzačiti, *zm^erzăchit*, to cripple

zmrzačen, *á, o**)* *zm^erzăchěn* } cripp-
zmrzačený, *á, é zm^erzăchěnee* } pled
zmrzačenost, *f. zm^erzăchěnost*, the
crippled condition;

rána, *f. ránă*, the wound

raniti, *rănīt* } to wound
poraniti, *porănīt* }

rauěný, *á, é răněnee*, wounded

poranění, *n. porăněněe* } the wound-
úraz, *m. oorăz* } ing, a hurt
or injury;

ublížití, *ūbležīt* } to hurt,

uškoditi, *ūshkod'it* } to injure;

uhoditi, *ūhod'it*, to strike, to hurt
by striking;

pohmožditi, *pōhmožd'it*, to bruise;

pohmoždění, *n. pōhmožděněe*, the
bruising, a bruise;

uskřípnouti, *ūskrsheepnoūt*, to jam,
to squeeze;

uskřípnutí, *n. ūskrsheepnūt'ee*, a
contusion by squeezing;

říznouti, *rsheeznoūt*, to cut

říznutí, *n. rsheeznūt'ee* } a cut;
řez, *m. rshěz* }

píchnouti, *peekhnoūt* } to stab, to

bodnouti, *bodnoūt* } pierce, to prick;

kousnouti, *koūsnoūt*, to bite

kousnutí, *n. koūsnnūt'ee*, a bite.

*) Nemocný is the definite, nemocen the indefinite adjective. See Note 2 on page 103.

**) Zmrzačen is the passive participle (see Lesson XXXVII), from which the adjective zmrzačený is derived.

Lékař, m. *lékarsh*, the physician
doktor, m. *doktör*, the doctor
lékařství, n. *lékarsh-stvoe*, the medical profession:

lékařský, *lékarshkee*, medical
porodní lékař, *pörodñee lékarsh*, the accoucheur

porodní bába, p. *bábä* } the midwife
babička, *bäbichka* }

ranhojč, m. *ränhöyich*, the surgeon
zubní lékař, *zűbñee lékarsh*, the dentist

vyléčiti, *vylécht*, }
vyhojiti, *vyhöyit* } to cure, to heal
uzdraviti, *űzdrävít* }

vyléčení, **vyhojení**, **uzdravení**, the cure

uzdraviti se, *űzdrävít sě* } to get
pozdravitise, *pozdrävít sě* } well,
vystonati se, *vystöñät sě* } to recover;

umřítí, *űmršheet*, }
zemřítí, *zembršheet* } to die
skonati, *skönät*

Bolest, f. *bolest* } the pain,
bolení, n. *bolěñi* } the ache;

bolení břicha, b. *brshikhä*, belly-ache
kolika, f. *kolikä*, the colic

mám bolení, I have a pain in the bowels or stomach;

bolení hlavy, b. *hlävy*, head-ache

“ **zubů**, č. *zűbű*, tooth-ache

bolest v životě, b. *vűživöťe*, pain in the abdomen;

“ **v kříži**, b. *fkršhee-ži*, pain in the small of the back;

umíratí, *űmeerät*, to be dying;

vypustiti ducha, *vypűstít dükhä*, to breathe one's last;

smrt, f. *sm^ert*, the death

náhlá smrt, *nählä s.*, sudden death

prohlédnouti, *prohlédnout* } to exam-
proskoumati, *proskoűmat* } ine, to
vyšetřiti, *vyshětrshít* } probe;

raditi se, *rädít sě*, to consult

předepsati, *prshěděpsät*, to prescribe

dieta, *de-ětä*

mírnost v jídle, } the diet
meernost v. yeedlě }

sbíratí se, *sbeerät sě*, to be recovering;

hubnouti, *hűbnoűt*, to lose flesh;

tloustnouti, *tlouűstnoűt*, to gain flesh;

slábnouti, *slábnoűt*, to grow weak;

sílití, *seelit*, to gain strength;

slabost, f. *släbost*, weakness

síla, f. *seelä*, strength.

bolest v zádech, b. *vzäděkh*, pain in the back;

“ **v noze (v nohou)**, b. *vnöžě (v-nöhoű)*, pain in the leg, or foot (in the legs, or feet);

“ **v ruce (v rukou)**, b. *vrűtsě (v-rűkoű)*, pain in the hand, or arm (in the hands, or arms);

bolest u srdce, b. *űs^erdse*, pain in the heart region;

“ **uvnitř**, b. *űvñitrsh*, pain inside

bolestný, *á, é bolestnee*, painful
 bolavý, *á, é bolávee*, sore
 boule, *f. boůlě*, a boil, a bump;
 vřed, *m. vrshěd*, ulcer
 krtice, *pl. k^ertitsě*, scrofula
 rak, *m. řák*, cancer
 otok, *m. ťtok*, a swelling;
 oteklý, *á, é ťtěklee*, swelled, swollen
 oteci, *ťťetsi*, to swell
 horký, *á, é horkee*, hot
 horkost, *f.* } the heat, the fe-
 rozpálenost, *f.* } ver, the feverishness

Zápal, *m. zápāl* } inflammation
 zánět, *m. zāñet* }
 zapálený, *á, é zápálēnee* } inflamed
 zanícený, *á, é zāñeetsēnee* }
 zápal plic, *zápāl plits*, inflammation
 of the lungs;
 zápal mozku, *z. mōzkā*, inflamma-
 tion of the brain;
 “ mozkové blány, *z. mōzkové*
blány, meningitis;
 zápal střev, *z. štrshěf*, inflamma-
 tion of the bowels;
 zápal pobřišnice, *z. pobrshishñitsě*,
 peritonitis;
 “ pohrudnice, *z. pohrūdñitsě*,
 pleurisy;
 souchoť, *pl. soůkhotě* } the con-
 úbytě, *pl. oobyťe* } sumption;
 tuberkule, *pl. tūberkulě* }
 ochroma, *ťkhromā* } paralysis
 ochrnutí, *ťkh^ernūtēe* }
 mrtvice, *f. m^ertvitsě*, apoplexy
 záškrt, *m. záshk^ert*, diphtheria

rozpálen, *a, o rospálēn*, feverish;
 horečka, *f. horěchkā* } the ty-
 horká nemoc, *horkā nēmots* } phus
 hlavnička, *f. hlāvñichkā* } fever;
 zimnice, *f. zimñitsě*, the ague
 žlutá zimnice, *žlutā z.* the yellow-
 fever;

mraziti, *mrāzit*, to chill
 mrazení, *n. mrāzēñi*, a chill, a shiver
 mrazí mě, *mrāzee myě*, I feel a chill;
 třásti se zimou, *trshāst sě zimou*, to
 shiver with cold.

krup, *m. krūp*, the croup
 psotník, *m. psottñeek*, the fits
 spála, *m. spālā* } the measles
 šarlát, *m. shārlāt* }
 osutiny, *pl. ossūtīny*, the chicken-
 pox
 neštovice, *pl. neshtōvitsě*, the small-
 pox
 očkovati, *ťchkovāt*, to vaccinate
 očkování, *ťchkovāñi*, vaccination
 očkovaný, *á, é ťchkovānee*, vacci-
 nated
 výraz, *m. veerāz*, eruption
 vyražený, *á, é vyrāžēnee*, full of
 eruption;
 kožní nemoc, *f. kožñee nēmots*, skin-
 disease;
 lišej, *m. lishey*, the lichen
 mol, *m.* the ringworm
 svrab, *m.* the itch
 svrběti, *sv^erbýt.* to itch
 strup, *m. strūp*, the scab, the scurf;
 strupovitý, *á, é strūpōvitee*, scabby

hostec, m. *hostěts* } rheumatism
 revma, n. *revmā* }
 hostečný, *hostěchnee* } rheu-
 revmatický, *revmātitskee* } matic
 srdeční vada, f. *s^erděchñee vādā*,
 heart-disease;

vodnatelnost, f. *vōdnātellnost*, drop-
 sy;

vodnatelný, á, é *vōdnātelnee*, drop-
 sical

zádech, m. *zādūkh*, asthma

zádušlivý, á, é *zādūshlivee*, asthmatic

kašel, m. *kāshel*, the cough

modrý kašel, *modree k.*, the whoop-
 ing cough

kašlati, *kāshlāt*, to cough

vyhazovati, *vyhāzōvāt*, to throw up;

dáviti, *dāvit* } to vomit

blíti, *bleet* }

dávení, n. *dávēñi* } the vomiting;

blíti, n. *blitēe* }

Zlomiti, *zломit* } to break

zlámati, *zlāmāt* }

zlomený, á, é *zломěnee*, broken

zlámanina, f. *zlāmāñinā* } a broken

zlomenina, f. *zlōm.....* } bone, a

puklá kost, f. *pūklā kost*, a cracked
 bone;

vymknouti, *vymknoūt*, to dislocate:

vymknouti kloub, v. *kloūb*, to sprain
 a joint;

vymknutí, n. *vymknūtēe*, a disloca-
 tion, a sprain;

srovnati kost, *srōvnāt kost*, to set a
 bone;

křeče, pl. *krshěchě*, cramps

mdloba, f. faintness, fainting fit;

mdlý, á, é *mdlee*, faint;

omdleti, *ōmdlēt*, to faint, to swoon;

omdlévání, n. *ōmdlēvāñi*, fainting
 fits, swooning.

nezáživnost, f. *něžāživnost* } indi-
 špatné trávení, n. *shpātné* } gestion

záživný, á, é *zāživnee*, digestible

nezáživný, *něžāživnee*, indigestible

větry, pl. *vyětry* }

nadouvání, n. *nāddouvāñi* } wind, flatu-
 lence;

nadýmání, n. *nāddeemāñi* }

nadmutý, á, é *nādmūtee*, flatulent

běhavka, f. *byěhāfka* } the

průjem, m. *prooyem* } diarrhea

zástava, f. *zástāvā* } stoppage in

těžká stolice, *těshkā* } the bowels,
stolitsē } constipation,
 costiveness;

úplavice, f. *ooplāvitsē*, dysentery.

dáti do desek, *dāt dō dēssek*, to splint

obvázati ránu, *ōbvāzāt ránū*, to dress
 a wound;

obvazek, m. *ōbvāzek*, a dressing, a
 bandage;

průtrž, m. *proot^ers^h*, the rupture

průtržní pás, m. the truss

hrb, m. *h^erb*, a hump, a hunch;

hrbáč, *h^erbāch*, a humpback;

hrbatý, á, é *h^erbātee*, humpbacked;

kulhati, *kūlhāt*, to walk lamely;

kulhavý, á, é *kūlhāvee* } lame

chromý, á, é *khromee* }

dopadati, *dōpādāt*, to halt.

It is said that Mr. Hanush is sick.

Is he laid up?—Yes, he took to his bed.

Is he very sick? — I think it is serious.

Call a physician.— Send for a doctor

We have sent for him.
— The doctor has been here already.

When was Mr. Hanush taken sick?— Yesterday morning; all at once he felt a chill, then he felt feverish.

What is the trouble?— What disease has he? I think it is inflammation of the lungs.

That would be dangerous.—What does the physician say?

The doctor thinks that he has inflammation of the lungs.

Then I pity him.

How is Mr. Swoboda to-day? is he better? Always the same thing; — no better, no worse; — there is no change.

Pan Hanuš je prý nemocen.

Leží? — Ano, ulehnul.

Je mu tuze zle? — Myslím že je to povážlivé.

Zavolejte lékaře. — Pošlete pro doktora.

Poslali jsme pro něj. — Doktor už tu byl.

Kdy se pan Hanuš rozstonal? — Včera ráno; z nenadání dostal mrazení, pak horkost.

Co je mu? — Nač se rozstonal?

Myslím že na zánět plic.

To by bylo nebezpečné. — Co povídá lékař?

Doktor myslí že má zápal plic.

To ho lituju.

Jak je panu Svobodovi dnes? Je mu líp?

Pořád stejně; — ani líp, ani hůř; — nic se to nemění.

pān hānūsh yě prey němotsěn.

ležee? — ānō, ůlēhnul.

yě mū toozě zlě? — misleem že yě tō pōvážlivé.

zāvoleyťě lékārshě. — pōshlětě prō dōktorā.

pōslālī smě prō hēy. — dōktor ůsh tū bill.

gdy sě pān h. rostōnāl? — fcherā rānō; zně nādāñi dostāl mrāzěñi, pāk horkost.

tsō yě mū? — nāch sě rostōnāl?

misleem že nā záñet plits.

tō bi billō něbespěchné. — tsō poveedā lékarsh?

dōktor mislee že má zápāl plits.

tō hō litūyū.

yāk yě pāñū swōbōdōvi dnēs? yě mū leep.

porshād steyñe; — āñi leep, āñi hoorsh; — ñits sě tō nemyēñee.

It does not grow worse,
— it doesn't grow
better;

What disease has he?—
What is his disease?
— What ails him?

The physician himself
doesn't know yet; —
until it develops.*)—
It is not known what
will come of it.

I hope it will not be so
bad.

I hope he will recover.
— Perhaps he will
soon get well.

I don't know if he will
get over it. — Who
knows if he will get
well.

He is well along in
years already.

Well, he needs good
nursing. — Give him
the best care possible.

We nurse him faith-
fully.—We tend him
as best we can.

Yes, tend him as well

**Nehorší se to, — ne-
lepší se to.**

**Co má za nemoc? Ja-
kou má nemoc? —
Nač stůně?**

**Lékař sám neví ještě;
— až jak se to uká-
že. — Neví se co z
toho bude.**

**Doufám že nebude to
tak zlé.**

**Doufám že z toho vy-
jde. — Snad se brzo
uzdraví.**

**Nevím vyjde-li z toho.
— Kdož ví jestli z
toho vyjde.**

Už je v letech.

**Inu, potřebuje dobré
ošetření.—Dejte mu
všemožnou péči.**

**Ošetřujeme ho pilně.
— Sloužíme mu co
nejlíp můžeme.**

Ano, služte mu co

*něhorshee sě tō — ne-
lepshee sě tō.*

*tsō má zā němots? —
yākoŭ má němots? —
nāch stoonē?*

*lékarsh sám něvee yesh-
tē; — āsh yāk sě tō
ūkāže; — něvee sě tsō
stōhō būdē*

*doŭfám že něbūdē tō
tāk zlé.*

*doŭfám že stōhō veedē.
— snād sě b^erzō ŭ-
zdrāvee.*

*něveem veedēli stōhō. —
gdōž vee yestli stōhō
veedē.*

ŭsh yē vletēkh.

*inŭ, potsrshēbŭyē dōbrē
oshētrshēñi.—deytē mŭ
fshēmožnoŭ péchi.*

*ōshētrshŭyēmē hō pil-
ñe.—sloužēemē mŭ tsō
neyleep moožēmē.*

ānō, slŭshtē mu tsō

*) **Až jak se to ukáže**, — until it shows itself or develops, — is in fact an elliptical sentence, meaning: “We must wait, until it develops”. Sentences of this character are frequently used; for instance:

Až jak bude, “until (we see) how it will be;” — “(it depends upon) how it will be”.

Až jak to dopadne, “until (we see) how it will come out”; — (it depends upon) how it will come out”.

as you can. — Nurse him in every possible manner.	možná. — Obslužte ho se vším.	možná. — obslúshťe ho sě fsheem.
We are with him day and night.	Jsmě u něj ve dne v noci.	smě ů ñey vě dně vnotsi.
Has the doctor prescribed for him? — Yes, he wrote a prescription.	Předepsal mu doktor? — Ano, napsal recept.	prshěděpsal mŭ dōktor? — ānō, nāpsal retsept.
Have you sent to the drug-store? — We sent there right away. — The druggist prepared it immediately.	Poslali jste do lékárny? — Poslali jsme tam hned. — Lékárník to připravil okamžitě.	pōslāli stě dō lékárny? — pōslāli smě tām hněd. — lékārñík tō prshiprāvil ōkāmžítě.
The patient takes his medicine regularly.	Pacient užívá pravidelně.	pātsient ůžeevā prāvidelñe.
I hope to God that he will get well.	Dá bůh že se pozdraví.	dā booh že sě pozdrāvee.
I hope that he will soon be on his legs.	Doufám že bude brzo na nohou.	doŭfām že būdē b ^e rzō nā nōhoŭ.
I fear that he will soon be "on the board" (i. e. dead).	Bojím se že bude brzo na prkně.	boyeem sě že būdē b ^e rzō nā p ^e rkñe.
I am afraid that nothing will help him.	Bojím se že nic mu nepomůže*).	boyeem sě že ñits mŭ něpōmoože.
I fear that he will die.	Obávám se že umře.	ōbāvām se že ůmrshě.
Is it true that Mr. Alesh died?	Je to pravda, že pan Aleš umřel?	yě tō prāvdā že pān Alesh ůmrshell?
I am sorry to say it is true.	Bohužel, je to pravda.	bōhūžel, yě tō prāvdā!
When did he die? — He died at midnight. — He died toward morning.	Kdy zemřel? — Skonal o půlnoci. — Skonal k ránu.	gdŷ zemrshell? — skonāl ō poolnotsi. — skonāl krānŭ.

*) See Note 1 on page 36, about double negation.

What did he die of? —
Of inflammation of
the lungs.

Very few get over that,
— at his age.

Indeed very few! —
There was no help for
him. — The doctor
said so right off.

He said: There is no
help for him; — the
disease has been neg-
lected.

He neglected it. — He
sent for the doctor
too late.

He should have sent for
the doctor sooner. —
When the doctor
came; it was too late.

A disease must not be
neglected.

Old Mrs. Hoshek died
this morning.

She died suddenly, —
of heart disease.

She was taken sick and
in half an hour it was
all over with her.

That was a sudden
death.

It is better than to suf-
fer long.

Preserve us from long
suffering!

**Nač umřel?—Na zapá-
lení plic.**

**Z toho málo kdo vy-
jde, v jeho věku.**

**Ba málo kdo!—Nebylo
mu žádné pomoci.—
Doktor povídal to
hned.**

**Pravil: není mu po-
moci;—nemoc je za-
nedbána.**

**Zanedbal to. — Poslal
pro doktora pozdě.**

**Měl poslati pro dokto-
ra dříve.—Když dok-
tor přišel, bylo poz-
dě.**

**Nemoc nesmí se zane-
dbati.**

**Stará paní Hošková
skonala dnes ráno.**

**Zemřela náhle, — na
srdeční vadu.**

**Přišlo jí zle a za půl
hodiny bylo po ní.**

To byla náhlá smrt.

**Je to lepší než trápit
se dlouho.**

**Jen ne dlouhé trápe-
ní!**

*nách ůmrshell? — nă
zăpáleñi plits.*

*stôhď málď gdď veedě,
— vyěhď vyěkű.*

*Bă málď gdď! —nebillď.
mă žădné pomotsi. —
ďďctor pďveedďl tď
hněď.*

*prăvil: neyñi mă po-
motsi; — němots yě
zănedbănă.*

*zănedbăl tď. — pďslăl
pro doctďră pozďe.*

*myěll pďslăt pro doctď-
ră drsheel. — gdyž
doctďr prshishell, billď
pozďe.*

*němots něsmee sě ză-
nedbăt.*

*stără păñi hoshkďvă
skonălă dness rănď.*

*zemrshellă năhlě, — nă
s^e rdechñee văďď.*

*prshishlď yee zlě ě ză
pool hodďiny billď pď
ñi.*

tď billă năhlă sm^ert.

*yě tď lepshee nesh trá-
pit sě dloűhď.*

yen ně dloűhé trápěñi.

Chronic consumption is a slow disease; — acute consumption has a quick run.

Drowning is a cruel death;—so is strangling.—Hanging is an easy death, if the neck is broken.

A. took his own life.— he committed suicide
He drowned himself;— he hanged himself.— he poisoned himself; — he shot himself;— he cut his throat; — he thrust a knife into his breast.

And why did he do it? — Most likely he was insane.

Chronické součotiny jsou zdlouhavá nemoc;—akutní součotiny mají rychlý běh. Utopení je těžká smrt; ndušení taky. — Oběšení je lehká smrt, zlomí-li se vaz.

A. vzal si život;—spáchal samovraždu. Utopil se; — oběsil se; otrávil se; — zastřelil se; — podřezal si krk; — vrazil si nůž do prsou.

A proč to udělal? — Nejspíš byl šílený.

khronitské soukhotiny jsou zdlouhavá nemots; — akutní soukhotiny máyee rykhlee byēh. ůtopení yē teshká sm^{rt}; — ůdūshēni tāke. — obyēshēni yē lēhká sm^{rt}, zlomee-li sē vāz.

A. vzal si život; — spáchal sāmōvrāždū. ůtopil sē; — obyēsil sē; — otrávil sē; — podrshēzdl si k^{rk}; — vrazil si noož dō p^{er}-soū.

ā proč tō ůdēlāl? — neyspeesh bill sheelēnee.

VOCABULARY.

Nemocný, m. němotsnee } the male
pacient, m. pātsiēnt } patient;
nemocná, f. němotsná } the female
pacientka, f. pātsiēntkā } patient;
lékárna, f. lékárnā } the drugstore,
apatyka, f. āpātikā } the pharmacy;
lékárník, m. lékárnik, } the druggist
apatykář, m. āpātikārsh } the apothecary;
horkost, f. horkost, the fever heat;
mrazení, n. mrāzēni, the chill
předpis, m. prshēdpis } the prescription;
recept, m. retsept } the receipt,
předepsati, prshēdēpsāt, to prescribe

připraviti, prshiprāviti, to prepare;
péče, f. péchē, the care
pečovati (o), pēchōvāt, to care (for);
ošetření, n. oshētrshēni, the nursing
ošetřovati, oshētrshōvāt, to nurse,
to tend;
sloužiti, sloūžit } to serve, to wait
obsloužiti, obsloūžit } on, to tend:
potřebovati, potrshēbōvāt, to want,
to need;
báti se, bāt sē, to fear
obávati se, obāvāt sē, to apprehend
trápit se, trāpit sē, to suffer

trápení, n. *trápěňi*, the suffering;
zanedbati, *zănědbăt*, to neglect
zanedbán, a, o neglected
měniti se, *myěňit sě*, to change
nemění se, *nemyěňee sě*, it does not
change;
horšiti se, *horshit sě*, to grow worse
nehorsí se, *nehorshee sě*, it does not
grow worse;
ukázati, *ūkázăt*, to show
ukáže se, *ūkázě sě*, it will show it-
self;

vyjítí z toho, *ve-yeet stōhō*, to come
out of it;
nebezpečí, n. *něbespěchee*, the danger
nebezpečný, á, é *něbespěchnee*, dan-
gerous
okamžik, m. *okāmžik*, the moment
málo kdo, *málō gdō*, very few people
behužel, *bōhūžell*, alas; I am sorry
to say;
vaz, m. *vāz*, the back of the head;
the neck:

Drugs and medicines.

LÉČIVA a LÉKY.

Míra, f. *meeră*, the measure
váha, f. *váhă*, the weight
měřiti, *myěřhit*, to measure
vážiti, *vážit*, to weigh
míchati, *meekhăt*, to mix
prosíti, *proseet* } to garble
přebrati, *prshěbrăt* }
libra, f. *lībră*, a pound
unce, f. *ūntsě*, an ounce
lot, m. (about half an ounce);
kvintlík, m. *quintleek*, (about $\frac{1}{8}$ of
an ounce);
grán, m. a grain
lžice, f. *lžeetsě* or *žeetsě*, a spoon, a
spoonful;

Prášek, m. *prášhek*, a powder
“ na zuby, p. *nă zűby*, tooth-p.;
“ šumivý, p. *shūmivee*, Seidlitz-
powder;
“ perský, Persian powder;

lžička, f. *lžeekhă* or *žeekhă*, a small
spoon; a small spoonful;
kávová lžička, f. a coffee or tea
spoonful;
čajový šálek, m. *chayovee shálek*, a
tea-cup;
sklenice, f. *skleňitsě*, a glass
vinná sklenice, f. *wine-glass*
lžstka, f. *h^erstkă* } a hand
přehoušle, f. *prshěhoűshlě* } ful
špetka, f. *shpetkă*, a pinch
kapka, f. *kăpkă*, a drop
kapky, pl. *kăpky*, drops
pět kapek, *pyět kăpek*, five drops; etc.
dávka, f. *dăfkă*, a dose.

prášky, pl. *prášky*, powders
pilulka, f. *pillůlkă*, a pill
pilulky, pl. pills
kašička, f. *kăshichkă*, a poultice
těstíčko, n. *ťestichkă*, a paste

mazání, n. *mázání*, an ointment
 masť, f. *mášť*, salve
 lektvar, m. confection
 tinktura, f. *tinctoorá*, tincture
 flastr, m. *flást^{er}* } plaster
 náplast, m. *nápläst* }
 flizikátor, m. vesicatory
 olej, m. *olěy*, oil
 extrakt, m. extract
 výstřelek, m. *veestrshělek*, spirit
 semeno, n. *seměň* } seed
 semínko, n. *semeenkö* }
 list, m. *list*, leaf
 listí, n. *listěe*, leaves
 kořen, m. *korshěn*, root
 kořínek, m. *korsheenek*, little root
 bobule, f. *bobůlě*, bulb
 kůra, f. *koorá*, bark, peel
 šťáva, f. *šťává*, juice
 bylina, f. *billiná*, herb
 lékařská bylina, *lékarshská b.*, medicinal herb;
 odvar, m. decoction
 nálev, m. *nálef* } infusion
 výmok, m. *veemok* }

Aloe, n. *áloě*, aloes
 anjelika, f. *ányellicá*, angelica
 anýz, m. *áneez*, anise
 arabská guma, f. gum arabic
 arnika, prha, f. arnica

Baldrian (odolen, kozlík), m. water-avens;

balšám, balzám, m. *bálshám*, *bálzám*, balsam

bavlna, f. *báv^{er}lná*, cotton

roztok, m. *rostök*, solution
 dáviďlo, n. emetic
 počist'ovadlo, n. *pochist'ovádlö*, purgative
 lehký, á, é *lěhkee*, light soft, easy
 prudký, á, é *prüdkee*, drastic
 projímavý, á, é *proyeemávee*, laxative
 sílicí, *seelitsee*, tonic
 silivka, f. *silífká*, a tonic
 pro spaní, *pro spáñi*, soporific
 narkotický, *narkotitskee* } narcotic
 omamující, *omámüyeetsee* }
 močohnavý, *mochöhnávee*, diuretic
 pijavka, f. *piyáfká*, a leech
 pijavky, pl. *piyáfký*, leeches
 baňka, f. cupping-glass
 příjemný, á, é *prshée-yemnee*, agreeable, pleasant;
 odporný, á, é *odpornee* } nauseating
 ošklivý, á, é *oshklívee* }
 ošklivost, f. *oshklivost*, nausea
 kyselina, *kisselliná*, acid
 kysličník, *kisslichñeek*, oxide
 síran, m. *seerän*, sulphate.

bedrník, m. *bed^{er}ñík*, pimpernel
 bezový květ, m. *bězovee kvýět*, elder flowers;

běloba, f. *byělobá*, white lead;

bílkovina, f. *beelköviná*, albumen

blín, m. *bleen*, henbane

bobko-třešně, f. cherry-laurel

bolehlav, m. *bolěhláv*, hemlock

boží tráva (řecké seno), fenugreek seed

brambořík (svinský chleba, svinský ořech), sow-bread;
broskvové listí, n. peach-leaves;
brutnák obecný, m. borage
bříza, f. *brsheezä*, birch, (*betula alba*);

Celík, m. *tsellik*, golden-rod
cesmina (lesní kopřiva), f. holly
cink, m. *tsink*, zink
citron, m. *tsitron*, lemon
citronová kůra, f. lemon juice
cukr, m. *tsük^er*, sugar
cukr hroznový, glucose
cukr mléčný, *ts. mléchnee*, sugar of milk;
cukr olověný, *ts. olovyšnee*, sugar of lead.

Dávičný kámen, m. *dávichnee kámen*, tartar emetic;

dehet, m. *děhět*, tar
divizna, f. *ďivizná*, mullein
dobrá mysl, f. see **marjáňka**;
dračí krev, f. *dráčee hrěf*, dragon's blood;

draslík, m. (*kalium*, n.), *drässleek*, potassium

draslo, n. see **salajka**;

dřevo myší, n. *drshěvō mishee*, bitter sweet

dřevo sladké, liquorice

dřín, m. *drsheen*, dogwood

dřístal, m. barberry

drnavec, m. *d^ernävets*, wall-pellitory

droždí, see **kvasnice**;

dubinky, pl. nutgall, galls;

durman, m (panenské jablko pichlavé), stramonium seed;

dušík, m. *dšseek*, nitrogen

dušičnan olovnatý, nitrate of lead.

Ether, m. *éter*, ether

euforbium, *eūforbiūm*, euphorbia.

Feníkl, m. fennel

fialka, f. *fiálkă*, violet

fík, m. *feek*, fig

fosfor, m. phosphorus.

Gdoulové semeno, n. quince seed;

granátové jablko, n. pomegranate

guma arabská, f. gum arabic

“ **elastická**, f. gum elastic

Heřmáněk, m. *hershmánek*, chamomile

hořčice, f. *horchitsě*, mustard

hořec, m. *horshets*, gentian

houba, f. *houbă*, sponge

houby, pl. mushrooms,

hřebíček, m. *rshěbeechek*, cloves

hulevník, m. hedge-mustard

Chinin, m. *khinin*, quinine

china, f. } cinchona, Pe-

chinník pravý, m. } ruvian bark;

chlórové vápnó, n. *khlorové vápnō*, chloride of lime;

chmel, m. *khmell*, hops.

Ibiš (proskurník), m. *ibish*, marsh-mellow

Jalovec, m. *yállověts*, juniper

jaterník, m. *yäterñik*, liverwort

jed, *yěd*, } poison
 utrejch, *ūtreykh* }
 jelení roh, *yelleñee rōh*, hartshorn
 “ lůj, *y. looy*, hart's tallow
 jeřáb, m. *yersháb*, mountain ash;
 jetelice, f. (janovec, m.) broom tops
 jód, m. *yód*, iodine.

Kafr, m. *kăf'ir*, camphor
 kalamín, m. calamine
 kalanka, f. pinkroot
 kamenec, m. *kāmeněts*, alum
 kampeška, f. *kāmpeshkā*, logwood
 kastoreum, n. castor
 kaštan, m. *kāshtān*, horse-chestnut;
 kaučuk, m. India rubber;
 klejt, (kysličník olovnatý) m. *kleyt*,
 oxide of lead;
 klejicha bulvatá, butterfly-weed
 kmín, m. *kmeen*, caraway seed;
 kmín vodní, *k. vedñee*, water-hem-
 lock (fine-leaved);
 konítrud, m. hedge-hyssop
 konopí, n. *kōnopee*, hemp
 konopí indické, *k. inditské*, Indian
 hemp;
 konopný extract, m. extract of hemp
 kopytník tupolistý, m. *asarum Eu-*
ropaeum;
 kopr, m. *kop'er*, dill
 kořalka, f. see pálenka;
 korek, m. cork
 kořen hadí, m. *korshēn hād'ee*, bistort
 “ maliny, blackberry root;
 “ omanu, elicampane
 “ omějový, aconite root;

kosatec, m. *kossătets*, blue flag, iris
 versicolor;

kozinec, m. *kozínets*, tragacanth
 kozlík odolen, m. valerian
 kožokvět, m. queen's root;
 křen, m. *krshēn*, horse-radish
 krevnice, f. *krěvñitsě*, bloodroot
 křída, f. *krshēdā*, chalk
 kroupy, pl. *kroūpy*, pearl barley;
 krtičník, m. *k'rt'ichñeek*, figwort
 krušinka, *krūshinkā*, dyer's weed,
 genista;

krušicek, (pampalík), m. marigold
 kůra dubová, f. *koorā dūbōvā*, black-
 oak bark;

“ divoké třešně, wild cherry bark

“ vrbová, *k. v'rbōvā*, willow bark;

“ jilmová, *k. yilmōvā*, elm bark;

“ červenějilmy, slippery elm bark

kvasnice, pl. *kwāssñitsě*, yeast

květ, m. *kwyět*, flowers

květel, f. *kwyětell*, common toad flax

kyprej, m. *kíprey*, loosestrife

kyslík, m. *kissleek*, oxygen

kyselina, f. *kisselindā*, acid

“ citronová, citric acid

“ karbolová, carbolic acid;

“ sanytrová, nitric acid;

“ solná, muriatic acid;

“ vínová, tartaric acid.

Lep na ptáky, m. bird-lime

lentyšek, m. mastic

levandule, f. lavender

líh, m. *leeh*, alcohol

lílek červený, see dřevo myší;

limonka, f. marsh rosemary;

listí bobkové, n. laurel leaves;
lomihnat, m. common groundsel;
lopuch, (hořký kořen) m. burdock
lůj, m. *looy*, tallow;
“ jelení, hart's tallow;
“ skopový, mutton suet
lžičník, m. *lžichník*, common scurvy-grass;
lék proti hlistám, vermifuge.

Mák, m. poppy-seed
mandle hořké, pl. *mändlě horshké*, bitter almonds;
“ sladké, sweet almonds;
mařena, f. *mārshěná*, madder
marjánka, f. *māryánkā*, common marjoram;
máta, (marulka) f. catnip
máta peprná, f. peppermint
máta kadeřavá, pennyroyal
med, m. honey
měď, f. *myěď*, copper
medokvět, m. *měďokvyeť*, marsh trefoil, buckbean;
medvědice obecná, *medvyěďitsě obetsná*, bearberry leaves;
mejlí, n. (mišpule, f.) *meylee*, mistletoe
melasa, f. molasses
mléko, n. milk
mlékový punč, milk-punch toddy;
morušová šťáva, mulberry juice;
mouka bílá, f- *moůká beelá*, wheat flour;
“ černá, m. *cherná*, rye flour;
“ ovesná, m. *ověsná*, oatmeal;

mrkev, f. *m^erkeř*, carrot seed;
mýdlo, n. *meedlě*, soap
“ mazavé, soft soap
“ amygdalinové, amygdaline soap;
“ mandlové, almond oil soap;
myrha, f. myrrh
Naháč, m. see ocún;
námel, m. ergot
náprstník červený, m. foxglove
narcis kadeřavý, m. daffodil
nátržník, m. tormentil
netík, m. see ženský vlas;
netýkalka, f. touch-me-not
nové koření, n. *nově korshěňi*, allspice;
nickamínek, see skalice;
nátium, see sodík.
Ocet, m. *otset*, vinegar
ocún, m. *otsoon*, colchicum seed;
odolen, m. valerian
olej, m. *ěley*, oil
“ bavlněný, cotton-seed oil
“ z bergamotek; oil of bergamot
“ citronový, lemon oil
“ dymianový, oil of thyme, oil of organum;
“ hořčičný, oil of mustard
“ heřmánkový, chamomile oil
“ jantarový, oil of amber
“ kafrový, camphor oil
“ kokosový, cocoa-nut oil
“ koprový, oil of dill
“ krotonový, croton oil
“ lněný, flaxseed oil

olej mandlový, almond oil

“ olivový, }
 “ dřevěný } olive oil
 “ brabancový

“ ricinový, castor oil

“ růžový, oil of roses

“ sesamový, benne oil

“ skořicový, cinnamon oil

“ terpentínový, oil of turpentine

“ z volské nohy, neats-foot oil

olovo, n. *olšovď*, lead

ořech, m. *orshěkh*, nut

“ muškátový, nutmeg

orlíček, m. *orleechek*, columbine

osládič, m. *osládřich*, male fern

ožanka, f. (gamandr), germander.

Pálenka obyčejná, f. whiskey

“ vinná (francouzská), brandy

pampeliška (smetanka), f. dandelion

paprika, f. red pepper, cayenne p.

pekelný kámen, m. lapis infernalis;

pelynek, m. wormwood

peltrám, m. pellitory

pepř, m. *pěprsh*, black pepper

petružel, f. parsley-root

pijavky, pl. f. *piyǎfky*, leeches

pížmo, n. *peežmō*, musk

plavuň, f. lycopodium

plicník, m. *plitsňik*, Iceland moss:

ploštičník, m. black snakeroot, cimicifuga;

pomoraně, m. *pomorāneh*, orange

pomorančový květ, orange flowers;

pomorančová kůra, orange peel;

popel z kostí, m. *popell skost'i*, bone ash;

posed, m. white bryony

potaš (draslo), see salajka;

potměchuť, f.

psí víno červené, n. } bittersweet

protěž, f. cudweed, life-everlasting;

pryskyřice, f. *pryskyrshitsě*, resin, rosin;

pryskyrky, see španělské mouchy;

psí rmen, m. mayweed

pukavec (vlčí mák), m. *půkǎvets*, red-poppy petals;

puškvorec, m. *půshkworets*, sweet flag;

Rauta, f. *řǎūtǎ*, rue

rebarbora, f. *rebarbōrǎ*, rhubarb

rozinky, pl. f. raisins

rozmarina, f. rosemary

rozrazil, m. speedwell

rtuť, f. *rtůť*, mercury

ruřík zlomocný, m. deadly nightshade, belladonna root;

rum myrtový, m. bay-rum

rumělka, f. cinnabar

růže stolistá, f. hundred-leaved rose.

Sadec, m. *sǎdets*, eupatorium, thoroughwort;

sádlo, n. lard

salajka, f. *sǎlǎykǎ*, potash

salmiak, m. sal amoniac

sanytr, m. *sǎnyt'ér*, saltpeter

semeno lněné, n. flaxseed, linseed;

“ tykvové, pumpkin seed;

semínko citvárové, European worm-seed;
 senes, m. purging cassia;
 senesové listí, n. senna leaves
 seno řecké, n. *senð rshětské*, fenu-greek;
 sesamové listí, n. benne leaf
 síra, f. *seerā*, sulphur, brimstone;
 síran, f. *seerān*, sulphate
 síran draselnatý, sulphate of potash
 síran měďnatý, sulphate of copper;
 sirob, m. sirup
 skalice bílá, f. *skāllitsě beelá*, white vitriol;
 skila, f. squile
 skořice, f. *skorshitsě*, cinnamon
 “ bílá, canella
 sladká vrbka, f. bittersweet
 sliz, m. *sleez*, common mallow
 smola, f. pitch
 sodík, m. (natrium), n. sodium
 soda suchá, f. (suchý nátron, ky-sličník sodnatý, dry soda, protoxide of sodium;
 soda žíravá, (nátron žíravý, hydrát sodnatý), caustic soda, hydrate of soda;
 sporýš, m. see železník;
 starček, m. see lomihnát;
 sůl kuchynská, f. *sool k.*, common salt;
 “ hořká, (Glauberova), Glauber's salt, Epsom salt;
 “ morská, bay salt;
 “ křišťálová, nitrate salt;
 suřík, m. red oxide of lead;
 svlačec, m. *solāchets*, scammony.

Šafrán, m. *shāfrán*, saffron
 šalvěj, m. *shālvyyěy*, sage
 šípek, m. *sheepék*, dog-rose, hip;
 šišák, m. *shishák*, scullcap
 škrob, m. *shkrob*, starch
 škrobovina americká, f. arrow-root
 škumpa jedovatá, f. poison-oak
 španělské mouchy, pl. f. Spanish flies, cantharides;
 špargl, m. *shpargl*, asparagus
 šťovík, m. *shťovík*, sorrel
 švestky, pl. f. *shvēstky*, prunes
 Tabák, m. *tábák*, tobacco
 tavola, f. hardhack
 terpentýn, m. *terpenteen*, turpentine
 tinktura arniková, f. tincture of arnica;
 tis, m. common European yew tree;
 tojest, f. dog's-bane
 tolíje, f. *tolliyě*, *parnassia palustris*;
 tomel virginský, persimmon
 trán jaterní, m. cod-liver oil;
 trnka, f. *t^ernká*, wild plumtree;
 trojpecka, f. *troypetskā*, fever root
 třemdava, f. *dictamnus*, bastard dittany;
 třezalka, f. St. John's wort;
 tuk velrybí, m. spermaceti
 turan, m. fleabane, erigeron.
 Uhel dřevěný, m. charcoal
 uhel zvířecí, animal charcoal; bone-black;
 uhlik, m. *ūhleek*, carbon
 uhličitan hořečnatý, m. carbonate of magnesia;

uhličitan sodnatý, carbonate of soda
užanka, f. hound's tongue.

Vanilka, f. vanilla

vápno, n. lime; quicklime;

vápno chlorové, chloride of lime;

vápno karbolové, carbolate of lime;

vavřín, m. laurel tree;

vejce, n. *veytsě*, egg

bílek, m. *beelek*, the white

žloutek, m. *žloutek*, the yelk

vinný kámen, m. cream of tartar;

víno bílé, n. *veeně beelé*, white wine

“ **červené**, v. *chervěné*, red wine,

virginská hadovka, f. Virginia
snakeroot

vítod, m. *veetod*, bitter polygala;

vlaštovičník, m. *vlášťowichník*, ce-
landine

voda čistá, f. *věďď chisťá*, pure water

voda minerální, mineral water

koupel, f. *koŭpell* } bath

lázeň, f. *lizeň* }

vodička, f. *voďichká*, wash, lotion;

vodička na oči, v. *ně ochi*, eye-wash

vosk bílý, m. white wax

vosk žlutý, yellow wax

vraní oko, n. *vrāñee okō*, paris quad
rifolia;

vrátěč, m. *vrátěch*, tansy

výstřelek, m. *veestrshellek*, spirit

“ **pižmový**, spirit of musk;

“ **terpentinový**, spirit of
turpentine;

vyzí klí, n. *vizee klee*, isinglass.

Zázvor, m. ginger

zázvor divoký, wild ginger

zeměžluč, f. *zemyěžlŭch*, common
centaury;

zerav, m. *zeráf*, arbor vitae;

zimostráz, m. box plant;

zmíjovec, m. *zmeeyōvets*, skunk cab-
bage;

žábňík, m. *žábňik*, water-plantain

žebříček, m. *žebřshechek*, yarrow

železnice lysá, s. snake-head, turtle-
head;

železník, m. *železník*, vervain

ženský vlas, m. maidenhair

žluč volská, f. *žlŭch volská*, ox-gall

žlutidlo, n. turmeric

žlutodřev, m. prickly-ash.

At home.

DOMA.

I like domestic com-
fort.

We have a comfortable
home on tenth street.

We have a hall, five
rooms and a kitchen

Miluju domácí poho-
dlí.

Máme pohodlný domov
na desáté ulici.

Máme síň, pět pokojů
a kuchyň dole, a

*millŭyŭ domátsce po-
hodlee.*

*mámě pohodlnee dō-
mof nă dēsáté ŭlitsi.*

*mámě seěň, pyět pokō-
yoo ā kŭkhŭň dōlē,*

down stairs, and four bedrooms upstairs.
The stairs have a railing.

We have new furniture,—tables, chairs, sofas and beds.

The writing-desk and library stand in the front room.

The windows have both shutters and curtains.

On the walls there are pictures in frames.

Our clothes-press is very handy.

The fuel we keep down cellar. — Hard and soft water is in the house.

We have a good stove and the chimney does not smoke.

It is time to eat — The meal is ready.

The table is spread; — everything is on the table: dishes, plates, forks, knives.

Come and eat; — sit down by the table.

Hand (thou) me that chair. — Hand (you) me the soup; I shall deal it out.

čtyry ložnice nahore.

Schody mají zábradlí.

Máme nový nábytek, — stoly, židle, pohovky a postele.

Psací stůl a knihovna stojí v přední světnici.

Okna mají okenice i záslony.

Na stěnách jsou obrazy v rámech.

Naše šatnice je tuze příručná.

Palivo máme ve sklepě. — Tvrdá i měkká voda je v domě.

Máme dobré kamna a komín nekouří.

Je čas k jídlu. — Jídlo je hotovo.

Je prostřeno; — všecko je na stole: mísy, talíře, vidličky, nože.

Pojďte jíst; — sedněte ke stolu.

Podej mi tu sesli. — Podejte mi polívku; já rozdám.

ã shtiri ložnitsě nahorshě.

skhody máyee zábradlee.

mámě novce nábytek, — stolly, židlě, pohofky a postellě.

psátsee stool a knihovně stoyee fprshě dñee swyětñitsi.

oknã máyee okěñitse e záslony.

nã stěnákh soũ obrázky vrámekh.

nãshě shãtñitsě yě toozě prsheerũchnã.

pãlivoã mámě vĕ sklepyě. — tv^erdã e myěká voda yě vdõmyě.

mámě dobre kãmnã a komeen nõkoũrshee.

yě chãss k-yeedlũ. — yeedlõ yě hotõvõ.

yě prostrshẽnõ. — fshẽtsko yě nã stolě: meesy, tãleershě, vidlichky, nože.

pod'tě yeest; — sedñetě kĕ stollũ.

poděy me tũ sessli. poděytě me poleefkũ; yã rõzdãm.

Is it not salt enough? — Here is the salt; take some more salt.	Není dost slaná?— Zde je sůl; přisolte si.	<i>neyñi dost sláná?— zdě yě sool; prshisolttě si.</i>
The meat is cut; — I shall cut up the roast into pieces.	Maso je nakrájeno; — rozdělím pečení na porce.	<i>mässö yě näkráyěñö;— rozďeleem pècheñi nă portsě.</i>
Help yourself; — here is roast goose,—here is fried chicken.	Poslužte si; — zde je pečená husa, — zde smažené kuře.	<i>poslušttě si; — zdě yě pěchěná hüssă, — zdě smăžené kŭrshě.</i>
Take a piece of bread.	Vemte si kousek chle- ba.	<i>vemtě si koŭsek khlěbă.</i>
Do you eat pastry? — Sometimes.	Jíte pečivo? — Někdy.	<i>yeetě pècheivo? ñegdy.</i>
Do you want a cup of coffee? — or a cup of tea?	Chcete šálek kávy? — anebo šálek čaje?	<i>khtsěttě shálek kávy? — ănebď shálek chăyě?</i>
Is the coffee sweet e- nough?—Here is su- gar.	Je káva dost sladká?— Zde je cukr.	<i>yě kává dost slădká? — zdě yě tsŭk^er.</i>
After a meal a cigar tastes well.	Po jídle chutná dout- ník.	<i>pď yeedlě khŭtnă doŭt- ñík.</i>
Will you smoke?—Here are cigars; light one;	Budete kouřiti? — Tu jsou cigara; zapalte si.	<i>bŭďďtě koŭrshiti? — tŭ soŭ tsigară; zăpăltě si.</i>
Hand me the matches. — There in the cor- ner is a spittoon.	Podejte mi sirky. — Tam v koutě je pli- vátko.	<i>poděyttě me seerky. — tăm fkoŭťe yě pli- vătķő.</i>
It is growing dark. — It is dark. — Make a light.	Stmívá se.—Je tma.-- Udělejte světlo.	<i>stmeevá sě.— yě tmă. — ŭďeleyttě swyětlo.</i>
Here is a candle-stick and a candle.—Light the lamp; — light the gas.	Zde je svícen a svíčka. — Rozžete lampu; — rozžete plyn.	<i>zdě yě sweetsěn ă sweech- kă. — rožetě lâmpŭ; — rožetě plyn.</i>

It is growing chilly,
isn't it? — Make a
fire.

There is a fire already
in the stove.

It is late; — let us go to
sleep.

It is time to go to bed.
Is the bed made?—The
beds are made for all.

I shall lie down on the
sofa. — Do as you
please.

Undress; — take off
your clothes; — pull
off your boots; here
is the boot-jack.

Sleep well. — Good
night!

**Dělá se chladno, je-li
pravda? — Zatopte.**

Už je oheň v kamnech.

**Je pozdě; — pojd'me
spat.**

**Je čas jíti do postele.
Je ustláno?—Je ustlá-
no pro všechny.**

**Já si lehnů na sofa. —
Jak chcete.**

**Odstrojte se; — svlék-
něte se; — zujte se,
— tu je zouvák.**

**Spěte dobře.—Dobrou
noc!**

*dělá se khládno, yelli
právďa? — zätoptě.*

űsh yě ohěň fkămněkh.

*yě pozďe; — poď'me
spăt.*

*yě chăss yeet dď postellě.
yě ůstlănď? — yě ůstlá-
nď pro fshěkhny*

*yá si lehnű nă sofă. —
yăk khtsětě.*

*odstroytě sě; — svlékňe-
tě sě; — zűytě sě; —
tű yě zoűvák.*

*spyětě dďbrshě.—dďbroű
nots.*

It is time to get up. —
Our folks are up.

Wencelis still sleeping;
— wake him up; or
he will oversleep.

How did you sleep? —
I slept well.

Didn't that noise wake
you up? — I slept
fast; nothing disturb-
ed me.

I had a bad night; —
I could not fall asleep
very long; — I only
fell asleep towards
morning.

**Je čas vstáti. — Naši
jsou zhůru.**

**Václav posud spí; —
zbud'te ho, sice za-
spí.**

**Jak jste spal? — Spal
jsem dobře.**

**Nebudil vás ten hluk?
— Spal jsem tvrdě;
— nic mě nebudilo.**

**Já měl zlou noc; —
nemohl jsem usnou-
ti dlouho; — usnul
jsem teprvé k ránu.**

*yě chăss fstát. — năshi
soű zhoorű.*

*vătslăv posűď spee; —
zbűďtě ho, sűtsě ză-
spee.*

*yăk stě spăl? — spăl
sem dďbrshě.*

*nebűďil văs ten hlűk?
— spăl sem to^erdě;
ňűts myě něbűďilo.*

*yá myěll zloű nots; —
němoh^el sem ůsnoűt
dloűhď; — ůsnűl sem
tep^ervé krănű.*

Henry says he never shut his eyes (i. e. had no sleep at all).	Jindřich povídá že ani oka nezamhouřil.	yindrshikh poveedá že āñi okā nējāmoř- rshil.
--	--	---

VOCABULARY.

Síň, f. <i>seeñ</i> , the hall	pohovka, f. <i>pōhofkă</i> }	the lounge
schody, pl. m. <i>skhody</i> , the stairs	sofa, n. <i>sofă</i> }	
zábradlí, n. the railing	obraz, m. <i>obrăz</i> , the picture	
stěna, f. <i>stēnă</i> , the wall	rám, m. the frame	
šatnice, f. <i>shătñitsě</i> , the clothes press;	Palivo, n. <i>păllivō</i> , the fuel	
kumbál, m. <i>kămbál</i> , the closet	kamna, pl. <i>kămnă</i> , the stove	
kout, m. <i>koūt</i> , the corner	komín, m. <i>komeen</i> , the chimney	
okenice, f. <i>okēñitsě</i> , the blind	kouřiti, <i>koūrshīt</i> , to smoke	
záslona, f. <i>zăsłonă</i> , the curtain	ohně, m. <i>ōheñ</i> , the fire;	
domáci, <i>dōmătsee</i> , domestic	svícen, m. <i>sweetsēn</i> , the candlestick	
nábytek, m. the furniture	svíčka, f. <i>sweechkă</i> , the candle	
stoly, m. <i>stōly</i> }	plyn, m. the gas	
tabule, f. <i>tăbŭlē</i> }	rozžítí, <i>rožēet</i> , to make a light;	
psací stůl, <i>psătsee stool</i> , the writing- desk	zapáliti, <i>zăpălīt</i> , to light	
židle, f. <i>židlě</i> }	sírka, f. <i>sîrkă</i> , a match	
sesle, f. <i>sesslē</i> }	elgaro, n. <i>tsigăro</i> }	a cigar
	doutník, m. <i>doūtñik</i> }	
	plivátko, n. <i>plivătko</i> }	spittoon.
	plivník, m. <i>plivñik</i> }	
Prostřítí, <i>prostrsheet</i> , to set the table;	nakrájeti, <i>năkrăyet</i> , to cut in pieces;	
mísa, f. <i>meesă</i> , the dish	rozdělití, <i>rozďelīt</i> , to divide	
talíř, m. <i>tăleersh</i> , the plate	rozdati, <i>rozďăt</i> , to deal out;	
šálek, m. <i>shălek</i> , the cup	pečivo, n. <i>pěchivo</i> , the pastry	
sůl, <i>sool</i> , the salt	pečený, á, é <i>pěchenee</i> , roasted	
slaný, á, é <i>slănee</i> , salt, salted;	smažený, á, é <i>smăženee</i> , fried	
přisoliti, <i>prshi-solīt</i> , to put in some more salt;	husa, f. <i>hŭssă</i> , goose	
sladký, á, é <i>slădkee</i> , sweet	kuře, n. <i>kŭrshě</i> , chicken.	

Stmívati se , <i>stmeevăt sě</i> , to grow dark;	zbuditi , <i>zbŭd'it</i> , to wake up, to call;
odstrojiti se , <i>odstroyit sě</i> , to undress	vstáti , <i>fstát</i> , to get up;
zouti se , <i>zōūt sě</i> , to pull off one's boots;	zhŭru , <i>zhoorŭ</i> , up;
zouvák , m. <i>zoŭvák</i> , the boot-jack	nahoře , <i>nāhorshě</i> , up stairs;
ustlati , <i>ŭslăt</i> , to make the bed;	dole , <i>dōlē</i> , down stairs;
usnouti , <i>ŭsnoŭt</i> , to fall asleep;	tvrdě , <i>tv'rd'e</i> } fast
zaspati , <i>zāspăt</i> , to oversleep	pevně , <i>pevñe</i> }
buditi , <i>bŭd'it</i> , to wake, to disturb;	hluk , m. <i>hlŭk</i> , noise
	je-li pravda? <i>yelh prāvdd?</i> isn't it so?

Buying and selling.

KOUPĚ a PRODEJ.

How much is this? —	Zač je to? — Co to sto-	<i>zách yě tō?</i> — <i>tsō tō</i>
What is the price of	jí? — Co to koštuje?	<i>stoyee?</i> — <i>tsō tō kosh-</i>
it?—How much does		<i>tŭyě?</i>
it cost?		
What do you sell it for?	Po čem to prodáváte?	<i>pō chem tō prodáváte?</i>
What do you want for	Co za to chcete? — Co	<i>tsō ză tō khtsētě?</i> — <i>tsō</i>
it?—What do you ask	za to žádáte? — Co	<i>ză tō žádátě?</i> — <i>tsō</i>
for it? — How much	vám za to dám?	<i>vám ză tō dám?</i>
shall I give you for it?		
What is the price?	Jaká je cena?	<i>yăká yě tsenă?</i>
A dollar and ten cents.	Dollar deset centů. —	<i>dollăr desset sentoo.</i> —
— A dollar and a	Dollar a čtvrt.	<i>dollăr a shtw'rt.</i>
quarter.		
Two dollars and a half.	Dva dollary a půl. —	<i>dwă dollăry ā pool.</i> —
— Two and a half	Půl třetího dolaru.	<i>pool trshě'eehō dollă-</i>
dollars.		<i>rŭ.</i>
Five dollars sixty cents	Pět dolarů šedesát	<i>pyět dollăroo shēdessăt</i>
	centů.	<i>sentoo.</i>
It costs a little over six	Stojí to něco přes šest	<i>stoyee tō ñetsō prshēs</i>
dollars.	dolarů.	<i>shest dollăroo.</i>
Is it worth that much?	Stojí to za to?	<i>stoyee tō ză tō?</i>

I think it is; — why should it not be?

It seems to me too much.— I think it is dear.

Myslím že stojí;—proč by nestálo?

Mně se to zdá moc. — Myslím že je to drahé,

misleem že stoyee; — proch be nestálō?

myě sě tō zdá mots. — misleem že yě tō dráhé.

That is too much. — That is too dear.— I won't give so much.

That is too much;—will you take off something?

You must take off something.

I shall not take off anything.—I cannot take off anything.

We have a fixed price. — We sell at a fixed price.

It is cheap. — It is low-priced.

I shall get it cheaper elsewhere.

You will not get it cheaper anywhere.

I will try it. — I don't want to haggle — I don't like to haggle over the price.

That is the lowest price; — it cannot be any cheaper.

To je moc. — To je drahé. — Tolik nedám.

To je tuze mnoho; — slevíte něco?

Něco musíte sleviti.

Ňslevím nic. — Nemohu sleviti nic.

Máme pevnou cenu. — Prodáváme za pevnou cenu.

Je to laciné. — Je to levné.

Dostanu to levněji jinde.

Nedostanete to levněji nikde.

Zkusím to. — Nechci smlouvatí. — Nerad smlouvám.

To je nejnižší cena; — nemůže býti lacinější.

tō yě mots. — tō yě dráhé. — tōlik nedám.

tō yě toozě mnohō; — slěveetě ňetsō?

Ňetsō mŭseetě slevit.

něslěveem ňits. — němōhŭ slevit ňits.

mámě pevnou tsenŭ. — prodávámě zā pevnou tsenŭ.

yě tō lātsiné. — yě tō levné.

dostānŭ tō levŋey yindě.

nedōstānetě tō levŋey ŋigdě.

skŭseem tō — někhtsi smloŭvāt. — nerād smloŭvām.

tō yě neyŋishee tsenā; — němoožē beet lātsi-ŋeyshee.

What do you wish? —
What is your pleasure?

What can I do for you?
Have you satchels for sale?—I want to buy a satchel.

I would like to get a nice traveling bag.
We have a stock of them. — We have a large choice.

Show me some. — I wish to see them.

This is the best kind we have. — They are good.

This one is nice —This will suit you.

How much is it? —
What is the price?

Four dollars and a half.
—That is the regular price.

That is a little too much.
—don't you think so?

I do not think so.

I will give four dollars for it. — Will you sell it for that?

I cannot. — I cannot take off anything.

The price is fixed.

Then I will not buy it.
— Do as you please;

Co si přejete? — Co račete?

Čím mohu sloužiti?
Máte tašky na prodej?
—Chci koupit tašku.

Rád bych nějakou pěknou kabelu.
Máme je na skladě. —
Máme velký výběr.

Ukažte mi některé. —
Podívám se na ně.

Tohle je nejlepší druh co máme. — Ty jsou dobré.

Tahle je pěkná. — Ta se vám hodí.

Zač je? — Co stojí?

Čtyry dollary a půl. —
To je pravidelná cena.

To je trochu moc; —
nemyslíte?

Nemyslím.

Dám za ni čtyry dollary. — Dáte ji za to?

Nemohu. — Nemohu nic sleviti.

Cena je pevná.

Teda ji nekoupím. —
Jak vám libo. — Ne-

tsō si prshēyetě? — tsō račťě?

cheem mohŭ sloužiti?
mátě táshky nā prodey?
— khtsi koupit táshkŭ.

rád bikh ňákoŭ pyěknoŭ kábellŭ.
mámě yě nā sklād'e. —
mámě velkee veebyēr.

ŭkáshtě me. ňekteré. —
podívám se nā ňe

tōhlě yě neylepshee drŭh
tsō mámě. — ty soŭ
dobré.

táhlě yě pyěkná. — tā
sě vām hod'ee.

zách yě? — tsō stoyee?

shtiry dollāry ā pool. —
tō yě prāvidelnā tsě-
nā.

tō yě trokhŭ mots; —
němisleetě?

němisleem.

dām zā ňi shtiry dollāry — dátě ye zā tō?

nemohŭ. — nemohŭ ňits
slěvit.

tsěnā yě pěvnā.

tědā ye někoŭpeem. —
yāk vām leebō. — ney-

—it is not dear at that price.	ní drahá za tu cenu.	ni dráhá ză tŭ tsenŭ.
You will not get it elsewhere. — They have not got them elsewhere.	Jinde ji nedostanete. — Jinde je nemají.	yindě ye nĕdostānĕtĕ. — yindě yĕ nemāyee.
They are not to be had elsewhere. — Only I alone have them for sale.	Nejsou jinde k dostání. — Jenom já je mám na prodej.	neysoŭ yindĕ gdostāni. — yenom yá yĕ mám nă prodey.
They have not got these goods on hand any where.	Nemají to zboží na skladě nikde.	nemāyee tŏ zbožĕe nŭ sklādĕ nĕgdĕ.
I keep honest goods on hand.	Já držím poctivé zboží.	yá d ^e ržĕm potstivĕ zbožĕe.
Small profits, quick sales — that is my motto.	Malý zisk, rychlý prodej, — to je mé heslo.	mālee zisk, rykhlee prodey, — tŏ yĕ mé hesslo.
Small but frequent profits.	Malý výdělek, ale častý.	mālee vcedĕlek ālē chāss-tee.
Have you some pocket-books?	Máte nějaké toboleky?	mátĕ nĕkĕ tŏbolky?
We have a large stock. — What kind do you wish, — expensive? — cheap?	Máme velkou zásobu. — Jaké chcete, — drahé? — laciné?	mámĕ velkoŭ zásobŭ. — yākĕ khtsĕtĕ, — drăhĕ? — lătsinĕ?
What is the price of these? — How much are they? — How do you sell them?	Zač jsou tyhle? — Po čem jsou? — Po čem je prodáváte?	zăch soŭ tyhlĕ? — pŏ chem soŭ? — pŏ chem yĕ prodávátĕ?
A dollar a piece. — They are good and lasting.	Po dolaru kus. — Jsou dobré a trvanlivé.	pŏ dollărŭ kŭss. — soŭ dobrĕ ā t ^e rvānlivĕ.
Those are dearer; a dollar and a half.	Tam ty jsou dražší; po dolaru a půl.	tām ty soŭ drăshee; pŏ dollarŭ ā pool.

They are somewhat better.

I will take one;—wrap it up for me;

Here is the money; give me back.

There is fifty cents coming to you.—Here is half a dollar back.

Jsou trochu lepší.

Vezmu si jednu;—zabalte mi ji.

Tu jsou peníze; dejte mi zpátky.

Přijde vám padesát centů.—Zde jest půl dolaru zpátky.

soŭ trokhŭ lepshee.

vezmŭ si yednŭ; — ză băltě me ye.

tŭ soŭ peñeež; deytě me spátky.

prsheedě văm pădessăt sentoo. — zdě yě pool dollărŭ spátky.

I should like to buy a few tons of coal; but I have no money.

I will take it on credit; — will you trust me?

I do not trust anybody; —I sell only for cash.

I give no credit. — I want cash.

I want to have no bad debts.

I need money. — I am raking up money to buy goods;—I do not want to borrow.

For cash one buys cheap.

Rád bych koupil pár tun uhlí; ale nemám peníze.

Vezmu ho na dluh; — počkáte mi?

Nechekám žádnému; — prodávám jen za hotové.

Nedávám kredit.—Chci hotové.

Nechci mítí žádné špatné dluhy.

Potřebuju peníze. — Sháním peníze na zboží; nechci se dlužiti.

Za hotové koupí se lacino.

rád bikh koŭpil pár tŭn ŭhlee; âľě němăm peñeež.

vezmŭ hŏ nă dlooh; — pochkătě me?

něchekăm žădnémŭ; — prodávăm yen ză hotově.

něďďávăm credit.—khtsi hotově.

nekhtsi meet žădné shpătné dloohy.

potrshěbŭyŭ peñeež. — shăñcem peñeež nă zbožee; — někhtsi sě dlŭžit.

ză hotově koŭpee sě lâtsi-nŏ.

How is business?— So so;—tolerably good. Have the goods a ready sale?—I have a good sale, but a small profit.

Jak jde obchod? — Tak tak; — projde to.

Jde zboží na odbyt?

Mám dobrý odbyt, ale malý zisk.

yăk dě obkhŏd? — tăk tăk;—proyďě tŏ.

dě zbožee nă odbyt? — mám dôbree odbyt, âľě mălee zisk.

I often sell at a loss. — I have a loss on my sales.	Prodávám častose škou. — Mám na tom ztrátu.	prodávám chāsstō sě skhodoŭ. — mám nā tom strátŭ.
That is bad. — Have you a large stock?	To je zlé. — Máte velkou zásobu?	tō yě zlé. — máte velkoŭ zásobŭ?
I have still many goods on hand; — I expect again fresh goods;— they are on the way.	Mám ještě hodně zboží; — čekám zase čerstvé zboží;—je už na cestě.	mám yeshťe hodně zbo- žee; — chekám zāss cherstvé zbožee; — yě ŭsh nā tsest’e.
I was in New York to make purchases.	Byl jsem v New Yorku nakupovat.	bill sem vnew-yorkŭ nā- kŭpovāt.
Did you make a good bargain? —I am satisfied.	Koupil jste dobře? — Jsem spokojen.	koŭpil stě dōbrshě? — sem spokoyēn.

VOCABULARY.

Na skladě, nā sklād’e, on hand;
odbyt, m. sale (of goods);
zisk, m. profit
škoda, f. shkodā } loss
ztráta, f. strátā }
taška, f. tashkā } satchel,
kabela, f. kābellā } traveling bag;
tobolka, f. tōbolkā, pocket book;
heslo, n. hēsslō, motto
pevný, á, é pevnee, fast, fixed;
trvati, t’rvāt, to last
trvanlivý, á, é t’rvānlivee, lasting.

—
Stojí to, stoyee tō, it costs, it is worth;
koštuje, koshtŭyě, it costs
dostati, dostāt, to get
dostanu, dostānŭ, I shall get;

dostanete, dōstānētě, you will get;
je k dostání, yě gđōstānī, is to be
got; is to be had;
držeti, d’ržet, to keep
hoditi se, hod’it sě, to suit; to fit;
sleviti, slēvit, to take off;
smlouvati, smloŭvāt, to haggle; to
bargain;
sloužiti, sloŭžit, to serve
dlužiti se, dlŭžit sě } to borrow
vydlužiti se, vydľŭžit sě }
počkati, pochkāt, to wait, to trust;
nečekám, něchekām, I do not wait;
I do not trust;
nakupovati, nakŭpovāt, to make
purchases;
zabaliti, zābālīt, to wrap up.

In a grocery store.

U GROCERISTY.

I want some groceries
Please, command;— we
have fresh goods of
all kinds.

Give me a pound of
coffee, two pounds
of sugar and a pack-
age of chicory.

Anything else?

Five pounds of rice,
half a dozen of lem-
ons and some spices.

How do you sell eggs?
Twenty cents a dozen.

Give me two dozen of
eggs, three quarts of
kerosene and a pint
of sirup.

How do you sell kero-
sene by the gallon?

I will take a bottle of
mustard, a pound of
raisins, a pound and
a half of dried apples.

Besides, I want four
ounces of pepper.

Send me a sack of flour
and five pounds of
barley.

I want the best kind of
flour, — patent flour.

Chei nějaké grocerie.
Poroučejte; — máme
čerstvé zboží všeho
druhu.

Dejte mi libru kávy,
dvě libry cukru a
paklíček cikorie.

Ještě něco?

Pět liber rýže, půl tu-
ctu citronů a nějaké
koření.

Zač prodáváte vejce?
Dvacet centů tucet.

Dejte mi dva tucty va-
jec, tři kvarty pe-
troleje a pint siro-
bu.

Zač prodáváte petro-
lej na gallony?

Vezmu si lahev horči-
ce, libru rozinek,
půldruhé libry kří-
žal.

Ještě chci čtyry unce
pepře.

Poslete mi pytel mou-
ky a pět liber krup.

Chei ne jlep ší druh
mouky, — patentní
mouku,

khtsi ěáké groceriě.
poroučeytē; — mámē
cherstve zbožee fshē-
hō drūhū.

deytē me librū kávy,
dvayē libry tsūkrū a
pākleechek tsikoriē.

yeshťe ěetsō?
pyēt liber reyže, pool
tūtstū tsitrōnoo ā ěá-
kē korschēñi.

zāch prodávátē veytsē?
dwātsēt sentoo tūtset.
deytē me dwā tūtsty vā-
yets, trshi quārtly pē-
trolejē ā pint siro-
bū.

zāch prodávátē petrolej
nā gāllony?

vezmū si lāhev horchit-
sē, librū rōzinek,
po o l d r ů h ē libry
krsheežāl.

yeshťe khtsi shtiry ůn-
tsē pēprshē.

poshlētē mi pytel mouky
ā pyēt liber krūp.

khtsi neylepshee drūh
mouky, — pātentñee
moukū,

A bushel of potatoes
and a peck of onions.
Give me five cents
worth of cinnamon,
five cents worth of
mace and ten cents
worth of ginger.

**Bušl bramborů a pek
cibule.**

**Dejte mi za pět centů
skořice, za pět cen-
tů květu a za deset
centů zázvoru.**

*büşhel brämboroo ä peck
tsibülě.*

*deytě me zä pyět sentoo
skorshitsě, zä pyět
sentoo kwyětü ä zä
desset sentoo zázvorü.*

VOCABULARY.

Note. Many articles sold in groceries are to be found under the heading "Drugs and medicines".

Cukr kouskový, *tsük^{er} koüşskovee*,
crushed sugar;

“ **zrnkový,** *ts. z^{er}nkovee*, granu-
lated sugar;

“ **utlučený,** *ts. ätlüchenee*, pul-
verized sugar;

“ **hnědý,** *ts. hñedee*, brown sug-
ar;

káva pražená, *kávü prážená*, roast-
ed coffee;

“ **mletá,** *k. mlětá*, ground coffee

koření, *n. korshěñi*, spice

nové koření, allspice

květ, *m. kwyět*, mace

dymíán, *m. thyme*

šafrán, *m. shäfrán*, Spanish saffron

rozinky, *pl. f. raisins*

drobné rozinky, currants

křížaly, *pl. f. krsheežaly*, dried ap-
ples;

sušené švestky, *pl. f. süshěné shwest-
ky*, prunes

cibule, *f. tsibülě*, onions

česnek, *m. chessnek*, garlic

zázvor loupaný, bleached ginger-
root;

zázvor neloupaný, unbleached gin-
ger-root;

prášek na pečení, *prášek nä pē-
cheñi*, baking powder;

kvasnice, *pl. kwassñitsě* } yeast;
droždí, *n. drožd'ee*

suché kvasnice, dry yeast;

lisované kv., compressed yeast;

salajka, *f. säläykä*, saleratus

prací soda, *f. prätsee sodä*, washing
soda;

kornout, *n. kornoüt*, paper cornet;

paklík, *m. päkleek*, package

paklíček, *m. päkleechek*, small pack-
age;

balík, *m. bäleek*, bundle, parcel;

zabaliti, *zäbälit* } to pack up
zapakovati; *zäpäkövät*

zavázati, *zävázät*, to tie up;

svázati, *svázät*, to bind or tie to-
gether.

Garments.

ODĚV.

Dry goods have a ready sale.

I intend to start a dry goods store.

My brother has a clothing store.

He employs many tailors.

The tailor makes (liter. sews) clothes.

Thread and needle, scissors and shears, a thimble, a sad-iron and a press-board are his tools.

Nowadays much sewing is done on the machine.

The sewing machine is a useful invention.

It is an American invention.

I need a suit of clothes.
— I want a new suit.

Take my measure.

The cutter takes measure and cuts the cloth.

What sort of stuff do you want?

Show me your patterns.

This wears well.

Loketní zboží jde rychle na odbyt.

Hodlám založití strážní krám.

Můj bratr má oděvní krám.

Zaměstnává mnoho krejčích.

Krejčí šije šaty.

Nit a jehla, nůžky a velké nůžky, náprstek, cihlička a koza jsou jeho nástroje.

Dnes mnoho šije se na stroji.

Šicí stroj jest užitečný vynález.

Jest to americký vynález.

Potřebuju oblek. —
Chci nový oblek.

Vemte mi míru.

Kraječ bere míru a nakrájí sukno.

Jakou látku chcete?

Ukažte mi své vzory.

Tohle se dobře nese.

loketⁿee zbož^eee dě rikhlě
nā odbyt.

hodlám založit strážⁿee
krám.

můj bratr má od^eevⁿee
krám.

zā m y ě s t n ā v ā mnohō
kreycheekh.

kreychee she-yě shāty.

nīt ā yēhlā, nooshky ā
velké nooshky, nápr^e-
stek, tsihlichkā ā kō-
zā soū yēhō nástroyě.

dness mnohō she-yě sē
nā stroyi.

shitsee stroy yest ůži-
technee vynález.

yest tō āmeritskeevyná-
lez.

potrshēbūyū oblek. —
khtsi novee oblek.

vemtě me meerū.

kráyēch berě meerū ā
nākráyee sūkno.

yākoū látkū khtsetě?

ūkāshtě me své vzory

tōhlě sē dōbrshě nesse.

How will you have your coat made i.e. sewed)? After the present fashion.

Try your coat on. It pinches me under the arms—It is too tight. It is too wide round the waist. — It makes folds.

The skirts are long enough. It has pockets behind and breast-pockets.

Make me a pair of pants Get it done pretty soon; — take a good stuff.

Do you want lining in your pants?

I do not want any lining. — Without lining.

Jak chcete mítí kabát ušítý?

Dle nynější mody.

Zkuste váš kabát.

Svráá pod pažema. —

Je tuze těsný.

Je tuze volný v půli. — dělá faldy.

Šosy jsou dost dlouhé.

— Má kapsy v zadu a kapsy na prsou.

Udělejte mi pár kalhot Zhotovte je hezky brzo; — vemte dobrou látku.

Chcete podšívku do kalhot?

Nechci žádnou podšívku. — Bez podšívky.

yāk khtsetě meet kábát ůshítee?

dlě nyñeyshee mody

skůstě vásh kábát.

sweerá pod pažemá. —

yě toožě t'essnee.

yě toožě volnee fpooli.

— d'elá faldy.

shössy soů dost dloůhé.

— má kapsy vzádů ů

kapsy ná p^{er}soů.

ůd'eleýtě me pár kálhot.

zhotoftě ye hesskee b^{er}-

zů; — vemtě důbroů

látku.

khtsetě podshífků dů

kálhot?

nekhtsi žádnů pod-

shífků. — bēs pod-

shífky.

VOCABULARY

Kabát, m. *kábát*, the coat

frak, m. *frāk*, a dress-coat

svrchník, m. *sv^{er}khñik*, an over-coat

zimník, m. *zimñik*, a greatcoat

plášť, m. *pláshť*, a cloak

kalhoty, pl. } pants, trousers;

spodky, pl. }

nohavice, f. *nohávitsě*, leg of the pants;

vesta, f. *vestá*, the vest

kazajka, f. *kázäykä*, the jacket

bunda, f. *bündä*, the sack-coat

límeč, m. *leemets*, the collar

laple, f. *läplě*, the lapel

rukáv, m. *růkáf*, the sleeve

šos, m. *shöss*, the skirt

šev, m. *shěf*, the seam

štych, m. *shtikh* } a stitch

steh, m. *stěh* }

podšívka, f. *podshífká*, the lining

záplata, f. *záplátä*, the patch

kapsa, f. *kăpsă*, the pocket
knoflík, m. *knofleek*, the button
knoflíková dírka, the button-hole;

Prádlo, n. linen, underclothing;
košile, f. *koshillě*, the shirt
spodní košile, *spodňee k.*, the under-shirt

podvlečky, pl. }
spodní kalhoty } the drawers
punčochy, pl. f. *punchokhy*, the stockings, the socks;

podvazky, pl. *podvásky*, the garters
šandy, pl. f. *shandy* } the
šle, pl. f. *shlě* } suspenders

šátek, m. *shátek*, kerchief
š. na krk, *sh. nă k^erk*, neckerchief
š. do kapsy, *sh. dō kăpsy*, pocket handkerchief;

mašle na krk, *măshlě nă k^erk*, a necktie.

Sukno, n. *sŭknō*, cloth, broadcloth;
samet, m. *sămmet*, velvet

plíš, m. *plish*, plush

atlas, m. *ătläss*, satin

hedvábí, n. *hedvábee*, silk

plátno, n. linen

kartoun, m. *kartoŭn*, cotton, print;

šňůra, f. *shňooră*, cord

cívka, f. *tsífkă*, a spool

klubko, n. *klŭbko*, a ball

řádýnko, n. *prshădeenko*, a skein

hrubá nit, f. *hrŭbă ňit*, a coarse thread;

tenká nit, a fine thread;

hrubá jehla, f. *h. yehlă*, a coarse needle;

tenká jehla, a fine needle;

štepovací jehla, *shtepovătsee yěhlă*, darning needle;

drát (na pletení), m. knitting needle;

stříhati, *strshihăt*, to cut with a pair of scissors;

žehliti, *žehlît*, to iron.

Klobouk, m. *kloboŭk*, the hat

ženský klobouk, a bonnet, a lady's hat;

čepec, m. *chěpets*, the hood

čepice, f. *chěpitsě*, the cap

cilindr, m. *tsilind^er*, a beaver, a silk hat;

nízký klobouk, *ňeeskee kloboŭk*, a low hat.

Švadlena, f. *shvădlenă*, a needlewoman

šička, f. *shichkă*, a sewing-girl

modistka, f. a milliner

modní zboží, *modňee zbožee*, millinery

šaty, pl. *shăty*, a dress

život, m. *život*, the waist, the bust;

šněrovačka, f. *shňerovăchkă*, the corset, the bodice;

spodnička, f. *spodňichkă*, the petticoat

košile (ženská), *koshillě*, the chemise

karnýr, m. *karneer*, a flounce

karnýrek, m. a ruffle

pentle, f. *pentlě*, a ribbon

mašle, f. *măshlě*, a sash

Diverse trades.

ROZLIČNÁ ŘEMESLA.

Barvíř, *barveersh*, dyer
 barvíř domů, house painter
 bednář, *bednársh*, cooper
 cihlář, *tsihlársh*, brickmaker
 cukrář, *tsükrársh*, confectioner
 čalouník, *chäloũník*, upholsterer
 doutníkář, *doũtníkársh*, cigar-maker
 dlaždič, *dlážďich*, paver
 formář, *formársh*, moulder
 hodinář, *hodínársh*, watchmaker
 havíř, *hävveersh*, miner
 kameník, *kämẽník*, stone cutter
 klempíř, *klempeersh*, tinner
 knihař, *kñihársh*, bookbinder
 kloboučník, *klobouchník*, hatter
 kolář, *kolársh*, wagon-maker
 kotlář, *kollársh*, boiler maker
 kovář, *kovársh*, blacksmith
 koželuh, *koželũh*, tanner
 kožešník, *kožeshník*, furrier
 krejčí, *kreychee*, tailor
 kufrář, *kũfrársh*, trunk-maker
 lakýrník, *läkeerník*, laquerer
 litec, *litets*, founder
 malíř, *mäleersh*, painter
 mydlář, *mydlársh*, soap-maker
 mlynář, *mlynársh*, miller
 natěrač, *nät'eräch*, painter
 obuvník, (*švec*), *obũvník*, (*shwets*)
 shoemaker
 pekař, *pekarsh*, baker
 plynovodník, gas-fitter
 puškař, *pushkarsh*, gunsmith
 řezník, *řshẽžník*, butcher

rybář, *rybársh*, fisherman
 rytec, *rytets*, engraver
 sazeč, *säzech*, typesetter
 sedlář, *sedlársh*, saddler
 sekerník, *sekerník*, millwright
 sládek, brewer
 sochař, *sokharsh*, sculptor
 stavitel, builder
 strojuík, *stroyník*, machinist
 tesař, *tessarsh*, carpenter
 tiskař, *tisskarsh*, printer
 tkadlec, *kädlets*, weaver
 truhlář, (*stolař*), *trũhlársh*, cabinet
 maker
 zahradník, *zähřädník*, gardner
 zámečník, *zámechník*, locksmith
 zedník, *zedník*, stone-mason, brick-
 layer;
 zlatník, *zlätník*, goldsmith.

Barvířství, n. *barveershtwee*, the
 dyer's trade;
 bednářství, n. *bednárshhtwee*, the
 cooper's trade;
 doutníkářství, *doũtníkárstwee*, cigar-
 making;
 krejčovství, *kreychofstwee* } the tailor's
 krejčovina, *kreychowinã* } trade, tail-
 1 ring;
 ševcovství, *shěftsof-* } the shoemak-
 stwee, } er's trade,
 ševcovina, *shěftsovinã* } shoemaking;
 sazečství, *säzechstwee*, type-setting,
 etc.

On the farm.

NA FARMĚ.

I want to go on a farm.
Do you want to be a
farmer?

Yes, I want to buy
land.

What is land worth in
this neighborhood?

What are improved
farms worth?

Fifty to sixty dollars an
acre, and over.

How is the soil? — The
soil is good, fertile.

Good land all over.

What is the character
(or "lay") of the land?

The land is level, flat,
broken, hilly).

The land is loamy, —
sandy.

Black loam, — mixed
with sand.

Gravel at the bottom, —
in some places clay.

Rich land; — poor land.

That land is bad —
swampy; — it has no
drainage.

That land looks poor.
— Everything grows
here; — but it wants
manuring.

Chei na farmu.

Cheete býti farmerem?

**Ano; chei koupiti po-
zemek.**

**Co stojí pozemky v tom-
to okolí?**

**Co stojí vzdělané far-
my?**

**Padesát až šedesát dol-
larů akr, i více.**

**Jaká je půda? — Půda
je dobrá, úrodná.**

Samá dobrá zem.

Jaká je poloha?

**Půda je rovná (plochá,
lomená, kopčitá).**

**Zem je hlinitá, — pís-
čitá.**

**Černá hlína, — smícha-
ná s pískem.**

**Štěrka vespod, — někde
jíl (mazník).**

**Bohatá půda; — chudá
půda.**

**Ten pozemek je špat-
ný, — bahnitý; —
nemá odpad.**

**Ta půda vypadá hube-
ná. — Všechno zde
roste; — ale musí se
hnojit.**

khtsi nã farmũ.

khtsětě beet farmerem?

*ãnď; khtsi koũpit pŏžě-
mek.*

*tsŏ stoyee pozemky ftom-
tŏ okolee?*

*tsŏ stoyee vzdělané far-
my?*

*pădessât ăsh shědessât
dollároo ăk ẽr, e veetsě.*

*yăká yě poodă? — poodă
yě dŏbrá, oo'rodná.*

sămá dŏbrá zem.

yăká yě polohă?

*poodă yě rovná, (plochá,
loměná, kopchitá).*

*zem yě hliňitá, — pees-
chitá.*

*cherná hleenă, — smee-
khăná speeskem.*

*shŭerk vespod, — ñegďě
yeel (măzňik).*

*bohătá poodă; — khŭďá
poodă.*

*ten pŏzemek yě shpătnee
— băhňitee; — němá
odpăd.*

*tă pooda vypăďá hŭbe-
ná. — fshěkhňŏ zde
rostě; — ăľě mŭsee sě
hnojit.*

How will the harvest be? — good? — bad?

How does grain look?—
Grain shows a good stand.—Wheat stools out thickly.

Rye is in bloom.—Barley is heading.

Wheat¹ as lodged;—the rainstorm laid it flat.

It has a good ear;—the berries are plump.

Corn is poor: — early corn looks better than late corn.

Have you a great deal of corn? — We have twenty acres of it.

We planted it towards the end of May. — I think it will pick up.

Our neighbor planted corn in the sod. —
How does it grow? —
Poorly.

How is the pasture?—
Poor.

Everything is parched up. — Hay will be short.

Do you raise a great deal of stock?

About fifty head.

What do you feed (to your stock)?

Jaká bude úroda?—dobrá? — špatná?

Jak stojí obilí?— Obilí stojí dobře. — Pšenice nasazuje hustě.

Žito je ve květu.— Ječmen vymetá.

Pšenice lehla; — ten liják ji položil.

Má dobrý klas; — zrnó je jadrné.

Kukuřice je špatná;— ranná korna je lepší než pozdní.

Máte mnoho korný?— Máme jí dvacet akrů.

Sázeli jsme ji ke konci máje. — Já myslím že se sebere.

Soused sázel kornu do drnu. — Jak roste? — Mizerně.

Jaká je pastva? — Hubená.

Všecko je vyprahlé.— Sena bude málo.

Chováte mnoho dobytka?

Asi padesát kusů.

Čím krmíte?

yáká bŭdě oorodă?—dôbră? — shpătnă?

yăk stoyee obilee? — obilee stoyee dôbrshě. — pshěñitsě năssăzŭyě hŭsstě.

žitô yě vě kwyětŭ. — yěchmen vymětá.

pshěñitsě lehlă;—ten liyák ye položil.

má dôbree klăss;— z^erno yě yăd^erné.

kăkărshitsě yě shpătnă, — rănă kornă yě lepshée nesh pozdněe

mătě mnohō kornŭ? — mămě ye dwătset kroo.

sázelli smě ye kě kontsi máyě. — yá misleem že sě sěberě.

soŭsed sázel kornŭ dôd^ernŭ. — yăk roste? — mizerñe.

yáká yě păstvă? — hŭbănă.

fshětsko yě vyprahlé.— sennă bŭdě málô.

khovătě mnohō dôbyt-kă?

ăssi pădessăt kŭssoo.

cheem k^ermeetě?

What do you feed your stock upon?	Co dáváte dobytku žráti?	<i>tsō dávátě dobytĕkŭ žrát?</i>
What do you feed to your horses?	Čím krmíte koně?	<i>cheem k^ermeeťě koňe?</i>
Do you fatten your stock for the butcher (<i>liter.</i> "for meat")?	Krmíte dobytek na maso?	<i>k^ermeeťě dōbytek nă măsŏŏ?</i>
Last year I fattened fifteen head of beef-steers.	Loni vykrmil jsem patnáct volů na maso.	<i>loňi vyk^ermil sem păt-nătst voloo nă măsŏŏ.</i>
I feed many hogs for the market.	Krním mnoho prasat pro trh.	<i>k^ermeeem mnohō prăsŏŏt pro t^erh.</i>
I have a stock farm not far from here.	Mám dobytčí farmu nedaleko odtud.	<i>mám dōbitchee farmŭ nedălekō otŭd.</i>
There is a creek on it; — but now it is almost dry.	Je na ní potok; — ale teď je skoro suchý.	<i>yě nă ňee pōtok; —ălě teď yě skorō sŭkhee.</i>
This is a dry year (a dry season);—there is no moisture (no rain).	Je suchý rok; — není vláhy.	<i>yě sŭkhee rok; — neyňi vlăhy.</i>
A wet year (wet season) is better.	Mokrý rok je lepší.	<i>mokree rok yě lepshee.</i>
There is a great deal of insects this year.	Je síla hmyzu letos.	<i>yě seelă hmizŭ letoss.</i>
Grasshoppers we never had;—neither did we have chinch bugs.	Kobylky nikdy jsme neměli; — polní šťenice také ne.	<i>kobylky ňigdy smě ně-myělli;—pollňee ště-ňitsě tăké ně.</i>
Farming implements cost a great deal.	Roľnické nářadí stojí mnoho.	<i>rolňitské nărshăďee stoyee mnohō.</i>
At present we have machines for everything	Teď máme stroje na všechno.	<i>teď mámě stroyě nă fshěťskō.</i>
Farming is improving.	Roľnictví se zvelebuje.	<i>rolňitstvee sě zvelěbŭyě.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Note. From the preceding lessons the student is familiar with a great many words and phrases relating to agriculture; To repeat the same in the following vocabulary would be a waste of space.

LAND and HARVEST.

Půda a žeň.

Dolina, f. *dollinā* } bottomland
úpad, m. *oopăd* }
výšina, f. *veeshinā*, upland
svah, m. *svāh*, slope
stráň, f. *strāň*, bluff
rokle, f. *rocklē*, ravine, gully;
mez, f. *měz*, boundary, line;
pěšina, f. *pyěshinā* } path
stezka, f. *steskā* }
lávka, f. *láfká*, footbridge
mostek, m. *mōstek* } little bridge
můstek, m. *moostek* }
kanál, m. *kānāl*, culvert
strouha, f. *stroūhā*, ditch
břeh, m. *brshěh*, bank
hráz (hráze), f. *hráz*, dam.

Orati, *orāt*, to plow
vláčeti, *vlāchet*, to harrow
přeorati, *prshěorāt*, to backset
přivláčeti, *prshi-vlāchet*, to scour
oráč, m. *orách*, plowman
brázda, f. *brázdā*, furrow
kolej, f. *kolley*, rut
hnojiti, *hnoyit*, to manure

hnojivo, n. *hnoyivō*, } manure,
hnůj, m. *hnooy* } dung;
mrva, f. *m^ervā* }
zaseti, *zāsset*, to sow, to seed (with);
zaseto, *zāssetō*, sown, seeded;
sázeti, *sázet*, } to plant
zasázeti, *zāsászet*, }
zasázeno, planted
žíti, *žet*, } to reap, to mow;
požiti, *požet* }
sekati, *sekāt* } to cut
posekati, *pōsekāt* }
skliditi, *sklidīt*, to harvest
sláma, f. *slámā*, straw
snop, m. *snōp*, sheaf
vázati, *vázāt*, to bind
stoh, m. *stōh*, stack
stohovati, *stōhovāt*, to stack
kupa sena, *kūpā sennā*, hay-stack
kupka sena, *kūpkā s.*, hay-rick
voziti, *vozt* } to haul,
svážeti, *svážet* } to carry;
droliti se, *drolit sě*, to shed, to shell;
zralý, á, é *zrālee*, ripe
přezralý, á, é *prshězrālee*, over-ripe.

PLANTS.

Rostliny.

Tráva, f. *trávā*, grass
plevel, m. *plěvell*, weeds
plet, *plet*, to weed
koukol, *koukol*, cockle
jetel, m. *yetell*, clover
pohanka, f. *pohānkā*, buckwheat
proso, n. *prossō*, millet

hrách, m. *hrákh*, pease
boby, *bōby* } beans
fazole, *fāzolě* }
čočka, f. *chochkā*, lentils
řepa, f. *rshěpā* } beets
řípa, f. *rsheepā*, }
řepa pro dobytek, rutabaga

vodnatka, f. turnips
 keř, m. *kersh*, shrub
 živý plot, *živee plot*, hedge
 háj, m. *háy*, grove
 houština, f. *hoũshťinã*, thicket,
 copse;
 chrastí, n. *khrãst'í*, brushwood,
 undergrowth;

pařez, m. *pãrshëz*, stump
 klada, f. *klãdã*, trunk
 větev, f. *vyëtef*, branch, bough;
 větvička, f. *vyëtvichkã*, twig
 ratolest, f. *prig*
 káceti stromy, *kátset* }
 porážeti “ *porážet* } to fell (trees)

TEAMS and DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Potah a domácí zvřata.

Potah, m. *põtãh*, a team
 pár koní, *pár koňee*, a pair of horses
 pár volů, *pár voloo*, a yoke of oxen
 pár mladých volů, a pair of steers;
 na koni, *nã koňi*, on horseback;
 jeti na koni, *yet nã koňi*, to ride a
 horse;
 jeti s koňma, *yet skoňmã*, to drive
 horses;
 zapřahnouti, *zãprshãhnoũt*, to har-
 ness;
 uvázati, *ũvázãt*, to hitch
 náklad, m. *nãklãd*, the load
 nakládati, *nãklãdãt*, to load
 skládati, *sklãdãt*, to unload
 uváznouti, *ũvãznoũt*, to get fast, to
 stick fast;
 splástiti se, *splãshit së*, to run away
 lekati se, *lekãt së*, to shy
 zarážlivý kůň, *zarážlvëe kooň*, a
 balky horse;
 zlý kůň, *zlee kooň*, a vicious horse;
 klus, m. *klũss*, trot
 krok, m. pace
 krmiti, *k'ermít*, to feed
 napojiti, *nãpoyít*, to water.

Klisna, f. *klissnã* }
 hřebice, f. *hrshëbitsë* } broad mare;
 hřebná, *hrshëbnã*, with foal;
 hřibě, n. *hrsheebyë*, foal
 hřebček, m. *hrshëbëchek*, colt
 hřebička, f. *hrshëbichkã*, filly
 cucati, *tsũtsãt*, to suckle
 cucák, m. *tsũtsák*, a suckling
 hřebec, m. *hrshëbets*, }
 hengst, m. *hengst* } stallion

Krãva, f. *krãvã*, cow
 dojnice, f. *doyñitsë*, milch cow;
 jalovice, f. *yãllovitsë*, heifer
 tele, n. *tellë*, calf
 bulík, m. *bulleek*, bull calf;
 jalovička, f. *yãllovichkã*, heifer calf
 roční, *rochñee*, yearling
 stelná, *stellnã*, with calf
 jalová, *yãllovã*, farrow
 pometati, *põmetãt*, to slink, to slip
 the calf;
 běhati se, *byëhãt së*, to be bulling;
 to want the bull;
 býk, m. *beek* }
 bejk, *bëyk* } bull

Ovce, f. *oftsě*, sheep
 bahnice, f. *bāhñitsě*, ewe
 beran, m. *berān*, ram, buck;
 jehně, n. *yěhñe*, lamb
 bahnění, n. *bāhñēñi*, lambing season
 vlna, f. *v^lñā*, wool
 střihání, n. *strsheeháñi*, shearing.

Prase, n. *prāsse* } pig, hog;
 vepř, m. *veprsh* }
 kanec, m. *kānets*, boar
 svině, f. *sweeñe*, sow
 sele, n. *sellě* } suckling
 podsviňe, n. *podswinchě* } pig.

Mezek, m. *mězek*, mule
 osel, m. *ōsell*, donkey
 koza, f. *kōzā*, goat, she-goat;
 kozel, m. *kōzell*, he goat
 kůzle, n. *koozlě*, kid
 pes, m. *pess*, dog
 čuba, f. *chūbā*, bitch
 štěně, n. *shťeñe*, whelp

kočka, f. *kōchkā*, cat
 kocour, m. *kotsouř*, tom-cat.

Drůbež, f. *drooběsh*, poultry
 slepice, f. *slepitsě*, hen, chicken;
 kvočna, f. *kwōchnā*, clucking hen;
 kuře, n. *koorshě*, chick, young
 chicken;

kohout, m. *kohoūt*, rooster

kachna, f. *kākhñā* } duck
 kačena, *kachenā* }

kačer, m. *kācher*, drake

husa, f. *hūssā*, goose

houser, m. *hoūsser*, gander

housata, pl. *hoūssātā*, goslings

krocan, m. *krotsān*, turkey-cock

krůta, f. *krootā*, turkey-hen

páv, m. *páf*, peacock

pavice, f. *pávitsě*, peahen

hnízdo, n. *hñeezdō*, nest

nesti vejce, *nest veytsě*, to lay eggs;

líhnouti se, *lechnoūt sě*, to hatch.

TOOLS and MACHINES.

Nástroje a stroje.

Vůz, m. *vooz*, wagon
 kolo, *kollō*, wheel
 kolečko, n. *kollechkō*, wheelbarrow
 ráf, m. tire
 náboj, m. *náboy*, hub
 náprava, f. *náprāvā*, axletree
 špice, f. *shpitsě*, spokes
 voj, f. *voy*, pole
 vojky, *vryky*, shafts
 hamovák, m. *hāmovák*, brake
 pera, pl. n. *perā*, springs
 sedadlo, n. *sedādlō*, seat

kšír, m. *ksheer*, harness

oprát, f. *oprāt*, line

sedlo, n. *sedlō*, saddle

uzda, f. *oozdā*, bridle

ohlávka, f. *ohláfka*, halter

popruh, m. *poprūh*, girt

čabraka, f. *chābrākā*, horse-loth

třemen, m. *trshěmen*, stirrup

hřebílice, *hrshě-beeltsě*, curry-comb

bič, m. *bitch*, whip

bičíště, n. *bichishtě*, whip-stick.

Saně, pl. *sǎne*, sleigh
sanice, f. *sǎnitsě*, runner, (also: sleighing);
korba, f. *korbǎ*, cutt r
řezačka, f. *rshězǎchkǎ*, straw-cutter, feed-cutter;
řezanka, f. *rshězǎnkǎ*, chopped straw;
brány, pl. harrow, drag;
válec, m. *válets*, roller
pluh, m. *plooh*, plow
radlice, f. *rǎdlitsě*, plowshare
kleče, pl. *klěchě*, handles
krajadlo, n. *krǎyǎdlǎ*, coulter
řetěz, m. *rshěťez*, chain
pospěchy, pl. *pospyěkhy* } culty-
podrývač, m. *podreerǎch* } vator
kosa, f. *kossǎ*, scythe
motyka, f. hoe
špičatá motyka, *shpichǎtǎ m.*, pick-axe
rýč, f. *reech*, spade
lopata, f. *lopǎtǎ*, shovel
hrábě, pl. *hrǎbyě*, rake
hrabati, *hrǎbǎt*, to rake
podávky, pl. *podǎfky*, hayfork
vidle, pl. *vidlě*, pitchfork
sekyra, f. *sekyrǎ*, axe
sekyrka, f. hatchet

pila, f. *pillǎ* }
pilka, *pillkǎ* } saw
ruční pilka, *rǎchñee pillkǎ*, hand saw
nebozez, m. bore, auger;
Mlatidlo, *mlǎťidlǎ* } threshing
mlatička, *mlǎťichkǎ* } machine
mlátiti, *mlǎťit*, to thresh
mlácení, n. *mlǎtseñi*, threshing
mlatič, m. *mlǎťich*, thresher
fofr, m. *fǒf^er*, fanning mill;
sečka, f. *sechkǎ*, grain-drill
žací stroj, m. *žǎtsee stroy*, mower
sekací stroj, *sekǎtsee stroy*, reaper
samovazač, m. *sǎmovǎzǎch*, self-binder
rám, m. frame
sýto, n. *seetǎ*, sieve
řešeto, n. *rshěshětǎ*, screen
řemen, m. *rshěmen* } belt
pruh, m. *prooh* }
tyč, f. *tich*, rod
panty, pl. m. *pǎnty*, hinges
zuby, pl. m. *zǔby* } cogs
palce, *pǎltsě* }
žlábek, m. *žlǎbek*, spout
mlýnek, m. *mlayneek*, mill
loupač (na kukuřici), m. *loǔpǎch*, corn-sheller;
loupati, *loǔpǎt*, to shell.

PART IV.

Bohemian grammar.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION 1. — The full Bohemian alphabet, as given in the first Part, contains the following vowels : **a, á, — e, é, ě, — i, í, y, ý, — o, ó, — u, ú, ů.**

The other letters are consonants. There is only one diphthong: **ou, oŭ.** When **ou** occurs in a compound word, ending one and beginning the next syllable, it is not a diphthong and must be divided : **použiti (po-užiti), pŏ-ůžit**, to use, to make use of; **samouk (samo-uk), sŏmo-ŭk**, a self-educated man.

An accute accent (or comma' over a vowel marks a long sound: **kam, kām**, where to; **kámen, kámen**, a stone.

A ring over the vowel **u (ů)** is also a prolongation mark : **sup, sŭp**, a hawk; **sůl, sool**, the salt.

When a word begins with a long **u**, the accute accent is used: **úrok, oorok**, the interest. In such cases the vowel **ú** may be and frequently is changed into the diphthong **ou: ourok, oŭrok**,

The accented vowel **ě** has always the short sound of *yě*: **svět, swyět**, the world.

The vowels **a, o, u, y**, are called *hard*; the vowels **e, ě, i**, are called *soft*.

SECTION 1. — The consonants are divided into three classes :

hard consonants, — **h, ch, k, r, d, n, t;**

soft consonants, — **c, ě, ď, j, ň, ř, š, ť, ž;**

neutral consonants, — **b, f, l, m, p, s, v, z.**

After the hard consonants the hard vowel *y* is always used :

hynu , <i>hinnǎ</i> , I am perishing;	vždyť , <i>dyť</i> , <i>děť</i> , but, to be sure;
chyba , f. <i>khíbǎ</i> , a mistake, a fault;	nynčko (<i>nyní</i>), <i>nínchko</i> , now, at present;
kyt , m. <i>kit</i> , putty	tykev , f. <i>tikef</i> , a pumpkin
ryba , f. <i>ribǎ</i> , a fish	

When the sound is long, an accented *ý* is used : **hýbati**, *heebăt*, to move; **tichý** (*á, é*), *tíkhee*, quiet; **rýti**, *reet*, to spade, to dig, to root; **dým**, m. *deem*, smoke; **týrati**, *teerăt*, to misuse, to torment.

In such cases the vowel *ý* is usually changed into *ej* (*ěy*), in common pronunciation : **hejbati**, *hěybăt*, **tichej**, *tíkhey*; **rejtí**, *rěyt*; **dejm**, *děym*; **tejrati**, *těyrăt*.

Words derived from foreign languages, also foreign names, make an exception, their original spelling being retained : **historie**, *historiě*, history; **Amerika**, **Riga**, etc.

The soft consonants are always followed by the soft vowel *i* (or *í*, when the sound is long) :

cit , m. <i>tsit</i> , the feeling	cíl , m. <i>tseel</i> , the goal
čin , m. <i>chin</i> , the deed	číslo , n. <i>cheeslo</i> , the number
divoký *, <i>dívokee</i> , wild	díl , m. <i>díeel</i> , a part
jistý , <i>yístee</i> , certain	jísti , <i>yeest</i> , to eat
nic , <i>nīts</i> , nothing	hníti , <i>hñcet</i> , to rot
řimsa , f. <i>rshimsǎ</i> , a cornice	říci , <i>rsheetsi</i> , to say
šikovný , <i>shikōvnee</i> , smart, clever;	šíti , <i>sheet</i> , to sew
tisk , m. <i>tísk</i> , the printing	tíže , f. <i>tíeežě</i> , the weight
život , m. <i>život</i> , the life	žíla , f. <i>žeelǎ</i> , the vein.

The neutral vowels are followed by the soft *i* or *í*, with the following exceptions :

- b** : **aby**, *by*, that; **bych**, *bys*, etc. that I, that thou, etc.; **bylina**, f. the plant; **bystrý**, quick, sharp; **býti**, to be; **kobyła**, the mare; **obyčej**, m. the custom.
- l** : **lysý**, bald; **lysina**, f. bald spot, or white spot; **lýko**, the bast; **lyska**, f. the coot; **mlýn**, m. the mill; **oplývati**, to abound; **pely-**

*) The soft consonants *d'*, *ñ*, *t'* lose their accent, when followed by *i*, *í* or *ě*, and are written simply *d*, *n*, *t*. See Part I, section 2.

něk, m. the wormwood; **plyn**, m. the gas; **plynouti**, to glide; **plýtvati**, to waste; **polykati**, to swallow; **slyšeti**, to hear; **vzlykati**, to sob.

m : **hmyz**, m. the insects; **my**, we; **mýdlo**, n. the soap; **mýliti**, to mislead, to confuse; **mýliti se**, to mistake; **omyl**, m. a mistake; **mysl**, f. the mind; **mysliti**, to think; **myš**, f. the mouse; **mýti**, to wash; **smyčec**, m. the fiddle-stick; **smykati**, to drag; **zamykati**, to lock up.

p : **kopyto**, n. the hoof; **netopýr**, m. the bat; **pýcha**, f. the pride; **pykati**, to regret; **pyl**, m. the pollen; **pýr**, m. the quick-grass; **pysk**, the lip; **pytel**, the sack; **třpytiti**, to glitter; **zpytovat**, to search, to inquire.

s : **osyka**, f. the aspen; **osypky**, pl. the measles; **posýlati**, to send; **syčeti**, to hiss; **sychravý**, chilly; **syn**, m. the son; **sypati**, to pour; **sýpka**, f. the granary; the bin; **sýr**, m. the cheese; **syrový**, raw; **syrup**, the syrup; **sysel**, m. the gopher; **syť**, **nasycen**, full, satiated.

v : **povyk**, m. the noise; **vy**, you; **vydra**, f. the otter; **výheň**, f. the forge; **vykýř**, m. the dormer-window; **výr**, m. the horn-owl; **vysoký**, high; **výti**, to howl; **vyza**, the sturgeon; **zvyk**, the habit; **žvýkati**, to chew.

z : **brzy**, soon; **jazyk**, the tongue; **nazývati**, to call, to name.

SECTION 3.—As in English, the spelling makes sometimes a great difference of meaning, though the pronunciation may be identical. For instance :

býti , <i>beet'i</i> or <i>beet</i> (colloquially <i>běyt</i>), to be	bíti , <i>beet'i</i> or <i>beet</i> , to beat
mýti , <i>meet'i</i> or <i>meet</i> , (colloq. <i>měyt</i>), to wash	míti , <i>meet'i</i> or <i>meet</i> , to have
my , <i>me</i> , we	mi , <i>me</i> , to me
vy , <i>ve</i> , you	ví , <i>vee</i> , he knows
výr , <i>veer</i> , (colloq. <i>věyr</i>), the horn-owl	vír , <i>veer</i> , the whirl-wind
výti , <i>veet'i</i> or <i>veet</i> (colloq. <i>věyt</i>), to howl	víti , <i>veet'i</i> or <i>veet</i> , to wind.

SECTION 4.—The Bohemian verb shows a distinction of gender in the past tense*). In the plural, there is only an orthographical distinction

*) See Note 2, Lesson IX.

between the masculine and *feminine* gender, the latter always terminating in *y*. For instance :

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
byli jsme, we were	byly jsme, we were
byli, they were	byly, they were
měli jsme, we had	měly jsme, we had
měli, they had	měly, they had
muži měli, the men had;	ženy měly, the women had
hoši viděli, the boys saw;	holky viděly, the girls saw.

The same is true of verbs relating to *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender, or names of lifeless things : **stromy vyrostly**, the trees grew up; **domy shořely**, the houses burned down.

SECTION 5. — The general rule of Bohemian spelling is: A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters*). From this rule there are but few exceptions. In some words the initial letter **j** is silent :

jdu, <i>dů</i> , I go	jmeno, n. <i>meně</i> , the name
jsem, <i>sem</i> , I am	jmenovati, <i>meněvati</i> , to name
jíme, <i>smě</i> , we are	jmění, n. <i>myěni</i> , the property.

The letter **d** is also silent in a few cases: **dcera**, *tsera*, the daughter, **srdce**, n. *s^erěšě*, the heart.

In some cases the letters **k, s, t, v, z, ž** modify their sound in order to facilitate pronunciation:

kdo, who, — <i>gdě</i>	v peci, in the oven, — <i>fpetsi</i> ;
kdy, when, — <i>gdý</i>	bez peněz, without money, — <i>běs</i>
s bohem, farewell, — <i>zbōhem</i>	<i>pěněz</i> ;
kletba, f. the curse, — <i>kledbā</i>	zpívati, to sing, — <i>speevāt</i> .

SECTION 6. — The prepositions **s** and **z** (**se**, **ze**) are governed by the following rule :

When the tendency is *from above downwards* **s** or **se** is used: **spadl s okna**, **s nebe**, **se stromu**, *spādl soknā, sněbē, sě stromū*, — he fell from the window, from heaven, from the tree.

*) See Part III, Note 1.

When the tendency is from below upwards, or from the inside to the outside, *z* or *ze* is employed : **vylezu ze studně**, I shall crawl up from the well; **vyndal jsem peníze z kapsy**, (*skřepsy*), I took the money from my pocket, *or* out of my pocket; **vyskočím z okna ven**, I shall jump out of the window.

SECTION 7.—It is a vulgar English custom to place the sound of *h* before initial vowels : *heye* (eye), *Hengland* (England). In Bohemian a similar vulgar custom obtains, namely that of placing the letter **v** before an initial **o**. We hear, for instance :

von ,	instead of on (he)	vokno ,	instead of okno (window)
vona ,	“ “ ona (she)	voko ,	“ “ oko (eye)
vono ,	“ “ ono (it)	vosel ,	“ “ osel (ass).

This vulgarity must be carefully avoided in writing as well as speaking. On the other hand, when the letter **v** belongs to the root of the word, care must be taken not to omit the same :

voda, water; **voják**, soldier; **vosk**, wax; **voskovati**, to wax.

SECTION 8. — In writing, words have often to be divided in syllables. The principal rules to be observed are the following :

a) A consonant standing between two vowels belongs to the next syllable : **o-ba**, both; **o-ko**, the eye; **kla-da**, the log.

b) A consonant succeeding the letter **l** or **r** also belongs to the next syllable : **vl-na**, *v^lna*, the wool; **hr-dlo**, *h^rdl^o*, the throat.

c) Two vowels, if they do not form the diphthong **ou**, are always divided : **Ma-ri-e**, *māriě*.

d) Compound words are divided according to their component parts : **bez-hlavý** (**bez-hla-vý**), headless; **roz-ličný** (**roz-lič-ný**), different; **oka-mžik**, the twinkling of an eye; a moment.

Other rules are less important and are sometimes sinned against even by the best writers.

SECTION 9. — The use of capital letters follows the same rules as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from the names of countries or nations do not, in Bohemian, commence with a capital letter (**anglický**, English; **český**, Bohemian etc.); neither does the personal pronoun **já** (I) use a capital letter.

2. ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION 1. — The Bohemian language has seven cases, the nature of which is sufficiently explained in Note 5, on page 82.

SECTION 2. — The declension of Bohemian nouns differs in regard to *gender*, and also in regard to *termination*.

Nouns of the masculine gender, moreover, form two classes : (a) names of living creatures, or *animate* nouns; (b) names of lifeless beings, or *inanimate* nouns.

According to this division there is also a slight difference in their declension.

DECLENSION of MASCULINE NOUNS.

SECTION 3.—The first declension of nouns of the masculine gender is fully shown by the following examples*):

<i>Animate</i>		<i>Inanimate</i>
Singular number.		
<i>nominative</i>	syn , the son	strom , the tree
<i>genitive</i>	syn-a , of the son;	strom-u , of the tree;
<i>dative</i>	syn-u , -ovi , to the son	strom-u , to the tree;
<i>accusative</i>	syn-a , the son	strom , the tree
<i>vocative</i>	syn-e ^{*)} , son !	strom-e , tree !
<i>locative</i>	syn-u , -ovi , (in) the son	strom-u , (in) the tree;
<i>instrumental</i>	syn-em , with the son	strom-em , with the tree
Plural number.		
<i>nom.</i>	syn-i , -ové , the sons	strom-y ^{***)} , the trees
<i>gen.</i>	syn-ů , -ův , of the sons	strom-ů , ův , of the trees
<i>dat.</i>	syn-ům , to the sons;	strom-ům , to the trees;
<i>acc.</i>	syn-y , the sons	strom-y , the trees
<i>voc.</i>	syn-i , -ové , sons;	strom-y ^{***)} , trees !
<i>loc.</i>	syn-ech , (in) the sons;	strom-ech , (in) the trees;
<i>inst.</i>	syn-y , with the sons:	strom-y , with the trees.

*) Compare Note 3, on page 55; also Note 1, on page 69.

***) In this particular case the common usage is **synu** ! o son ! **Syn-nu můj**, o my son !

****) It has also the long termination **ové**, when used as an *animate* noun, especially in poetic language: **stromové se klonili**, the trees bowed.
O stromové, promluvte ! o trees, speak out !

The first masculine declension (*ten syn, ten strom*) comprises nouns ending in hard or neutral consonants.

SECTION 4. — The second declension of nouns of the masculine gender is presented in full by the following examples:

<i>Animate</i>		<i>Inanimate</i>	
		Singular.	
<i>nom.</i>	muž , the man		meč , the sword
<i>gen.</i>	muž-e , of the man;		meč-e , of the sword;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-i, -ovi , to the man;		meč-i, t , the sword;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the man		meč , the sword
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i , man!		meč-i , sword !
<i>loc.</i>	muž-i , (in) the man;		meč-i , (in) the sword;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-em , with the man;		meč-em , with the sword.
		Plural.	
<i>nom.</i>	muž-i, -ové , the men		meč-e*) , the swords
<i>gen.</i>	muž-ů, -ův , of the men;		meč-ů, -ův , of the swords;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-ům , to the men;		meč-ům , to the swords;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the men		meč-e , the swords
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i, -ové , men !		meč-e*) , swords !
<i>loc.</i>	muž-ích , (in) the men;		meč-ích , (in) the swords;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-i , with the men;		meč-i , with the swords.

The second masculine declension (*ten muž, ten meč*) comprises nouns ending in soft consonants or in *el* (for inst. *učitel*, the teacher).

SECTION 5. — Nouns of the first declension, terminating in **h, ch, k, r**, change these hard consonants into **z, š, c, ř**, in the *nominative* case of the plural number, as explained in Note 3 on page 70, to which we refer.

SECTION 6. — Nouns of the first declension ending in **ek** eliminate the vowel *e* in the inflected cases, as stated in Note 2 on page 80. For instance :

svědek, *svyědek*, the witness; **svědka**, *svyědkā*, (not **svědeka**), of the witness; **svědku** or **svědkovi**, to the witness; etc. — (Plural:) **svědci** or **svědkové**, the witnesses; **svědků**, of the witnesses; **svědkům**, to the witnesses; etc.

*) It may also have the long termination (**mečové**), when used as an animate noun, especially in solemn or poetical language.

The same is true of nouns ending **et** and **en**. The nouns **loket** (the yard, *or* the elbow) and **den** (the day) follow in their declension the example of **meč**:

loket, the yard; **lokte**, of the yard; **lokti**, to the yard; etc.

den, the day; **dne**, of the day; **dni**, to the day; etc.

In the plural, **den** is quite irregular; **dni** or **dnové**, the days; **dní** or **dnův**, of the days; **dnům**, to the days; **dni** or **dny** (accus.), the days; **dnech**, (in) the days; **dněmi** or **dny**, with the days.

SECTION 7. — The vowel **ů**, when it occurs in the nominative, changes into **o** in the inflected cases : **kůň**, the horse; **koně**, of the horse; **koni** (or **koňovi**), to the horse; etc. — See Note 4 on page 56.

SECTION 8.—Nouns ending in **el** are mostly declined like **muž** or **meč**; for instance : **učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, of the teacher; **učiteli**, (-**ovi**), to the teacher; etc.

Přítel (the friend) has in the nominative plural **přátelé**, (the friends); in the genitive **přátel**, of the friends. —

The word **peníze** (the money) is a plural noun: **peněz**, of the money; **penězům**, to the money; **v penězích**, in the money; **penězi**, with the money.

DECLENSION of FEMININE NOUNS.

SECTION 9.—The first declension of nouns of the feminine gender (*ta žena*) is shown by the following example*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	žen-a , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>gen.</i>	žen-y , of the woman	žen , of the women
<i>dat.</i>	žen-ě , to the woman	žen-ám , to the women
<i>acc.</i>	žen-u , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>voc.</i>	žen-o , woman!	žen-y , women!
<i>loc.</i>	žen-ě , (in) the woman	žen-ách , (in) the women
<i>inst.</i>	žen-ou , with the woman	žen-ami , with the women.

All nouns of the feminine gender ending in **a** belong to this declension.

SECTION 10.—There are some masculine nouns terminating in **a**, which follow this declension in the singular, excepting the dative and locative cases, which have the long masculine form. For instance: **vévod-a**, the duke; **vévod-y**, of the duke; **vévod-ovi**, to the duke; etc.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60

In the plural number, such nouns follow the first masculine declension: **vévod-ové**, the dukes; **vévod-ův**, of the dukes; **vévod-ům**, to the dukes; etc. (See "plural" of first declension of masculine nouns.) - Some masculines ending in **a** take in the nominative plural always the short form **i** or **é**; for instance: **basista**, the basso; **basisti** (or **basisté**, the bassoes.

SECTION 11.—Nouns of the feminine gender ending in **ě**, belong to the second declension (*ta země*), which is as follows*):

	Singular		Plural
<i>nom.</i>	zem-ě , the earth		zem-ě , the earths
<i>gen.</i>	zem-ě , of the earth		zem-í , of the earths
<i>dat.</i>	zem-i , to the earth		zem-ím , to the earths
<i>acc.</i>	zem-i , the earth!		zem-ě , the earths
<i>voc.</i>	zem-ě , earth!		zem-ě , earths!
<i>loc.</i>	zem-i , with the earth		zem-ích , (in) the earths
<i>inst.</i>	zem-i , with the earth		zem-ěmi , with the earths.

SECTION 12.—Nouns of the feminine gender ending in a consonant (*ta daň*), belong to the third declension, which has two branches showing a slight divergence at least in the written language, if not always in common discourse; hence we subjoin two examples :

	Singular		Plural
<i>nom.</i>	kost , the bone		daň , the tax
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bone		dan-ě , of the tax
<i>dat.</i>	kost-i , to the bone		dan-i , to the tax
<i>acc.</i>	kost , the bone		daň , the tax
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bone!		dan-i , tax!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-i , (in) the bone		dan-i , (in) the tax
<i>inst.</i>	kost-í , with the bone		dan-í , with the tax.
<i>nom.</i>	kost-i , the bones		daně , the taxes
<i>gen.</i>	kost-í , of the bones		dan-í , of the taxes
<i>dat.</i>	kost-em , to the bones		dan-ím , to the taxes
<i>acc.</i>	kost-i , the bones		dan-ě , the taxes
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bones!		dan-ě , taxes!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-ech , (in) the bones		dan-ích , (in) the taxes
<i>inst.</i>	kost-mi , with the bones		dan-ěmi , with the taxes

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

Nouns terminating in **eñ** drop the vowel **e** in the inflected cases; for instance : **lázeñ**, the bath; **lázně**, of the bath; **lázni**, to the bath; etc.

DECLENSION of NEUTRAL NOUNS.

SECTION 13.—The **first** declension comprises nouns of the neutral gender ending in **o** (*to slovo*). They are declined as follows*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a , the words
<i>gen.</i>	slov-a , of the word	slov , of the words
<i>dat.</i>	slov-u , to the word	slov-ům , to the words
<i>acc.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a , the words
<i>voc.</i>	slov-o , word !	slov-a , words !
<i>loc.</i>	slov-ě , (-u), (in) the word	slov-ech , (-ích), (in) the words
<i>inst.</i>	slov-em , with the word	slov-y , with the words

SECTION 14.—The **second** neutral declension embraces nouns ending in **e** and **ě** (*to pole*, *to poupě*). It has two branches differing somewhat in their inflected endings, as will be seen from the subjoined two examples**).

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>gen.</i>	pol-e , of the field	poup-ěte , of the bud
<i>dat.</i>	pol-i , to the field	poup-ěti , to the bud
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , field !	poup-ě , bud !
<i>loc.</i>	pol-i , (in) the field	poup-ěti , (in) the bud
<i>inst.</i>	pol-em , with the field	poup-ětem , with the bud.
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>gen.</i>	pol-í , of the fields	poup-at , of the buds
<i>dat.</i>	pol-ím , to the fields	poup-atům , to the buds
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , fields !	poup-ata , buds !
<i>loc.</i>	pol-ích , (in) the fields	poup-atech , (in) the buds
<i>inst.</i>	pol-i , with the fields	poup-aty , with the buds.

*) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 65

The following nouns are declined like *poupě*: *hrabě*, the count, (*hrab-ěte*, of the count; *hrabata*, the counts); *kníže*, the princ; *pachole*, the little boy; *děvče*, the girl; *vnouče*, the grandchild; — *zvíře*, the animal; *dobyťce*, the beast; *hříbě*, the foal; *jehně*, the lamb; *koťe*, the kitten; *kůzle*, the kid; *káče*, the duckling; *kuře*, the chick; *hádě*, the young snake; *house*, the gosling; *tele*, the calf; — *doupě*, the den; *koště*, the broom; *vole*, the crop (the craw);

The nouns *břemeno*, the burden; *rameno*, the arm or upper arm; *semeno*, the seed; *temeno*, the crown of the head, — and some others, have also a short form: *břímě*, *ramě*, *símě*, *témě*. The declension of these shortened nouns deviates somewhat from the above examples of the second neutral declension, for which reason a full paradigm is subjoined:

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	<i>sím-ě</i> , the seed	<i>sem-ena</i> , the seeds
<i>gen.</i>	<i>sem-ene</i> , of the seed	<i>sem-en</i> , of the seeds
<i>dat.</i>	<i>sem-eni</i> , to the seed	<i>sem-enům</i> , to the seeds
<i>acc.</i>	<i>sím-ě</i> , the seed	<i>sem-ena</i> , the seeds
<i>voc.</i>	<i>sím-ě</i> , seed !	<i>sem-ena</i> , seeds !
<i>loc.</i>	<i>sem-eni</i> , (in) the seed	<i>sem-enech</i> , (in) the seeds
<i>inst.</i>	<i>sem-enem</i> , with the seed	<i>sem-eny</i> , with the seeds.

SECTION 15. — The third declension of neutral nouns is characterized by the terminal *í* :

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	<i>znamení</i> , the sign	<i>znamení</i> , the signs
<i>gen.</i>	<i>znamení</i> , of the sign	<i>znamení</i> , of the signs
<i>dat.</i>	<i>znamení</i> , to the sign	<i>znamením</i> , to the signs
<i>acc.</i>	<i>znamení</i> , the sign	<i>znamení</i> , the signs
<i>voc.</i>	<i>znamení</i> , sign !	<i>znamení</i> , signs !
<i>loc.</i>	<i>znamení</i> , (in) the sign	<i>znameních</i> , (in) the signs
<i>inst.</i>	<i>znamením</i> , with the sign	<i>znameními</i> , with the signs.

This declension embraces also: 1. *Feminine* nouns terminating in *í*, like: *paní*, the mistress or lady; *bibli*, (also *bible*), the bible; but these nouns retain the terminal *í* in the instrumental of the singular number: *s paní*, with the lady. — 2. Some *masculine* nouns ending in *í*: *rukojmí*, the surety.

SECTION 16. — There is a *dual* number in Bohemian, limited in the modern language to the names of parts of the human body, which appear in pairs : **oči**, the eyes; **uši**, the ears; **ruce**, the hands; **nohy**, the feet; **prsa**, the breasts; **ramena**, the arms; **kolena**, the knees. They are declined in the dual number as follows :

<i>nom.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a ,
<i>gen.</i>	oč-í , of the eyes	uš-í ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>dat.</i>	oč-ím , to the eyes	uš-ím ,	ruk-ám ,	noh-ám	prs-ům
<i>acc.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>voc.</i>	oč-i , eyes !	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>loc.</i>	oč-ích , (in) the eyes	uš-ích ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>inst.</i>	oč-ima , with the eyes	uš-ima ,	ruk-ama ,	noh-ama	prs-oma .

DECLENSION of ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 17. — There are two leading classes of adjectives: definite and indefinite.

Definite adjectives present two subdivisions : 1. adjectives with a changing termination, according to gender: **dobr-ý** (**muž**), **dobr-á** (**žen-a**), **dobr-é** (**dítě**), — the good man, the good woman, the good child; 2. adjectives with the same termination in all three genders: **dneš-ní** (**vítr**) **dnešní** (**zima**), **dnešní** (**parno**), — today's wind, today's cold, today's heat.*)

Indefinite adjectives are either derived from definite adjectives, being only a different form of the same; for instance: **zdravý**, **zdravá**, **zdravé**, healthy or well (definite); **zdráv**, **zdráva**, **zdrávo** (indefinite)**);

Or they are so-called possessive adjectives, derived from nouns : (**otec**, the father) **otec-ův**, **otec-ova**, **otec-ovo**, the father's; (**matka**, the mother) **matě-in**, **matě-ina**, **matě-ino**, the mother's***).

SECTION 18. — Definite adjectives with a changing termination are declined in the following manner****) :

*) Compare Note 1 on page 85, and Note 1 on page 94.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 103.

***) Com Notes 2 and 3, on pp. 94, 95

****) Compare Note 1, on page 85.

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dobr-ý muž, a good man;	dobr-á žena;	dobr-é dítě
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ého muže, of a good man	dobr-é ženy;	dobr-ého dítě
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ému muži, to a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ému dítě
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-ého muže, a good man;	dobr-ou ženu,	dobr-é dítě
<i>voc.</i>	dobr-ý muži, good man!	dobr-á ženo !	dobr-é dítě!
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ém muži, (in) a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ém dítě
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ým mužem, with a good man	dobr-ou ženou;	dobr-ým dítěem.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	dobří muži, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á děti
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ých mužů, of good men	dobr-ých žen	dobr-ých dětí
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ým mužům, to good men	dobr-ým ženám	dobr-ým dětám
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-é muže, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á děti
<i>voc.</i>	dobří muži, good men!	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á děti
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ých mužích, (in) good m.	dobr-ých ženách	dobr-ých dětech
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ými muži, with good men	dobr-ými ženami	dobr-ými dětmi.

Note 1. The hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, are changed in the nominative plural, of the *masculine* gender into the soft consonants **z, š, c, ř**, when the adjective qualifies an *animate* noun : **dobrý muž**, — **dobří muži**; **velký hoch**, — **velcí hoši**. The terminations **eký** and **ský** change into **čí** and **ští**: **německý** (sing). **němečí** — (plur.); **český** (sing.) — **čeští** (plur.).

In common discourse, however, this rule is neglected.

Note 2. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, it agrees in the nominative and accusative plural with the feminine gender: **dobré stromy**, good trees; and the accusative singular is like the nominative: **dobrý strom**.

SECTION 19.—Definite adjectives, having the same termination (**í**) in all genders and both numbers, are declined in the following manner*);

*) Compare Note 1, page 94.

Singular			Plural	
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>all three genders</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>gen.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-ího	dnešn-ích
<i>dat.</i>	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-í	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-ím
<i>acc.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>voc.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>loc.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ích
<i>inst.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ími

Note. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative. We say: **čekám dnešního hosta**, I wait for today's guest; but: "**čekám dnešní list**", I wait for to-day's paper.

SECTION 20.—Indefinite adjectives like **zdráv** (from **zdravý**), **vesel** (from **veselý**), etc.*) are now used only in the nominative and accusative cases. *Possessive* adjectives have the following declension:

Singular			
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ův , my brother's	bratr-ova	bratr-ovo
<i>gen.</i>	bratr-ova , of my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>dat.</i>	bratr-ovu , to my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ova , my brother's	bratr-ovu	bratr-ovo
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ův! brother's!	bratr-ova!	bratr-ovo!
<i>loc.</i>	bratr-ovn (-ově) in my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovn
<i>inst.</i>	bratr-ovým , with my brother's	bratr-ovou	bratr-ovým.
Plural			

(Only three cases differ, the other four being identical. In conversation there is no difference at all.)

<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ovi , my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>gen.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>dat.</i>		bratr-ovým	
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ovy	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ovi!	bratr-ovy!	bratr-ova!
<i>loc.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>inst.</i>		bratr-ovými	

*) See Note 2, page 103.

Note 1. — When the possessive adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative: *vidím bratrův dům*, “I see my brother’s house”; and the nominative and vocative plural have a final *y*, like the feminine gender: *bratrovy domy*, “my brother’s houses”.

Note 2. — The adjective *páně* is not inflected: *leta Páně 1900*, in the year of our Lord 1890;— *chrám Páně*, the Lord’s house; — *večeře, Páně*, the Lord’s supper, — *dům páně Hodanův*, Mr. Hodan’s house.

Note 3. — Possessive adjectives formed from feminine nouns and having the termination *in* (fem. *ina*, neutre *ino*)*, are declined like those formed from masculine nouns: *bratrův, bratrova, bratrovo*.

In their formation hard consonants are softened down in the usual manner: *mat-ka*, the mother; *mat-čin (matčina, matčino)*, the mother’s.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 21. — The comparison of adjectives is fully explained in Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XXII. The termination *ký* changes into *čí*, in the second and third degree: *hezký*, nice; *hezčí*, nicer; *nejhezčí*, ni est.

DECLENSION of PRONOUNS.

SECTION 22. — *Personal pronouns.**)

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	já , I	ty , thou	on , he; ono , it	ona , she
<i>gen.</i>	mě (mne) of me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho)	jí
<i>dat.</i>	mi (mně) to me	ti (tobě)	jemu (mu)	jí
<i>acc.</i>	mě (mne) me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho, jej); je , it	ji
<i>loc.</i>	mně , in me	tobě	něm	ní
<i>inst.</i>	mnou , with me	tebou	ním (jím)	ní (jí)

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	my , we	vy , you	oni , (fe m. ony ; neut. ona) they
<i>gen.</i>	nás , of us	vás ,	jich
<i>dat.</i>	nám , to us	vám	jim
<i>acc.</i>	nás , us	vás	je
<i>loc.</i>	nás , in us	vás	nich
<i>inst.</i>	námi (with) us	vámi	nimi (jimi)

*) See Note 3, page 95.

*) Compare Note 1 on page 102 and Note on page 106.

SECTION 23. — *Possessive pron uns.*)*

			Singular.			
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	naš	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mého	mé (mojí)	mého	našeho	naší	našeho
<i>dat.</i>	mému	mé (mojí)	mému	našemu	naší	našemu
<i>acc.</i>	mého (inan. můj)	mou (mojí)	mé (moje)	naseho (inan. náš)	naší	naše
<i>voc.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	naš	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mém	mé (mojí)	mém	našem	naší	našem
<i>inst.</i>	mým	mou (mojí)	mým	naším	naší	naším.

Plural.

(Cases showing no difference of gender are left in blank.)

<i>nom.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>dat.</i>	mým			naším		
<i>acc.</i>	mé (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naše		
<i>voc.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>inst.</i>	mými			našimi		

SECTION 24. — *Indicative pronouns.**)*

Singular			Plural				
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	ten	ta	to	ti	ty	ta	kdo co
<i>gen.</i>	toho	té	toho	těch			koho čeho
<i>dat.</i>	tomu	té	tomu	těm			komu čemu
<i>acc.</i>	toho (ten)	tu	to	ty	ty	ta	koho co
<i>loc.</i>	tom	té	tom	těch			kom čem
<i>inst.</i>	tím	tou	tím	těmi			kým čím

SECTION 25.—The relative pronouns **který** (fem. **která**, neut. **které**) and **jenž** (fem. & neut. **jež**), are translated by *which* or *that*.

The pronoun **který**, **á**, **é** is declined like the definite adjective **dobrý**, **á**, **é** : the pronoun **jenž** is declined as follows:

*) Compare Lessons XXV and XXVI.

**) Compare Note 1 on page 115, and Note 5 on page 82.

Singular				Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jenž	jež	jež	již (masc.), jež (f. & n.)
<i>gen.</i>	jehož	jíž	jehož	jichž
<i>dat.</i>	jemuž	jíž	jemuž	jimž
<i>acc.</i>	jehož (ježž)	již	jež	jež
<i>loc.</i>	(v) němž	(v) níž	(v) němž	(v) nichž
<i>inst.</i>	jímž	jíž	jímž	jimiž

NUMERALS.

SECTION 26.—The *cardinal* numeral **jeden** (fem. **jedna**, neut. **jedno**) is declined like **ten**, (**ta**, **to**):*)

Singular				Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jeden	jedn-a	jedn-o	jedn-i, -y, -a
<i>gen.</i>	jedn-oho	jedn-é	jedn-oho	jedn-ěch
<i>dat.</i>	jedn-omu	jedn-é	jedn-omu	jedn-ěm
<i>acc.</i>	jedn-oho (inan. jeden)	jedn-u	jedn-o	jedn-y, -y, -a
<i>loc.</i>	jedn-om	jedn-é	jedn-om	jedn-ěch
<i>inst.</i>	jedn-ím	jedn-on	jedn-ím	jedn-ěmi

The declension of **dva** (fem. & neut. **dvě**), **tři**, **čtyři** (fem. & neut. **čtyry**) is sufficiently explained in Note 1, on page 122.

The numerals **pět**, **šest**, **sedm** until **devadesát devět** (*five* till *ninety nine*) take in all cases an **i**, except the accusative and vocative, which are like the nominative. For instance : **pět mužů**, five men; **pěti mužů**, of five men (or “of the five men”); **pěti mužům**, to five men; **v pěti mužích**, in five men; **s pěti muži**, with five men.

In the nominative and accusative they are *always* followed by the *genitive case* of the noun: **pět mužů** or **mužův**, five men; **šest holek**, six girls; **sedm dětí**, seven children.

*) See Note 2 on page 116.

Numerals like *twenty one, twenty two, twenty three*, and so forth; may be rendered in Bohemian in two ways: 1.—**dvacet jeden, dvacet dva, dvacet tři**, etc.*), in which case both parts are inflected: **dvaceti dvou**, of twenty two; **dvaceti dvěma**, to twenty two; etc.

2. — **jeden-a-dvacet, dva-a-dvacet, tři-a-dvacet**, etc., *one and twenty, two and twenty, three and twenty*; etc., but usually written together: **jedenadvacet, dvaadvacet**. In this case only the second part is inflected: **jedenadvaceti**, of twenty one, to twenty two; **s jedenadvaceti**, with twenty one.

Sto (one hundred) is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**, excepting that in connection with **dvě** (two) it retains the *dual* number in the nominative and accusative: **sto, sta, stu**, etc. (a hundred, of a hundred, to a hundred); **dvě stě**, two hundred; **dvou set**, of two hundred; **dvěma stům**, to two hundred; **o dvou stech**, about two hundred; **s dvěma sty**, with two hundred.

Tisíc (one thousand) is declined like the masc. noun **meč**: **tisíce**, of a thousand; **tisíci**, to a thousand; **s tisícem**, with a thousand.

SECTION 27.—*Ordinal* numerals, **první** or **prvý, druhý, třetí**, etc; (first, second, third,) are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination, i. e. like **dobrý, á, é** or **dnešní**.**)

The same rule obtains in relation to the *special* and *multiplicative* numerals: **dvojí, trojí**, etc. (twofold, threefold); **dvojnásobný, trojnásobný**, etc. (double, treble).

The neutral form of special numerals: **čtvero, patero, desatero**, etc., is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**; for instance: **desatero přikázání**, the ten commandments; **desatera přikázání**, of the ten commandments; **v desateru přikázání**, in the ten commandments; etc.

The *names* of numbers: **jednotka** (the figure one), **dvojka**, the figure two), **trojka**, (the figure three), etc., are declined like the fem. nouns ending in **a**: **žena**.

SECTION 28.—The indefinite numeral **všechn** (also **všecek** or **všecken*****), *all*, has the following declension;

*) See page 120.

**) See Note 3 on page 124.

***) See Note 1 on page 127.

Singular.			
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom. & voc.</i>	všechn	všechna	všechno
<i>gen.</i>	všeho	vší	všeho
<i>dat.</i>	všemu	vší	všemu
<i>acc.</i>	všeho (<i>inan. všechn</i>)	všechnu	všechno
<i>loc.</i>	všem	vší	všem
<i>inst.</i>	vším	vší	vším
Plural.			
<i>nom. & voc. masc.</i>	všichni	<i>gen. všech</i>	} in all three genders.
(<i>masc. inan.</i>)	všechny	<i>dat. všem</i>	
<i>fem.</i>	všechny	<i>loc. (ve) všech</i>	
<i>neut.</i>	všechna	<i>inst. všemi</i>	
<i>acc., masc. & fem.</i>	všechny	<i>acc. neut. všechna</i>	

The indefinite numeral **veškerý, á, é** has the same meaning as **všechn, na, no** (*all*), and is declined like adjectives of the same termination (**dobrý, á, é.**)

VERBS.

SECTION 29. — 1. The verb is said to be subjective, when the action or condition is strictly confined to the subject: **sedím**, I am sitting; **běhám**, I am running; **růže kvete**, the rose is blooming.

2. It is called objective, when the action relates to another person or thing: *slunce zahřívá zemi*, the sun is warming the earth; *učitel chválil žáka*, the teacher praised the scholar; **důvěřuj v Boha!** trust in God!

The objective verb is *transitive* or *intransitive*.

The transitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case without any preposition: *učitel chválí žáka*, the teacher is praising the scholar; *matka vede dceru*, the mother is leading her daughter.

The intransitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case with a preposition: **důvěřuj v Boha**; or by some other case with or without a preposition: *lakomec baží po bohatství*, the miser craves for riches; *žák poslouchá učitele*, the scholar obeys his teacher.

3. A verb is called reflexive, when the action reverts to the subject. Such verbs are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun **se**: **Modli se!**

pray! *Chlapec se strojí*, the boy is dressing (himself). *Radujeme se z toho*, we are rejoicing over it.

But sometimes the pronoun *se* expresses the *passive* mood, and not a reflected action: *maso se jí*, the flesh is eaten; *jablka se česají*, the apples are being picked; *pole se orá*, the field is being plowed.

4. *Impersonal* verbs express an action or condition regardless of the person or thing, from which it proceeds: *prší*, it rains, it is raining; *rozednává se*, it dawns, (the day is breaking).

SECTION 30.—The classification of the Bohemian verbs in regard to the character of the action is fully explained in Lesson XXXIX.

Tense-inflection shows a difference in the *time* of the action or condition. There are three tenses :

1. *The present tense* (*přítomný čas*): *píšu*, I write, I am writing; *pes štěká*, the dog barks, the dog is barking.

2. *The past tense* (*minulý čas*): *psal jsem*, I wrote, I was writing; *pes štěkal*, the dog barked, the dog was barking.

The past tense may be *continuous*, when a continued past action is expressed: *šel jsem*, I went, I was going; or *finite*, when a finished action is expressed: *přišel jsem*, I came.

3. *The future tense* (*budoucí čas*): *psáti budu*, I shall write, I shall be writing; *pes bude štěkati*, the dog will bark, the dog will be barking.

The future tense may also be either *continuous*: *budu psáti*; or *finite*, when a completed future action is to be expressed; *napíšu*, I shall write out.

The Bohemian verb, like in English, has an *indicative* mood: *mluvím*, I speak; a *subjunctive* or *conditional* mood: *mluvil bych*, I should speak; and an *imperative* mood: *mluv!* speak!

SECTION 31.—There is only one auxiliary verb in Bohemian: *býti*, to be. — But certain verbs are used in connection with other verbs, to make a complete assertion or declaration; for instance: *musiti*, must; *smíti*, may, dare; *moci*, can; *ráčiti*, please; etc. We say: *musím jíti*, I must go; *smím mluvit*? may I speak? *raďte vejíti!* please to come in!

SECTION 32.—The Bohemian verb has *six conjugations*, fully illustrated in Lessons XXXI—XXXV incl.

The auxiliary verb *býti*, adding in the formation of the past and future tenses, is conjugated thus :

Present: jsem, jsi, jest; jsme, jste, jsou.

Imperative: buď, buďme, buďte.

Past participle: byl, byla, bylo; byli, byly, byla.

Subjunctive: bych, bys, by; bychom, (bysme), byste, by.

Future: budu, budeš, bude; budeme, budete, budou.

Present transgressive):* jsa, jsouc, jsouc; jsouce; (being).

Past transg.: byv, byvši, byvši; byvše; (having been).

Future transg : buďa, budouc, budouc; budouc; (to be, expecting to be).

*) This participial construction occurs only in the written language; it is explained in Note 4, page 164.

SECTION 33.—Table of the six conjugations.

I. Termination ti directly attached to the root.							II Term. - outi	III Termin.
Person		nés-ti to carry	pí-ti to drink	tří-ti to rob	peč-i*) to bake	min-outi to pass	hled-ěti to look, to look after	
Indicative mood	Singular	1	nes-u	pij-u (-i)	tr-u	pek-u	min-u	hled-ím
		2	nes-eš	pij-eš	tř-eš	peč-eš	min-eš	hled-íš
		3	nes-e	pij-e	tř-e	peč-e	min-e	hled-í
	Plural	1	nes-eme	pij-eme	tř-eme	peč-eme	min-eme	hled-íme
		2	nes-ete	pij-ete	tř-ete	peč-ete	min-ete	hled-íte
		3	nes-ou	pij-ou	tr-ou	pek-ou	min-ou	hled-í
Imperative	Plur./Sing.	2	nes	pij	tři	peč	miň	hled'
		1	nes-me	pij me	tř-eme	peč-me	miň-me	hled'-me
		2	nes-te	pij-te	tř-ete	peč-te	miň-te	hled'-te
Active participle.	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-l	pi-l	tře-l	pek-l	minu-l	hled-ěl
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la	hled-ěla
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-lo	pi-lo	tře-lo	pek-lo	minu-lo	hled-ělo
	Plural	<i>masc.</i>	nes-li	pi-li	tře-li	pek-li	minu-li	hled-ěli
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ly	pi-ly	tře-ly	pek-ly	minu-ly	hled-ěly
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la	hled-ěla
Passive participle	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-en	pi-t	tře-n	peč-en	minu-t	hledě-n
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta	hledě-na
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-eno	pi-to	tře-no	peč-eno	minu-to	hledě-no
	Plural	<i>masc.</i>	nes-eni	pi-ti	tře-ni	peč-eni	minu-ti	hledě-ni
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-eny	pi-ty	tře-ny	peč-eny	minu-ty	hledě-ny
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta	hledě-na
Present transgressive	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-a	pij-e	tr-a	pek-a	min-a	hled-ě
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc	hled-íc
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc	hled-íc
		<i>m. f. n.</i>	nes-ouce	pij-íce	tr-ouce	pek-ouce	min-ouce	hled-íce
Past transgressive	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes	piv	tře-v	pek	min-uv	hledě-v
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ši	piv-ši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši	hledě-vši
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ši	piv-ši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši	hledě-vši
		<i>m. f. n.</i>	nes-še	piv-še	tře-vše	pek-še	min-uvše	hledě-vše

*) Popularly **pecti**, originally **pékti**.

III -ěti or -eti	IV Termin. -iti	V Termin. -ati			VI Term. -ovati
ház-eti to throw	čin-iti to do	vol-ati to call	maz-ati to rub	hná-ti to drive	mil-ovati to love
ház-ím	čin-ím	vol-ám	maž-u (-i)	žen-u	miluj-u (-i)
ház-íš	čin-íš	vol-áš	maž-eš	žen-eš	miluj-eš
ház-í	čin-í	vol-á	maž-e	žen-e	miluj-e
ház-íme	čin-íme	vol-áme	maž-eme	žen-eme	miluj-eme
ház-íte	čin-íte	vol-áte	maž-ete	žen-ete	miluj-ete
ház-ejí	čin-í	vol-ají	maž-ou (í)	žen-ou	miluj-ou (-í)
házej	čiň	volej	maž	žeň	miluj
házej-me	čiň-me	volej-me	maž-me	žeň-me	miluj-me
házej-te	čiň-te	volej-te	maž-te	žeň-te	miluj-te
háze-l	čini-l	vola-l	maza-l	hna-l	milova-l
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-lo	čini-lo	vola-lo	maza-lo	hna-lo	milova-lo
háze-li	čini-li	vola-li	maza-li	hna-li	milova-li
háze-ly	čini-ly	vola-ly	maza-ly	hna-ly	milova-ly
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-n	čině-n	volá-n	mazá-n	hná-n	milová-n
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-no	čině-no	volá-no	mazá-no	hná-no	milová-no
háze-ni	čině-ni	volá-ni	mazá-ni	hná-ni	milová-ni
háze-ny	čině-ny	volá-ny	mazá-ny	hná-ny	milová-ny
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-je	čin-ě	vola-je	maž-e	žen-a	miluj-e
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc
háze-jíce	čin-íce	vola-jíce	maží-ce	žen-ouce	miluj-íce
háze-v	čini-v	vola-v	maza-v	hna-v	milova-v
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vše	čini-vše	vola-vše	maza-vše	hna-vše	milova-vše

SECTION 34.—Irregular verbs.

- Jeti**, to ride, to drive;—*present*, **jedu, jedeš, jede, jedeme, jedete, jedou**; *imper* **jed', -me, -te**; *active partic* **jel, -a, -o**; *passive partic.* **jet, -a, o**; *present transg* **jed-a, -ouc, -ouce**; *supine*, **jet, (to ride ;**
- jíti**, to go; — *pres.* **jdu, jdeš, jde, jdeme, jdete, jdou**; *imp.* **jdi, jdě-me, jdě-te**; *act. part.* **šel, šla, šlo**; *present transg.* **jda, jdouc, -ce**; *sup.* **jít, (to go)**;
- chtíti**, to want;—*pres.* **chci, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chtějí**; *imper.* **chtěj, chtěj-me, -te**; *act. part.* **chtěl, -a, -o**; *pres. transg.* **chtěj-e, -ic, -ice**; *past transg.* **chtěv, -ši, -še**; *sup.* **chtět (to want)**;
- míti**, to have;—*pres.* **mám, máš, má, máme, máte, mají**; *imper.* **měj, měj-me, měj-te**; *act. part.* **měl, -a, o**; *pres. transg.* **maj e, -íc, -íce**; *past transg.* **měv, -ši, -še**;
- spáti**, to sleep; — *pres.* **spím, spíš, spí, spíme, spíte, spí**; *imper* **spi, spě-me, -te**; *act. part.* **spal, -a, -o**; *pres. transg.* **spě, spíc, spíce**; *past transg.* **spav, -ši, -še**; *sup.* **spat, (to sleep)**;
- státi se**, to happen, to become;—**stanu se, staneš se, stane se, stan-eme, -ete, -ou se**; *imper.* **stañ se, -me, -te se**; *act. part.* **stal, -a, -o se**; *pres. transg.* **stav, -ši, -še, -se**; **stává se**, *it happens, is impersonal*);
- viděti**, to see;—**vidím, vidíš, vidí, vidíme, vidíte, vidí**; *imper.* **viz, -me, -te**; *act. part.* **viděl, -a, -o**; *passive part.* **viděn, -a, -o**; *present transg.* **vid-a, -ouc, -ouce**.

SECTION 35.—The derivation and comparison of adverbs is explained in Notes 2 and 3, on page 128.

Prepositions govern or require particular cases.

The *genitiae* case, responding to the question **čí, koho? čeho?***, is governed by the following prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions:

bez , without	do , to, till, until;	krom }	as'de from,
dle }	od , from	kromě }	except;
podle }	u , at, by;	kolem }	round,
vedle , next to, along-	z, ze , from, out of;	okolo }	around;
side of;		vůkol	

*) See Note 5, page 82. In the genitive case the question **koho?** *whose?* was inadvertently omitted.

vně , outside of;	daleko , far	výše , higher
vnitř , inside of;	stranu , about	prostřed , amidst
blízko , near	níže , lower	místo , instead of.

The *dative* case (responding to the question **komu? čemu?** is governed by the following:

k	} to, for;	proti , against	naproti , towards, a-
ke		k vůli , for the sake of;	gainst, opposite;
ku			vstříc , towards.

The *accusative* case (responding to the question **koho? co?**) is governed by the following:

mimo , besides, past;	pro , for	skrze , through.
ob , over	přes , over, across;	

The *locative* case (responding to the question **v kom? v čem? o kom? o čem?** etc.) is always governed by the preposition **při**, *by, at*; and in most instances by the following prepositions:

v	} in	o , about, on;	po , after, by, during.
ve		na , on, upon, for;	

The preposition **v** or **ve**, when it occurs before a word beginning with the letter **v**, is often changed into **u**; for instance: **u velikém počtu** (instead of **ve velikém počtu**, *in a large number*, or “in large numbers.”

The above five prepositions often require the *accusative* case; for example: **na potupu**, *for disgrace*, i. e. “in order to disgrace or dishonor”; **bojí se o život**, he fears for his life.

The prepositions **mezi**, between, among; **nad**, over, above; **pod**, under, below; **před**, before, — govern either the *accusative* or the *instrumental* case: **půjdu mezi lidi**, I shall go among people; **byl jsem mezi lidmi**, I was among people.

The preposition **s**, *se* governs the *genitive* case, when it means *from, off*: **spadl s vozu, se stromu**, he fell from the wagon, from the tree; and it governs the *instrumental* case, when it means *with*: **pojď se mnou**, come with me; **šli jsme za ním**, we went after him, we followed him.

Za governs the *genitive* case, when it means *during, in*: **za času Washingtona**, in the time of Washington;—it governs the *accusative* case, when it means *for*: **koupil jsem to za dollar**, I bought it for a dollar; — and it governs the *instrumental* case, when translated by *behind, after*: **pojd' za mnou**, come behind me; **přijdu za tebou**, I will come after thee.

In rare instances it requires the accusative case: **nejsem s to posloužit vám**, I cannot (I am not able to) accommodate you.

C O N T E N T S .

	Page
Why this book has been written.....	5
The Bohemian language.....	7
The Bohemians in the United States.....	8
PART I.	
General observations.....	12
The Bohemian alphabet.....	12
Names of the letters.....	15
Bohemian pronunciation.....	16
Parts of speech.....	18
Gender.....	19
Grammatical rules in general.....	20
The accent.....	21
“Ty” and “vy”.....	22
PART II. Rules of pronunciation.....	
Lesson I }	25
Lesson XL }	28
	172
PART III. Bohemian conversation.....	
Bohemian and English.....	179
Greetings and compliments.....	180
A call.....	187
Time.....	190
The hour.....	192
Age and date.....	198
The weather.....	201
Health and sickness.....	206
The human being.....	213
Disease and cure.....	218
Drugs and medicines.....	228
At home.....	237
Buying and selling.....	214
In a grocery store.....	249
Garments.....	255
Shoemaking.....	257
Diverse trades.....	260
On the farm.....	261
	262
PART IV. Bohemian grammar.....	
Orthography.....	269
Etymology.....	274

Knihy vydané nákladem Slavie:

Tlumač. Nový Tlumač Americký od Karla Jonáše. Žádná publikace česká v této zemi nebyla přijata od obecnstva s takovým vděkem a uznáním a žádné se ne dostalo rozšíření tak rychlého a velikého, jako Tlumači, knize ku snadnému a rychlému přiučení se jazyku anglickému, bez jehož znalosti nikdo se zde valného pokroku nededělá. Cena \$1.50 i se zásilkou a prodává se jediné za hotové.

Slovník česko-anglický, od Karla Jonáše. Čtvrté rozmnožené a opravené vydání. Postupná kniha učebná po Tlumači a nezbytná pro každého ku zdokonalení se v jazyku anglickém. Pro počátečníka ku rychlému seznámení se s nejobecnější, každodenní mluvou stačí Tlumač; povrchní znalec angličtiny musí pak k ruce mítí Slovník, aby se zdokonalil. Cena \$1.50. Jen za hotové.

Slovník anglicko-český, od Karla Jonáše. S úplnou výslovností anglickou. Obsahuje na 723 stranách bohatý slovní poklad anglického jazyka. Nezbytná pomůcka čtenářům. Cena \$1.75.

Zlatá kniha pro farmera. Dle rozličných pramenů sestavil Karel Jonáš. Kniha tato pojednává o vnitřních i zevnitřních nemocích koní a všeho dobytka hospodářského. Obsahuje návod o koupi koní, dodatek o domácích pomůckách pro všelike nehody, a recepty na rozličné léky v jazyku českém i anglickém. Prospěla již stům českých farmerů a na žádné farmě neměla by chyběti. Cena \$1.00.

Americké právo. Sepsal Josef Jiří Král. Sbírka nejdůležitějších zákonů, které by měl znáti každý občan americký. Obsahuje právo státní, občanské, rodinné, pozemkové, farmerské; bomstední zákon i jiné o zabírání veřejných pozemků a všechny smlouvy s Rakouskem. Cena \$1.75.

Česko-americký Besedník. Největší sbírka příležitostných básní a deklamací vážných i žertovných, solových výstupů, gratulací atd. Pravý poklad pro pořadatele zábav. Cena \$1.75.

Politické zřízení americké. Napsal Charles Nordhoff. Se svolením spisovatele a nakladatele přeložil Gustav B. Reišl. Cena 50c.

Objednávky adresujte: SLAVIE, Racine, Wis.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

QL OCT 17 1994

4 WK DEC 22 1999

REC'D YRL DEC 01 '99

QL OCT 08 2002

QL JAN 13 2003

NON-RENEWABLE

ILL-MB@
MAR 10 2004

DUE 2 WKS FROM DATE RECEIVED

UCLA YRL/ILI

MAY 01 2006

MR L875

32

YRL

301

1992

192

192

3

a



3 1158 00671 2821

